

FIG. 1. A SCENE IN ANCIENT POMPEII
Showing how the Romans spent a pleasant day.

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

FOR JUNIOR AND SENIOR HIGH SCHOOLS

REVISED EDITION

BY

B. L. ULLMAN

PROFESSOR OF LATIN

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

AND

NORMAN E. HENRY

PEABODY HIGH SCHOOL, PITTSBURGH

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1941

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

COPYRIGHT, 1935,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

All rights reserved — no part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission in writing from the publisher, except by a reviewer who wishes to quote brief passages in connection with a review written for inclusion in magazine or newspaper.

Set up and electrotyped. Published March, 1936. Reprinted May, 1936, January, May, 1937, January, 1939, October, 1940; May, 1941.

Published and copyrighted, 1925, 1925, 1929

TO THE TEACHER

The chief features of this revision of *New Elementary Latin* are the following:[1]

1. The connected passages are integrated even more closely with the lessons. The grammar and vocabulary of each lesson are illustrated in the reading selection of that lesson and are repeated frequently in later selections. Teachers may therefore omit some or all of the disconnected sentences in the Exercises if they so desire. They may also begin the lesson with the reading selection, developing grammar and vocabulary inductively. Teachers differ in their method of approach: some prefer to assign vocabulary and grammar before reading; others like to begin with the reading. This book permits either approach.

2. Basic English grammar is presented as needed. All necessary grammatical terms are explained in the lessons themselves in the simplest and briefest language. It is assumed that the pupils have no knowledge of English grammar.

3. Thought questions are added to the connected passages.

4. The exercises for translation into Latin are shortened and simplified.

5. Substitution sentences and additional drills reinforce the teaching of grammar.

[1] This book meets the recommendations of the *Report of the Classical Investigation* and the New York State *Syllabus in Ancient Languages* (1932 revision), as well as the requirements of the latest syllabi.

6. The exercises are revised to eliminate allusions that are no longer pertinent.

7. More exercises are introduced into the word studies.

8. Many new illustrations are added and also replace some of the old ones; the total number is increased from 171 to 207.

The many features of *New Elementary Latin* which have been received with approval and which are retained in this book are:

1. **Latin for English.** — The correlation of Latin and English forms an important part of every lesson, for it is generally admitted that the chief value of first-year Latin for most pupils is in the increased knowledge of English which it affords. Latin and English are correlated throughout as follows:

(*a*) *Vocabulary.* — The vocabulary of the lessons is taken chiefly from an unpublished list of those Latin words which have the largest number of English derivatives in ordinary prose. This list is the result of exhaustive research. The total vocabulary consists of only 495 words. Of these 356 are primitives and 139 are derivatives. Latin derivatives are not introduced until after the primitive has been encountered, so that the task of mastering the lesson vocabularies may be simplified and the pupil taught to associate words by their root meaning.

All words required by the College Board to be memorized during the first and second years are presented for intensive study in the lesson vocabularies of *New Elementary Latin, Revised Edition*, and the vocabulary

drills of the authors' *New Second Latin Book*. Since the Latin Word List issued by the College Entrance Examination Board supersedes all other lists as a standard, this strict conformity will be welcomed by all teachers. Most of the words required by the New York Syllabus (1932 revision) for the first and the second half-years are used in the lessons; the complete list is included in the Appendix for review and intensive drill.

(*b*) *Word Study*. — Every lesson contains Latin and English Word Studies covering such topics as prefixes, suffixes, loan words, phonetic changes, spelling, interesting words, abbreviations, phrases and quotations, etc. Topics are introduced in the order of their importance and *grow out of the material presented in the lessons;* they are not relegated to the Appendix.

(*c*) *Correlation of Latin and English Grammar*. — In discussing matters of form and syntax, constant reference is made to English usage, and many difficult points in English grammar are elucidated (*e.g.* the relative and interrogative pronouns, sections **322–323, 337**). Difficult matters are developed slowly and with constant reference to English (cf. the infinitive, including indirect statement, **152, 280, 488,** and the participle, **363, 384, 473–475.**

2. Simplification. — (*a*) *Forms*. — In accordance with certain special investigations as to relative frequency, many unimportant forms commonly found in beginners' books are omitted.

(*b*) *Syntax*. — The *Report of the Classical Investigation*, Byrne's *Syntax of High School Latin*, and the latest state syllabi were consulted in an attempt to introduce the minimum of syntax consistent with

sound teaching. *The Report of the N. E. A. Committee on Uniform Grammatical Nomenclature* was followed with few exceptions.

3. **Reviews.** — Systematic reviews recur at intervals of eight or ten lessons throughout the book and are intended not only to furnish drill material for oral work but also to serve as the basis for written tests. It is expected, of course, that the teacher will conduct additional reviews, for which the material in the review lessons will prove suggestive.[1]

4. **Roman Civilization.** — A comprehensive view of Roman civilization is provided in four ways: (*a*) by the large amount of graded connected reading in Latin, especially "Lucius," the continued story of a Roman boy; (*b*) by the "Glimpses of Roman Life," a series of topics in English dealing with Roman customs; (*c*) by the references to books accessible in most libraries; (*d*) by the numerous illustrations with their legends.

5. **The Superior Pupil.** — One of the most hopeful signs in the educational field today is the attention which is being given to superior pupils. The large number of connected Latin passages in this book and the many references to outside reading in connection with them and with the "Glimpses of Roman Life" furnish ideal material for use with such pupils, whether they are handled as individual cases or are placed in special classes.

6. **Oral Work, Plays, etc.** — In the earlier part of the book conversational material is introduced as a sample

[1] Teachers will find in *New Progress Tests in Latin*, by B. L. Ullman and A. W. Smalley (published by The Macmillan Company), a valuable workbook for drilling and reviewing all first-year work.

of what may be done by the teacher. The pictures also may be made the basis for conversation. In the Appendix a list of classroom phrases is given. A special feature is the inclusion of two Latin plays for reading or presentation. These plays were written expressly for this book by Dr. Lillian B. Lawler of Hunter College, New York, and therefore afford an excellent review of forms and vocabulary.

7. **French and Spanish.** — A supplement is devoted to correlating French and Spanish with Latin; it shows the pupil how he may get the maximum profit from his Latin while studying these Romance languages.

The Junior High School. — It is the belief of the authors that it is advantageous to use the same beginning Latin books in the junior and the senior high school, since such use tends to make articulation easier. Features, such as those mentioned above, which the four-year high school regards as desirable, the junior high school demands as necessary: emphasis upon the correlation of Latin and English, simplification of forms and syntax, the introduction of interesting material in the form of readings, conversations, and plays, etc. The numerous illustrations with helpful explanations are likewise intended to make the book particularly attractive to younger pupils. *New Elementary Latin* has proved equally popular with both types of schools, and closer articulation in courses and objectives has resulted.[1]

[1] The *Teachers' Manual*, published by The Macmillan Company and available to teachers using this book, contains many pages devoted to helpful devices and methods for effective teaching.

Acknowledgments. — The authors desire to express their thanks to the many teachers who have used the earlier edition of this book and have made suggestions for its improvement. All the suggestions were carefully considered and many were adopted. In particular thanks are due for many helpful suggestions to Miss Loura B. Woodruff, Miss Florence Brubaker, and their colleagues at the Oak Park High School, Oak Park, Illinois.

B. L. U.
N. E. H.

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
I.	TO THE PUPIL	1
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: CHILDREN'S GAMES	4
II.	THE ALPHABET. PRONUNCIATION: EXERCISES. VOCABULARY AND DERIVATIVE NOTEBOOK	6
III	FIRST DECLENSION: NOMINATIVE AS SUBJECT AND PREDICATE. *Latin Nouns in English.* HOW TO READ LATIN. Reading: INSULAE	11
IV	AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES. *Latin Words and English Derivatives.* Reading: SICILIA	12
V	FIRST CONJUGATION. PRESENT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: ROSAE	17
VI	FIRST DECLENSION: ACCUSATIVE DIRECT OBJECT. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: VIAE BONAE	20
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: ROMAN ROADS AND TRAVEL	25
VII	FIRST CONJUGATION: IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Nouns in English* Reading: PUELLAE RŌMĀNAE	29
VIII.	FIRST DECLENSION: GENITIVE. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: RŌMA	32
IX.	FIRST CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Words and English Derivatives.* Reading: EURŌPA	35
X.	FIRST DECLENSION: DATIVE. INDIRECT OBJECT. *Latin Roots and English Derivatives* Reading. COLUMBUS	38
XI.	FIRST DECLENSION: ABLATIVE. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. *English Derivatives and Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: GALLIA	41
XII.	FIRST DECLENSION SUMMARIZED. PRESENT IMPERATIVE. *Latin Words in French, Spanish, and Italian.* Reading: PUELLAE ET MĀTER	45
	FIRST REVIEW (Lessons III-XII)	48
XIII.	SECOND CONJUGATION: PRESENT SYSTEM ACTIVE. *Latin Verb and Noun Forms in English.* Reading: LINGUA LATĪNA	53

LESSON		PAGE
XIV.	PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE: In. SENTENCE ANALYSIS. *Latin Forms of English Names.* Reading: BRITANNIA	60
XV.	SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -us. *Their Use in English.* Reading: SOCIUS	64
XVI.	VOCATIVE CASE. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE. Ab, Dē, Ex. *Prefixes ab-, dē-, ex- in English.* Reading: SERVĪ	68
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: SLAVES	72
XVII.	SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -er AND -r. *Prefix ad- in English Assimilation.* Reading: MAGISTER	74
XVIII	PRESENT INDICATIVE OF Sum. PREPOSITIONS OF PLACE: Ad, In. *Prefix in- in English.* Reading. COLŌNĪ RŌMĀNĪ	77
XIX.	SECOND DECLENSION: NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES IN -um. *Their Use in English.* Reading: TROIA	81
XX.	IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF Sum. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT AND OBJECT. *Latin in English: Case Forms; Phrases.* Reading: BELLUM ET VICTŌRIA	85
	SECOND REVIEW (Lessons XIII-XX)	89
XXI.	QUESTIONS. CONVERSATION. Reading: SPARTACUS	93
XXII	THIRD CONJUGATION: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. PLURAL IMPERATIVE IN -ite. *Latin Noun Base in English.* Reading: VIRGINIA ET VĒRA	96
XXIII.	APPOSITION. *Latin Verb Base in English.* Reading: VIR QUĪ PATRIAM REGIT	99
XXIV.	THIRD CONJUGATION -iō VERBS. FOURTH CONJUGATION: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin and English Vowel Changes.* Reading: RŌMĀNĪ	102
XXV.	WORD ORDER. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: AMĪCITIA	106
XXVI.	THIRD CONJUGATION: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: CERĒS ET PRŌSERPINA	109

LESSON PAGE

XXVII. FORMATION OF ADVERBS. ACCOMPANIMENT. *Prefix con- in English.* Reading: LŪCIUS ET MĀRCUS 113

XXVIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION, THIRD CONJUGATION -iō VERBS: FUTURE INDICATIVE ACTIVE *Prefix re- in English.* Reading: VĪTA ANTĪQUA . 116

XXIX IDIOMS *Latin Words and English Derivatives.* Reading: AENĒĀS 119

THIRD REVIEW (Lessons XXI–XXIX) . . 123

XXX. SUBSTANTIVES. HINTS FOR READING. THE STORY OF LUCIUS: Forum Rōmānum. Conversation 127

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: THE CITY OF ROME . 130

XXXI PRESENT SYSTEM PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS *Word Families.* Reading: AD ITALIAM 133

XXXII ABLATIVE OF AGENT *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading AENĒĀS IN ĀFRICĀ EST . 139

XXXIII PERFECT STEM. PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS *Prefix prō- in English; Latin Phrases* Reading: AENĒĀS ET DĪDŌ 144

XXXIV. PERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum. USE OF IMPERFECT AND PERFECT *Prefixes in- and dis- in English.* Reading: GRĀTIA 149

XXXV. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. *Latin Suffixes in English: -ia.* Reading: AENĒĀS ET LATĪNUS 153

XXXVI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: LŪCIUS PILAM ĀMITTIT 158

XXXVII. PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE OF Sum. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE *Suffix -tia in English.* Reading: Q. FABIUS MAXIMUS 163

XXXVIII. PERFECT PARTICIPLE. PERFECT AND PAST PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. *Prefixes sub- and per- in English.* Reading: AENĒĀS ET TURNUS 166

LESSON		PAGE
XXXIX.	FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE AND PRESENT INFINITIVE PASSIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS *Latin Phrases in English* Reading: NIOBĒ	172
	FOURTH REVIEW (Lessons XXXI–XXXIX) FIRST CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS	177
XL.	WORD SENSE. HOW TO STUDY A CONNECTED PASSAGE THE STORY OF LUCIUS: Lūdus. Conversation	181
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: ROMAN SCHOOLS	185
XLI.	PRINCIPAL PARTS AND TENSE STEMS. *Prefixes inter- and ob- in English* Reading: LŪDĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET AMERICĀNĪ	187
XLII.	RELATIVE QUĪ: AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE *Intensive Prefixes.* Reading: TEMPLA DEŌRUM	191
XLIII	SECOND CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. MANNER. *Interesting English Words.* Reading: COLOSSĒUM	197
XLIV	INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: VĒRUS RŌMĀNUS	201
XLV.	THIRD CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. *Prefixes ante- and trāns-. Importance of the Verb* Reading: PŪBLIUS MĀRCŌ SAL.	205
XLVI.	PERFECT PARTICIPLES USED AS ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS. Possum. *Latin Words and Phrases in English* Reading: PLĪNIUS ET PUER	209
XLVII.	FOURTH CONJUGATION: REVIEW OF PRINCIPAL PARTS. NUMERALS. *Latin Influence upon English.* Reading: COLŌNĪ AMERICĀNĪ	212
XLVIII.	PARTICIPLES USED AS CLAUSES *Latin Influence upon English (Cont.).* Reading: MĀRCUS PŪBLIŌ SAL.	216
	FIFTH REVIEW (Lessons XLI–XLVIII)	219
XLIX.	THE STORY OF LUCIUS: Circus	223
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: AMUSEMENTS	226
L.	THIRD DECLENSION: MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: ULIXĒS	229

LESSON PAGE

LI. Ablative Absolute. *Word Families in Latin and English.* Reading. **CIRCĒ** 233

LII. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns. *Latin Nouns in English.* Reading: **SĪRĒNĒS ET CALYPSŌ** . 239

LIII. Summary of Ablative Uses. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **PHAEĀCIA** 242

LIV Third Declension: I-Stem Nouns. *Latin I-Stem Nouns in English* Reading: **PĒNELOPĒ** . . 246

LV. Third Declension: Adjectives. *Their Use in English.* Reading: **FĪNIS LABŌRUM** 250

LVI. Choice of Words. *Suffix -tās in English. Latin Phrases.* Reading: **RŌMULUS ET REMUS** . . 254

LVII. Ablative of Respect. *Latin Phrases in English* Reading: **CĪNEĀS ET PYRRHUS** 258
SIXTH REVIEW (Lessons L–LVII) 261

LVIII. THE STORY OF LUCIUS: **Deī** 265
GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: ROMAN RELIGION . . 266

LIX. Hic and Ille. *The Third Declension as an English Word Source.* Reading: **SĀTURNUS ET IUPPITER** 269
A LATIN PLAY: **Victōria Mātris** 273

LX Ablative of Time When. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **CAEDICIUS FORTIS** 275

LXI. Is. *How Our Months Were Named.* Reading: **CĪVITĀS RŌMĀNA** 278

LXII. Idem. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **MIDĀS** 282

LXIII Ipse. *Norman-French Influence upon English.* Reading: **HORĀTIUS** 286

LXIV. Declension of **Ūnus.** Words Often Confused. *Latin as a Help in Spelling.* Reading **CICERŌ ET TĪRŌ** 290

LXV. Present and Future Active Participles. *Latin Phrases in English.* Reading: **QUĪNTUS CICERŌ ET POMPŌNIA** 295

LXVI Perfect Active Infinitive. *Suffix -or in English.* Reading: **CINCINNĀTUS** 299

LESSON		PAGE
LXVII.	PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE. INDIRECT STATEMENT. *Suffixes* ***-ant*** *and* ***-ent*** *Distinguished.* Reading: **BELLA**	302
LXVIII.	INDIRECT STATEMENT (*Cont.*). TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE. *Suffixes* ***-antia, -entia*** *in English.* Reading: **CORIOLĀNUS**	307
	SEVENTH REVIEW (Lessons LIX–LXVIII)	311
LXIX.	THE STORY OF LUCIUS: **Virginēs Vestālēs**	315
	GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE: THE HOUSE AND ITS FURNITURE	318
LXX.	COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE. *Different Words from the Same Latin Stem Distinguished.* Reading: **QUATTUOR AETĀTĒS**	321
LXXI.	FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS. *Suffix* ***-ō*** *in English.* Reading: **BAUCIS ET PHILĒMŌN**	326
LXXII.	COMPARISON OF **-er** AND **-lis** ADJECTIVES. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. *Legal Phrases in English.* Reading: **DAEDALUS ET ĪCARUS**	330
LXXIII.	COMPARISON OF IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS. *Their Use in English.* Reading. **PYRRHUS ET EIUS VICTŌRIA**	335
LXXIV.	REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. *Effect of the Renaissance "Doublets."* Reading: **PYRRHUS ET FABRICIUS**	340
LXXV.	ORDINAL NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF **Duo, Trēs,** AND **Mille.** *How Latin Helps in English Spelling* Reading: **RĒGULUS**	345
	EIGHTH REVIEW (Lessons LXX–LXXV)	351
LXXVI.	THE STORY OF LUCIUS: **Caesaris Triumphus**	356
LXXVII.	ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. WORDS OFTEN CONFUSED. *State Names from Latin.* Reading: **MARIUS**	360
LXXVIII.	**Post, Posteā** AND **Postquam** DISTINGUISHED. *Prefixes* ***ne-, circum-, contrā-, prae-,*** *and* ***super-*** *in English.* Reading: **MARIUS ET SULLA**	364

LESSON PAGE

LXXIX. FOURTH DECLENSION. *Latin Word Base in English.* Reading: GRACCHĪ 357

LXXX. IDIOMS. THE DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE WITH *To* REVIEWED. *Latin and English Vowel Changes.* Reading. SCĪPIŌ 372

LXXXI. FIFTH DECLENSION. *Latin Noun and Verb Forms in English; Latin Phrases.* Reading: DĒ SCĪPIŌNE 376

LXXXII. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION *The suffixes -ilis, -bilis, -āris, -ārius, -ānus, -icus and -tūdō in Latin and English.* Reading: CATŌ ET SCĪPIŌ 380

NINTH REVIEW (Lessons LXXVII–LXXXII) 383

LXXXIII SYNONYMS. THE STORY OF LUCIUS: Civis Novus Iter Facit 387

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE. (*a*) DRESS, (*b*) FOOD AND MEALS 392

A LATIN PLAY Sāturnālia 397

APPENDIX

Pronunciation 401
Basic Grammar 405
Summary of Basic Forms 413
Outline of Basic Syntax 429
Basic Vocabulary (College Board and New York Syllabus) 433
French and Spanish Through Latin 445
Helps for Classroom Conversation 452
Latin Songs 453
Books for Reference 456

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY 1

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY 22

INDEX 31

If elegancy still proceedeth, and English pens maintain that stream [of new words] we have of late observed to flow from many, we shall within few years be fain to learn Latin to understand English.

—Sir Thomas Browne, 1646.

NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

Revised Edition

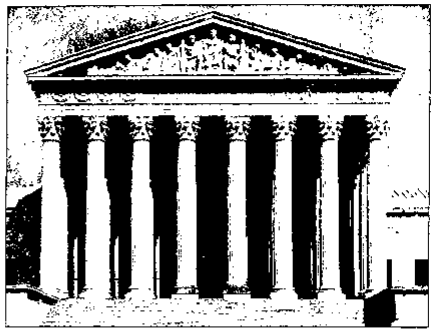
NEW ELEMENTARY LATIN

LESSON I

1. You are beginning the study of a new language. Perhaps you are a little curious and eager about it because it is something new, different from anything you have studied; or perhaps you are a little afraid of it because you think of it as something strange and difficult. Let us see what we know about it already.

Twenty-five hundred years ago Rome was one of many small towns in Italy. Its language, Latin, got its name from the district of Latium in which the town was situated. As the power of Rome spread, first over Italy and then over most of the civilized world of that day, its language came to be used everywhere. On the map opposite page 92 you can trace the growth of the great Roman Empire. You will note how it became a sort of United States of the Mediterranean World.

The modern civilization of Europe and America is largely the outgrowth of the Roman. American boys and girls play many games that Roman children played; American students read literature that was greatly influenced by the Roman; American citizens deal with political and legal ideas that are largely a Roman inheritance. To get acquainted with this Roman civilization is an important reason for studying Latin.



Wide World

FIG. 2. UNITED STATES SUPREME COURT, WASHINGTON

This is a striking example of the way Roman architecture survives in the modern world. Cf. Figs. 3, 101. Most governmental buildings at Washington and elsewhere are based on Greek and Roman models.

The Romans, however, have handed down not only their ideas but also their language. The Romance languages are the various forms which the Roman (Latin) language has taken in the course of centuries in the various parts of the Roman Empire. They are Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian, and even, to a large extent, English, since about sixty per cent of our English words are derived from Latin. French, Spanish, and Italian become very easy after a study of Latin. But the chief reason why you are going to study Latin is to get a better knowledge of English. The study of Latin will make English grammar much easier to understand. Then again, there are

Latin words, phrases, and mottoes used in English, such as *radius*, *per annum*, and *e pluribus unum*. Many Latin phrases are used in law, such as *habeas corpus;* therefore lawyers must know Latin. Many abbreviations used in English are Latin, such as *i.e.* for *id est.*

You see then that this Latin of the Romans is not so remote a thing after all and that a knowledge of it will be very useful to you.

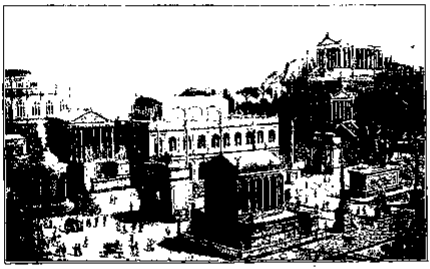


FIG. 3. THE HEART OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

In the Roman Forum and on the near-by hills was centered the administration of the Roman Empire In this imaginary reconstruction at the left, the round temple of Vesta, then the temple of Castor and Pollux, the Basilica Julia (a courthouse); on top of the hill at the right, the temple of Jupiter, in the center foreground, the temple of Julius Caesar Cf Figs 72, 87.

2. Exercise

1. *How many events of Roman history can you think of?*
2. *What famous Romans do you remember?*
3. *What Roman gods can you recall?*
4. *What do you know about Rome as it is today?*
5. *How many Latin words, phrases, legal terms, scientific terms, mottoes, proverbs, and abbreviations can you give?*

3. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Children's Games

Roman children had as good times as our children have in playing games. Even the babies had their rattles. Girls had their dolls (Fig. 23); boys played various kinds of marble games with nuts (Fig. 4). The phrase **relinquere nucēs** (*to give up nuts*) meant to grow up, but "grown-ups," even the Emperor Augustus, sometimes played such games. Vacation was



FIG. 4 CHILDREN'S GAMES

Three games are going on at the same time, at the left and right, "marble" games with nuts; in the center, the boy holding the end of the rope, which is fastened, tries to tag one of those striking at him.

the time for marble games. The poet Martial says: "Sadly the boy leaves his marbles and is called back to school by the teacher — the Saturnalia [Christmas] vacation is all over."

Other amusements were spinning tops, walking on stilts, flying kites, rolling hoops, playing with toy wagons, toy soldiers (Fig. 140), etc. Among their games were blind man's buff, hide and seek (Fig. 15), leapfrog

(Fig. 10), jacks (Fig. 9). Ball games, some like our tennis and handball, were favorites, especially for men.

For indoor amusement the Romans had a board game which was something like chess or checkers, and another like the many games we have in which as many moves are made on a board as are shown by the throwing of dice (Fig. 46).

Roman boys and men had their sports — not only swimming, fishing (Fig. 17), hunting, etc., but also athletic contests: running, jumping, throwing the discus, boxing, wrestling, fencing.

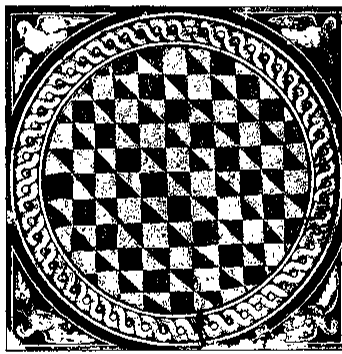


FIG. 5. A CHECKER BOARD FROM POMPEII

This mosaic table top may have been used for games.

LESSON II

4. The Alphabet

The alphabet used in English and in most European languages is one of the many things which we have borrowed from the Romans. The Romans in turn got it from the Etruscans, their neighbors to the north. The Etruscans received it from the Greeks, who adopted it from the Phoenicians. Naturally it has changed

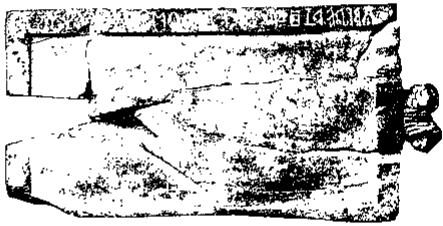


FIG. 6. AN ETRUSCAN ALPHABET OF 700 B.C.

Scratched on the edge of a wax tablet found, together with a doll, in a grave. The letters run from right to left

much in the course of all these borrowings. In Figure 6 you see the *abc*'s in their oldest Etruscan form, scratched on the ivory edge of a wax tablet for the guidance of a schoolboy. Since Roman days the alphabet has changed little. The Romans used *i* for *i* and *j*. In the seventeenth century it became the custom in English to use a long form of *i* for *j*, and thus our

j was formed. Similarly the Romans used only one character for *u* and *v*, but we have introduced the useful distinction between them, even in Latin. The original identity of the two is shown by another modern letter, *w*, which is a double *u* in name and a double *v* in form. The letters *j* and *w* are, therefore, not found in Latin words in this book.

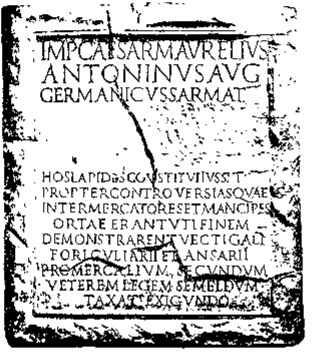


FIG. 7 AN IMPERIAL INSCRIPTION

This inscription on stone was set up in the time of the emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.), whose name and titles fill the first three lines. Note the modern character of the letters. Thousands of Latin inscriptions have been found in all parts of the ancient Roman world.

The Romans made no distinction between capitals and small letters. Our small letters gradually developed out of capitals in late antiquity and the Middle Ages.

LESSON II

4. The Alphabet

The alphabet used in English and in most European languages is one of the many things which we have borrowed from the Romans. The Romans in turn got it from the Etruscans, their neighbors to the north. The Etruscans received it from the Greeks, who adopted it from the Phoenicians. Naturally it has changed

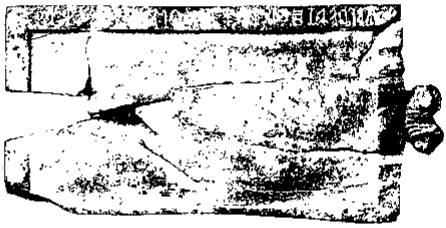


FIG. 6 AN ETRUSCAN ALPHABET OF 700 B.C.
Scratched on the edge of a wax tablet found, together with a doll, in a grave. The letters run from right to left

much in the course of all these borrowings. In Figure 6 you see the *abc*'s in their oldest Etruscan form, scratched on the ivory edge of a wax tablet for the guidance of a schoolboy. Since Roman days the alphabet has changed little. The Romans used *i* for *i* and *j*. In the seventeenth century it became the custom in English to use a long form of *i* for *j*, and thus our

j was formed. Similarly the Romans used only one character for *u* and *v*, but we have introduced the useful distinction between them, even in Latin. The original identity of the two is shown by another modern letter, *w*, which is a double *u* in name and a double *v* in form. The letters *j* and *w* are, therefore, not found in Latin words in this book.

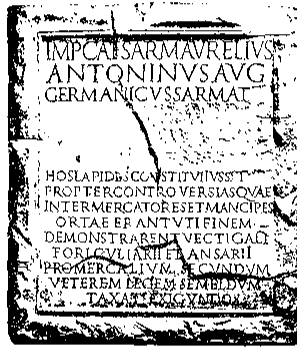


Fig 7. An Imperial Inscription

This inscription on stone was set up in the time of the emperor Marcus Aurelius (161–180 A.D.), whose name and titles fill the first three lines. Note the modern character of the letters. Thousands of Latin inscriptions have been found in all parts of the ancient Roman world.

The Romans made no distinction between capitals and small letters. Our small letters gradually developed out of capitals in late antiquity and the Middle Ages.

5. Pronunciation

The pronunciation of Latin is quite different from that of English, especially in the vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*), and resembles that of Italian, French, German, and other foreign languages. It is relatively very easy because it conforms to a few simple rules. There are no silent letters in Latin. For tables of sounds, see 613–620.

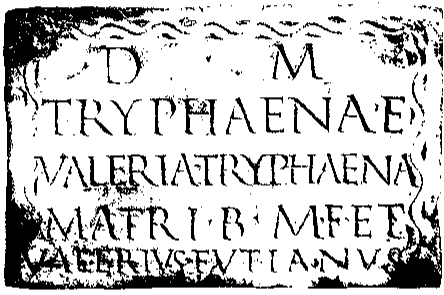


FIG 8. INSCRIPTION ON A TOMB

The tomb was erected in honor of Tryphaena by her daughter. The letters in the first line stand for **dīs mānibus**, *to the shades* of the departed one.

6. Exercises in Pronunciation

I

Pronounce ā, Mārs, pār, ab, iam, dat, nār'rat, ma'lā, ē, mē, pēs, ex, sed, per, cer'tē, lē'ge, quī, hīc, vīs, in, quid, fit, di'gitī, mī'litis, nōn, prō, mōns, nox, post,

mors, cō'gor, ro'gō, iūs, cūr, lūx, nunc, cum, dux, iūs'tus, cur'rū, aes, quae, Aet'nae, aut, clau'sae, poe'nae.



Fig. 9. Playing Jacks with Knucklebones
Clay figurines in the British Museum.

II

Pronounce nā'vēs, Rū'fus, Marī'a, nau'tae, īn'sula, quō'rum, exer'citus, appellā'tur, vī'dimus, cognō'vit, Mīran'da, tenē'bant, pae'ne, poe'na, bo'nus, Colum'bus, Clā'ra, Iū'lius, Augus'tus, Cae'sar, Ci'cero, Horā'tius.

III

Mi'cā, mi'cā, par'va stēl'la!
Mī'ror quae'nam sīs, tam bel'la.
Splen'dēns ē'minus in il'lō,
Al'ba ve'lut gem'ma, cae'lō.

IV

Read the following translation of "America" (by George D. Kellogg):

Tē ca'nō, Pa'tria,
Can'dida, lī'bera;
Tē re'feret
Por'tus et ex'ulum
Et tu'mulus se'num;
Lī'bera mon'tium
Vōx re'sonet.

Tū'tor es ū'nicus,
Ū'nus a'vum De'us!
Lau'dō lī'bēns.
Pa'tria lū'ceat,
Lī'bera ful'geat,
Vīs tu'a mū'niat,
Omni'potēns!

V

The following are ancient Latin quotations, some of which you probably have seen:

1. **Vē'nī, vī'dī, vī'cī,** *I came, I saw, I conquered* (Caesar's famous dispatch to the senate after a victory).
2. **In hōc sig'nō vin'cēs,** *In this sign you will conquer* (motto of Constantine, the first Christian emperor).
3. **Nōn nō'vit vir'tūs calamitā'tī cē'dere,** *Courage knows not how to yield to disaster.*
4. **Iniūriā'rum reme'dium est oblī'viō,** *Forgetfulness is the cure for injuries.*
5. **Pos'sunt qui'a pos'se viden'tur,** *They can because they think they can.*

VI

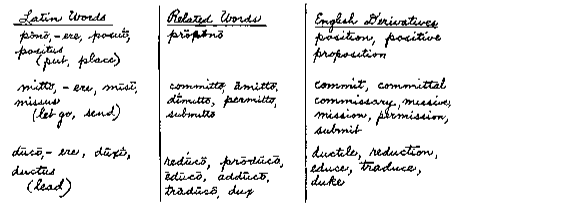
The two verses which follow were used by Roman children in some of their games:

1. **Ha'beat sca'biem quis'quis ad mē vē'nerit novis'simus,** *May he have the itch who comes to me last.*
2. **Rēx e'rit quī rēc'tē fa'ciet; quī nōn fa'ciet nōn e'rit,** *He will be king who does right; he who does not will not be king.*

7. VOCABULARY AND DERIVATIVE NOTEBOOK

From the very beginning be sure to learn thoroughly the new Latin words in the lessons; in this way you will build up a good vocabulary. For this purpose it is very useful to associate one or more English derivatives with every Latin word. A derivative is an English word formed from a Latin word. In this book derivatives are given in parentheses after the words in vocabularies; for their meanings, see the dictionary.

You will find it very helpful to keep a vocabulary and derivative notebook. A large notebook of the loose-leaf type is best. Rule each page in three columns for (1) Latin Words, (2) Related Words, (3) English Derivatives (see illustration). Distribute the words of each lesson vocabulary according to the part of speech, leaving a page for each of the five declensions of nouns, one for each of the four conjugations, etc. In the second column enter related Latin words as you meet them. In the third column record as many English derivatives as you can and keep adding to them.



LESSON III

8. Vocabulary

Nouns

īn'sula, *island*	(insulate)	**est**, *is*
sil'va, *forest, woods* (Pennsylvania)		**sunt**, *are*
vi'a, *way, road, street*	(viaduct)	**nōn**, *not*

9. Sentence: Subject and Predicate

A **sentence** is a group of words which completely expresses a thought. Every sentence consists of two parts — the **subject**, about which something is said, and the **predicate**, which says something about the subject: *The sailor* (subject) *saves the girl* (predicate), **Nauta puellam servat.**

Declension of Nouns

10. Noun. — A **noun** is a word that names a person, place, or thing: *Anna*, **Anna**; *island*, **īnsula**; *letter*, **littera.**

11. Declension. — Nouns change their forms to show differences in use. This change is called **declension**: *girl — girls*, **puella — puellae.**

12. Number. — A noun is **singular** when it refers to one person or thing: *girl*, **puella.** It is **plural** when it refers to more than one: *girls*, **puellae.**

In English, nearly all nouns are changed to show plural number. Most nouns add *-s* or *-es*: way,

ways; bush, bushes. A few form their plurals irregularly: pony, ponies; knife, knives; ox, oxen; man, men.

In Latin, the endings of most nouns are changed to show number.

13. **Gender.** — In English, and sometimes in Latin, gender is a distinction in the form of words corresponding to a distinction of sex. It is shown by change of word (*father*, pater; *mother*, māter), by change of end-

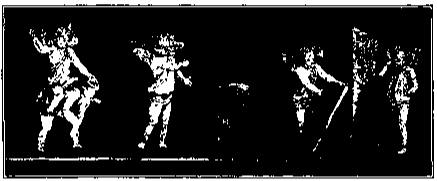


FIG 10 CUPIDS PLAYING LEAPFROG AND MARBLES
From a Pompeian wall painting

ings (*master*, **dominus**; *mistress*, **domina**), or by use of a prefix (*he-goat, she-goat*). *Father, master, he-goat* are **masculine**; *mother, mistress, she-goat* are **feminine**. This use of gender is known as **natural gender**.

In English, nouns that are the names of sexless things are **neuter**.

In Latin, however, many nouns are regarded as masculine or feminine which are neuter in English: **via** (f.), *way;* **numerus** (m.), *number*. This use is known as **grammatical gender**. It is determined, not by the meaning of the word, but largely by its ending.

14. Case. — Change of form to show the use of a noun in a sentence is called **case.** Thus we see that nouns are changed to show number, gender, and case.

In English, with the exception of the genitive (or possessive) case, change of case does not involve change of ending: nominative (denoting the subject), "The *man* sees"; accusative (denoting the object), "I see the *man*"; but genitive (denoting possession), "the *man's* hat."

In Latin, however, change of case regularly requires change of ending. The hundreds of nouns in the Latin language are divided by **case endings** into five classes called **declensions.**

15. Nominative as Subject and Predicate

The nominative case in Latin has the same uses as in English:

(*a*) The subject is in the nominative case. This is called **subject nominative.**

(*b*) A noun used in the predicate after a linking verb (*is, are, seem,* etc.) to complete its meaning is in the nominative case. This is called **predicate nominative.**

(*a*) (*b*) (*a*) (*b*)

Sicilia est insula, *Sicily is an island.*

Observe in the above sentence that there is no word in Latin for *a* or *an.* The same is true of *the.* Therefore, you may add these words as needed in translating.

16. First Declension: Nominative Case Endings

The case endings for the **nominative,** singular and plural, of the **first declension** are as follows:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	-a	-ae
Examples:	via	viae

These endings are preserved in many English words, as, singular, **alumna**, plural, **alumnae**. Other examples will be given later.

17. Rule. — *Nouns of the first declension are feminine (except a few which refer to males).*

18. English Word Studies

(*a*) The following are English words, borrowed from the Latin first declension, which have never lost their Latin nominative endings. Consult the dictionary for the English pronunciation and meaning of these **loan words.** (Observe that in English -ae is usually pronounced *ē*, as in *me*.)

alumna, alumnae; antenna, antennae (or antennas, when used in radio); larva, larvae; minutiae (singular rare)

(*b*) From what Latin word is *insular* derived? Explain this sentence: *Puerto Rico is an insular possession of the United States.*

19. How to Read Latin

Read through a Latin sentence, trying to get the meaning of each word as you come to it. Sometimes an English derivative will give you a clue, sometimes you will have to guess from the rest of the sentence. Do not look up the meaning of a word until you have tried these ways of finding its meaning. Pay careful attention to the endings. When you understand the

passage, answer the thought questions; then translate into good English. Do not always use the English meanings of the Latin words as given in the Latin vocabulary, but find English words of like meaning which exactly fit the sentence.

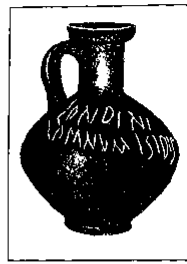


FIG 11 A ROMAN VASE FROM LONDON

Note the Latin name of the city, **Londini**, scratched on it

20. ĪNSULAE

Britannia[1] est īnsula. Eurōpa nōn est īnsula. Italia paene[2] est īnsula; Italia paenīnsula[3] est. Sicilia et[4] Corsica īnsulae sunt. Viae et silvae et īnsulae et paenīnsulae in Eurōpā sunt. Silvae et viae in īnsulā Britanniā sunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. How many islands are mentioned in this passage? 2. How many peninsulas?

[1] *Britain.* The meaning of proper nouns and adjectives is usually so clear that they are not listed in the lesson vocabularies; if necessary, they may be looked up in the Latin-English Vocabulary at the end of the book.

[2] *almost.*

[3] Can you obtain the meaning of this word from its English derivative and from the meaning of **paene** and **īnsula**?

[4] *and.*

LESSON IV

21. Vocabulary

NOUNS		ADJECTIVES	
fā'ma, *report, fame*	(famous)	**bo'na**, *good*	(bonus)
fortū'na, *fortune*	(fortunate)	**lon'ga**, *long*	(longitude)
		mag'na, *large, great*	(magnify)
		no'va, *new, strange*	(novice)

Note. — Enter the above words in your notebook and find additional derivatives.

22. English Word Studies

From what Latin word is *innovation* derived? Use *innovation* in an English sentence. What is a *bonbon* and from what Latin word does it come? Use *magnitude* in an English sentence and tell from what Latin word it is derived.

23. Adjectives

An **adjective** is a word used to describe or limit the meaning of a noun. We say that an adjective **modifies** its noun.

In English, an adjective is not changed to show number, gender, and case. *This* and *that*, however, change in the plural to *these* and *those*.

In Latin, an adjective shows by its ending the number, gender, and case of the noun which it modifies.

1. **Silva magna,** *a large forest.*
2. **Silvae magnae,** *large forests.*

An adjective may be used directly with a noun or in the predicate.

1. **Via longa est bona,** *A long street is good.*
2. **Viae longae sunt bonae,** *The long streets are good.*

(*a*) Observe in the above sentences that the Latin adjective often follows its noun.

24. Rule. — *An adjective agrees in number, gender, and case with the noun which it modifies.*

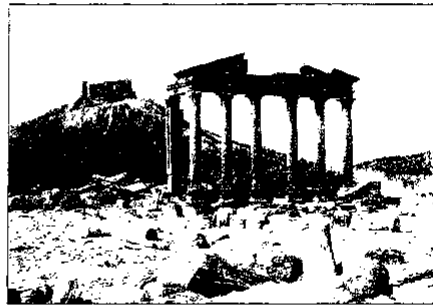


FIG. 12. AN OUTPOST OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

A Roman temple in the desert at Palmyra, in far-off Syria. The building on the hill is a Turkish fort.

25. Exercises

(*a*) (*Read in Latin and get the meaning; then translate into English.*) 1. Īnsula est magna. 2. Via est nova. 3. Viae sunt longae. 4. Viae longae sunt bonae. 5. Fortūna est bona. 6. Via bona est longa. 7. Fāma est bona. 8. Crēta est īnsula.

(*b*) (*Supply Latin words with the correct endings for the English words.*) 1. Longa Īnsula est (*large*). 2. Īnsulae sunt (*long*). 3. Fortūna magna est (*good*). 4. Īnsula nova est (*long*). 5. Eurōpa nōn est (*island*).

(*c*) (*Copy these sentences and add the correct endings.*) 1. Īnsula nov__ est magn__. 2. Viae bon__ sunt nov__. 3. Magn__ est fām__. 4. Viae nov__ sunt bon__. 5. Fortūn__ est nov__.



FIG. 13. ETNA FROM THE GREEK THEATER AT TAORMINA

26. SICILIA

Sicilia est īnsula magna in Eurōpā. Magna est fāma Siciliae.[1] Fortūna Siciliae nōn magna est. In Siciliā est Mōns[2] Aetna. Aetna est magna. Viae in Siciliā nōn bonae sunt. Viae novae nōn longae sunt. Silvae magnae in Siciliā nōn sunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. Where is Mt. Etna? 2. Are there good roads in Sicily?

[1] *of Sicily.* [2] *Mt.*

LESSON V

27. Vocabulary

NOUN

puel'la, *girl*

ADJECTIVES

par'va, *small*

mul'ta, *much*; plur., *many* (multitude)

CONJUNCTION[1]

et, *and*

VERBS

accū'sō, accūsā're, *blame, accuse* (accusation)

pa'rō, parā're, *get, get ready, prepare* (prepare)

por'tō, portā're, *carry* (porter)

ADVERB[1]

u'bi, *where*

28. English Word Studies

(*a*) The following are additional loan words, borrowed from the Latin first declension, often found in high school textbooks of science:

amoeba, amoebae (or **amoebas**); **nebula, nebulae** (or **nebulas**), **papilla, papillae**; **vertebra, vertebrae** (or **vertebras**)

Use the above in English sentences.

(*b*) A "porter" is one who *carries* things. What is a *portable* stove? What does it mean to *import* things?

Verbs

29. Verb. — A verb is a word used to tell something about a subject:

He carries, *Portat*; *The girl is small*, **Puella parva *est*.**

30. Indicative. — The indicative mood of verbs is used to make statements and ask questions.

[1] For definitions of adverb and conjunction, see **627, 629.**

31. Active Voice. — A verb is in the active voice when it represents the subject as the doer.

32. Present Tense. — Tense is time. The present tense represents an act as taking place now.

33. Person and Number. — In English, verbs sometimes are changed to show person: *I have, he has;* sometimes also to show number: *I am, we are;* but usually the distinction of person and number is made only by use of the personal pronouns (*I, you, he, we, they*).

34. Personal Endings. — In Latin, the personal pronoun subjects are usually omitted, and sets of endings called personal endings show the person and number of all verbs. The following are used in forming five of the six tenses of the indicative active of all verbs:



FIG 14. ANOTHER OUTPOST OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE
A Roman temple at Dougga, in Tunisia (northern Africa)

	Singular	Plural
1st person	**-ō** (or **-m**) = *I*	**-mus** = *we*
2d person	**-s** = *you*	**-tis** = *you*
3d person	**-t** = *he, she, it*	**-nt** = *they*

35. Infinitive. — The **infinitive** is a form of the verb before which *to* is usually placed in English:[1] *to go*. In Latin, the present infinitive active of all regular verbs ends in **-re**: **accūsā*re*, parā*re***.

36. Present Stem. — The present tense of any verb is formed by adding the personal endings directly to the **present stem**, obtained from the infinitive by dropping the ending **-re**.

37. Formation of the Present Indicative Active

The hundreds of verbs in Latin are divided, according to the present stem, into four classes called **conjugations**. The present stem of verbs of the first conjugation ends in **-ā**. Thus **portō, portāre** (present stem **portā-**) is conjugated in the present indicative active as follows:

Singular	Plural
por'tō, *I carry, am carrying, do carry*	portā'**mus**, *we carry, are carrying, do carry*
por'tās, *you carry, are carrying, do carry*	portā'**tis**, *you carry, are carrying, do carry*
por'tat, *he, she, it carries, is carrying, does carry*	por'**tant**, *they carry, are carrying, do carry*

[1] The preposition *to* introducing the infinitive is omitted, however, after the verbs *bid, dare, feel, hear, let, make, need, see*, and the auxiliary verbs *can, may, must, shall*, and *will*

(*a*) **Remember** that all vowels are shortened before **-nt** and final **-m** or **-t**, and that **-ā-** disappears entirely before final **ō** in the first singular.

(*b*) **Observe** the three ways to translate each Latin verb form — **common, progressive,** and **emphatic.** In English, when *am* and *do* are used as auxiliary verbs, they have no Latin equivalent. Note the difference between **Portat,** *He is carrying,* and **Nauta est,** *He is a sailor.* One cannot say **Est portat.**

(*c*) **Remember** that when a noun is used as subject, it takes the place of *he,* etc.: **Portat,** *He carries;* **Puella portat,** *The girl carries.* Do not say *The girl she carries.*

38. Drill. — Give the present indicative active of the verbs **accūsō** and **parō,** translating each form in three ways.

39. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Accūsō; parās; portat. 2. Portāmus; accūsātis; parant. 3. Multae puellae sunt parvae et bonae. 4. Ubi est Longa Īnsula? 5. Insula nova est parva. 6. Ubi est silva magna?



FIG. 15. CUPIDS PLAYING HIDE AND SEEK
From an ancient wall painting

(*b*) 1. Puella (*is preparing*). 2. Puellae (*are carrying*). 3. Ubi sunt (*large forests*)? 4. Ubi est (*the little girl*)?

(*c*) 1. Via bon__ est nov__. 2. Vi__ sunt bon__. 3. Ubi est puell__ parv__? 4. Portā__ (*we*); para__ (*they*); accūsā__ (*you, plur.*); porta__ (*she*).



FIG. 16. PUELLA ROSĀS PORTAT

40. ROSAE

Puella parva Rōmāna est. Rosās[1] in corbulā[2] portat. Multae rosae in corbulā sunt. Corbula parva est sed[4] rosae magnae sunt. Puellam accūsātis quod[4] rosās portat? Nōn accūsāmus: puella bona est. Ubi rosās puella parat? Puella eās[5] in silvā magnā parat. Ubi silva est? In īnsulā longā silva est. In īnsulā viae sunt multae et bonae.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why do we not blame the girl? 2. Where does she get the flowers?

[1] *roses.* [2] *basket.* [3] *but* [4] *because.* [5] *them.*

LESSON VI

41. Vocabulary

NOUNS		VERB	
a'qua, *water*	(aquarium)	pro'bō, probā're, *test, prove, approve*	(probation)
cau'sa, *cause, reason*	(causal)		
māte'ria, *matter, timber*	(material)	ADJECTIVE	
nau'ta, m., *sailor*	(nautical)	vē'ra, *true*	(verify)

42. English Word Studies

(*a*) How does a *nautical* mile differ from an ordinary mile? What is an *aquarium?* Explain this sentence: "I cannot question his *veracity*."

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

Magna Charta, the *Great Paper*, or document, which is the corner stone of English liberty.

māteria medica, *material*, such as herbs, used in making *medicines*.

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.*

43. Accusative: Direct Object

The **direct object** is the word which is directly acted upon by the verb. It is put in the **accusative** (objective) case.

In Latin, the endings of the accusative in the first declension are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	-am	-ās
Examples:	viam	viās

1. **Anna Clāram accūsat,** *Anna blames Clara.*
2. **Clāra Annam accūsat,** *Clara blames Anna.*
3. (*a*) *I saw him.* (*b*) *He saw me.*

Observe in the preceding sentences:

(*a*) In 1 and 2 a noun in English is not changed to indicate the direct object in the accusative (objective) case, but difference in case depends solely upon word order and sense.

(*b*) In 3 (*a*) and (*b*) personal pronouns, on the other hand, have different forms for the accusative.

(*c*) In Latin the accusative of a noun is distinguished from the nominative by its ending

44. Rule. — *The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.*

Caution. — A noun is not necessarily in the accusative because it is used with or after a verb. **Est** and **sunt** serve as a sign of equality (=) and take the same case after them as before them:

Italy is a country, **Italia est terra.**

Query. — Why is it incorrect to say in English, *It is him?*

45. Drill. — (*a*) Give the nominative plural and the accusative, singular and plural, of **īnsula, fortūna, māteria, aqua.**

(*b*) Give the Latin for *you* (sing.) *approve, they are accusing, we do prepare.*

(*c*) Pick out the direct objects in the following sentences:

1. My brother saw many clowns in the circus. 2. John's father is a rich man. 3. This boy found a dollar last week. 4. The butcher sold me two pounds of pork.

(*d*) Translate the words in italics:

1. I see a beautiful *island.* 2. She is a very nice *girl.* 3. Do you like the *woods?* 4. They are going to pave this *street.*

46. Agreement

1. **Nauta aquam portat,** *The sailor carries water.*
2. **Viam parāmus,** *We are preparing a way.*
3. **Anna et nauta causās probant,** *Anna and the sailor approve the reasons.*

Observe the following points:

(*a*) The verb in each sentence shows the person and number of its subject by means of personal endings.

(*b*) The personal endings are not translated by pronoun subjects when a noun subject occurs.

(*c*) The verb stands last.

(*d*) Two singular subjects connected by **et** require a plural verb.

47. Rule. — *A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.*

48. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nautās accūsō. 2. Causās bonās probātis. 3. Multam māteriam parāmus. 4. Fāmam et fortūnam probās. 5. Nautae multās causās probant. 6. Puella et nauta multam aquam portant. 7. Causae sunt multae et vērae.



FIG. 17. ROMAN FISHHOOKS
Some of them are exactly like ours: fishing has not changed much.

(*b*) 1. (*Water*) portāmus. 2. Puella (*many reasons*) probat. 3. Puellae (*Anna*) accūsant. 4. Anna (*the girls*) accūsat.

(*c*) 1. Naut__ (*plur.*) accūsāmus. 2. Aqu__ porta__ (*he*). 3. Ubi sunt silv__? 4. Naut__ (*sing.*) accūsā__ (*you, plur.*). 5. Causam bon__ probā__ (*we*).



FIG. 18 VIA APPIA

49. VIAE BONAE

Via Appia in Italiā est. Nōn nova est sed[1] fāma eius[2] est magna. Causa est quod[3] via est longa et bona. Viae Rōmānae erant[4] bonae. Viae Rōmānae vēram fāmam habent.[5] Ubi sunt malae[6] viae? Multae viae Americānae sunt malae, sed[1] America multās bonās viās parat. Novās viās probāmus. Nautae aquam, nōn viās probant. Ubi sunt bonae viae? Multam māteriam in viīs[7] portāmus.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why is the Appian Way famous? 2. Of what do sailors approve?

[1] *but.* [2] *of it.* [3] *because.* [4] *were.* [5] *have.* [6] *bad.* [7] *on the roads*

50. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Roman Roads and Travel

While the Romans had no railroads, automobiles, steamships, or airplanes, they had better facilities for getting about than the modern world had until the introduction of steamships and steam railroads a hundred years ago. This was due to their wonderful system of roads. Only in the last few years, as a result of automobile travel, have our roads begun to compare with the Roman roads. The secret of these roads was that they were built like walls (cf. **viam mūnīre, 215,** 6).



FIG. 19 VIA LATĪNA

The **Via Latina** ran from Rome to the southeast

The Romans were such excellent road builders because they saw the need of having good highways in order to maintain communication with the various parts of their extensive empire. Even in the early days when Rome was conquering Italy, it started its policy of road construction. The most important road in Italy, the Appian Way (cf. Fig. 18), was built by Appius Claudius in 312 B.C. It led to Capua, the most important city in southern Italy. Later it was extended across Italy to Brundisium, the seaport from which travelers sailed to Greece and the Orient. Parts of the Appian Way and of other Roman roads are in use today.



FIG 20. ROMAN VEHICLES

From models made by pupils of the Edward D Libbey High School, Toledo, Ohio, under the direction of Mrs. P. Emerson Burton.

Horses, mules, carriages or omnibuses, and litters were used by travelers who did not wish to go on foot. Along all the roads there were milestones to indicate distances. Often there were benches on which the weary traveler might rest. Watering troughs for horses and fountains for men were provided. Of course travel was slow. Fifty to sixty miles a day was fast time for people in a great hurry. Ordinarily, twenty-five to thirty-five miles was a fair daily average. A trip that

we now make comfortably in a night while asleep in a Pullman car took ten or twelve days.

If the roads were better than ours, the hotel accommodations were much worse. In fact, there were only small inns, which were usually dirty and uncomfortable. The wealthier classes stayed overnight at country villas belonging to themselves or their friends, or in the town houses of people they knew. It was not uncommon for rich Romans to have half a dozen or more villas scattered throughout Italy.

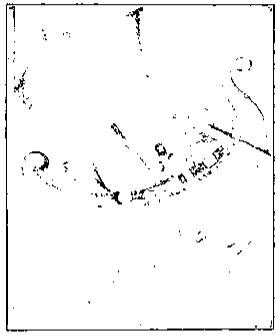


FIG. 21. A ROMAN SHIP

From a painting found at Pompeii. The unsteadiness of the boat is vividly portrayed

Travel by water was avoided as much as possible. Roman ships were small sailing vessels which were also equipped with oars (Figs. 26, 52). Sailing was dangerous, and the boats stayed near the shore as much as possible.

Read Showerman, pp. 485–502; Davis, pp. 454–456; McDaniel, pp. 168–178; Johnston, pp. 309–315; Mills, pp. 424–429.[1]

[1] For full titles of these books

LESSON VII

51. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verbs	
agri'cola, m., *farmer*		**a'mō, amā're**, *love*	(amiable)
fi'lia, *daughter*	(filial)	**vās'tō, vāstā're**, *lay waste*	(devastate)
ter'ra, *land, earth*	(territory)		

Adjectives		Linking Verb	
lā'ta, *wide*	(latitude)	**e'rat**, *he, she, it was*	
plā'na, *level*	(plane)	**e'rant**, *they were*	

52. English Word Studies

(*a*) From what Latin words are *latitude, terrestrial, subterranean, amateur* derived?

(*b*) The following, now regarded as English words, have been adopted from the Latin without change in the nominative singular. Their plurals sometimes end in **–ae**, but usually in **–s**, like most English nouns:

area, arena, aurora, camera, formula

53. Imperfect Indicative Active

The Latin imperfect tense, like the English progressive past, shows *continuous, habitual,* or *repeated* action (or being) in past time.

In Latin, the imperfect tense is formed by adding the tense sign **–bā–** to the present stem and then attaching the personal endings:[1]

[1] A similar formation is seen in the English solemn style: **accūsā-bā-s,** (thou) *accuse-d-st.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā'**bam**, *I was carrying, did carry, carried*	portābā'**mus**, *we were carrying*, etc.
portā'**bās**, *you were carrying*, etc.	portābā'**tis**, *you were carrying*, etc.
portā'**bat**, *he, she, it was carrying*, etc.	portā'**bant**, *they were carrying*, etc.

Note that the personal ending for the first person singular is **-m** (not **-ō** as in the present tense).

54. Drill. — (*a*) Give the imperfect indicative active of **amō, accūsō, vāstō**, with meanings.

(*b*) Give the Latin for *he approved, we were preparing, you* (sing.) *carried, they are getting.*

55. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Ubi erat Anna? 2. Nautam accūsābāmus. 3. Causās bonās probātis. 4. Viae erant lātae et plānae. 5. Nauta fīliam amābat et fīlia nautam amābat. 6. Terrās multās vāstābātis. 7. Agricolae aquam et māteriam portābant.



FIG 22 PUELLA
An ancient bust.

(*b*) 1. Nautae īnsulās (*were laying waste*). 2. Agricola terram plānam (*loved*). 3. Viae novae erant (*wide*). 4. Puellae aquam (*were carrying*).

(*c*) 1. Terr__ amābat. 2. Terr__ erat lāt__ et plān__. 3. Terr__ (*sing.*) vāstā__ (*we were*). 4. Nautae aqu__ ama__ (*pres.*). 5. Anna et Clāra puell__ bon__ era__.

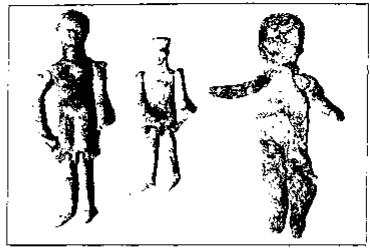


FIG. 23. PŪPAE
Two jointed dolls of clay and a rag doll in the British Museum

56. PUELLAE RŌMĀNAE

Puellae Rōmānae[1] Rōmam et Italiam amābant. Puellae Americānae Americam amant. Puellae Rōmānae erant magnae et parvae, bonae et malae.[2] Puellae Americānae sunt magnae et parvae, bonae et malae. Parva puella Rōmāna pūpās[3] amābat et portābat. Parva puella Americāna pūpās amat et portat. Pūpās amās?

Fīliae Rōmānae patrēs[4] amābant; patrēs erant agricolae. Agricolae terram lātam et plānam amābant. Pīrātae[5] terram vāstābant. Fīliae agricolārum[6] pīrātās accūsābant.

Thought Questions. — 1. In what way were Roman girls like American girls? 2 Why did the girls blame the pirates?

Read Showerman, pp. 112–114; Davis, pp. 190–191; Johnston, § 102.

[1] *Roman*, an adjective. **Rōma** is a noun. *Rome.*
[2] *bad.* [3] *dolls.* [4] *fathers.* [5] *pirates.* [6] *of the farmers.*

LESSON VIII

57. Vocabulary

NOUNS

cō'pia, *supply, abundance;* plur., *forces, troops* (copious)
cū'ra, *care, concern* (curator)
fōr'ma, *shape* (form)

VERB

spec'tō, spectā're, *look at, face* (spectacle)

ADJECTIVE

clā'ra, *clear, famous* (clarify)

CONJUNCTION

sed, *but*

58. English Word Studies

(*a*) Explain this sentence: *He spoke with great clarity.* With what Latin words do you connect *spectator, inspect, formula, accurate?*

(*b*) The following words have been borrowed without change from Latin. The plural ends in *–s*:

inertia, insomnia, militia, nausea, saliva

59. Genitive

In English, possession is shown by the genitive (possessive) case ending in *–'s*, or by the accusative (objective) with *of*: *the boy's father* or *the father of the boy.*

In Latin, we have already seen that a noun changes its case ending to show a change in case relation. Possession is expressed by the **genitive** case. The genitive endings of the first declension are:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	–ae	**–ārum**
Examples:	viae	viārum

1. **viae īnsulae**, *the roads of the island.*
2. **viae īnsulārum**, *the roads of the islands.*

60. **Drill.** — Give the Latin nominative, genitive, and accusative, singular and plural, of *water, supply, sailor, land.*

61. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Agricolās amāmus. 2. Fīlia agricolae est parva. 3. Magnās cōpiās īnsulae clārae spectābāmus. 4. Est[1] cōpia aquae. 5. Cūrae Annae erunt multae sed parvae. 6. Nautae cōpiam aquae clārae portābant. 7. Fōrma īnsulae erat nova.

(*b*) 1. Causae (*of the sailors*) erant vērae. 2. Cōpiam (*of good water*) portāmus. 3. Anna nautās (*of the large island*) spectābat. 4. Nautae agricolās īnsulārum (*blamed*).

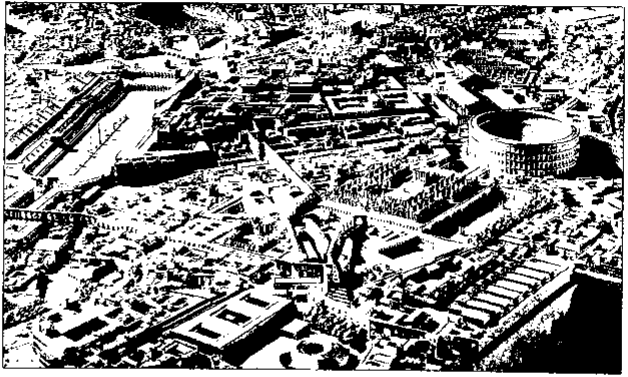
(*c*) 1. Ann__ (*Anna's*) cūrae erant mult__. 2. Magn__ erat cūra naut__ (*of the sailors*). 3. Silvās īnsul__ clār__ spectā__ (*they looked at*). 4. Cōpiam aqu__ bon__ portā__ (*I was carrying*).

62. RŌMA

Rōma prīmō[2] parva erat; fōrma Rōmae erat quadrāta.[3] Posteā[4] magna et clāra rēgīna[5] terrārum erat. Rōmānī[6] Rōmam amābant. Viae Rōmae erant longae sed nōn lātae. Cōpia aquae bonae erat magna cūra Rōmānīs.[7] Nunc[8] fāma Rōmae magna est. Rōmam amāmus et ruīnās Rōmae saepe[9] spectāmus.

Thought Questions. — 1. Were Roman roads wide? 2. Do we ever see Rome?

[1] Supply *there*, omitted in Latin when it does not refer to place.
[2] *at first.* [3] *square* [4] *afterwards.* [5] *queen.*
[6] *the Romans.* [7] *to the Romans.* [8] *now.* [9] *often.*



Wide World

FIG. 24. RÔMA

From a reconstructed model of the city. At the left, the Circus Maximus, then the Palatine Hill and the Colosseum.

LESSON IX

63. Vocabulary

NOUNS

fami'lia, fami'liae, f.,[1] *household, family* (familiar)

pecū'nia, pecū'niae, f., *money* (pecuniary)

prae'da, prae'dae, f., *loot, prey* (predatory)

un'da, un'dae, f., *wave* (undulate)

VERB

nā'vigō, nāvigā're, *sail* (navigation)

PREPOSITION[2]

ad, with acc., *to, toward* (with verbs expressing "coming" and "going"); *near* (with verbs of rest)



FIG. 25. PECŪNIA

In early times the Romans did their trading with sheep and oxen (**pecus**). Then bars of bronze bearing the figure of an ox, as above, were used for money. Each piece weighed five pounds and was worth sixteen cents. But the cost of living was very low then.

64. English Word Studies

From what Latin word does *impecunious* come? Explain it in the sentence: *I never saw a more impecunious person.* From what Latin words are *unfamiliar, navigable, abundance* derived? An "abundant" harvest is one that overflows in big *waves.*

[1] Memorize the nominative, genitive, and gender, in addition to the meaning, of each noun as printed in all vocabularies.

[2] For definition of preposition, see **628.**

65. Future Indicative Active

The **future tense** represents an act that will take place at some future time.

In Latin, the future active of the first conjugation is formed by adding the tense sign **–bi-** (corresponding to *shall* and *will* in English) to the present stem before attaching the personal endings:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
portā'**bō**, *I shall carry*	portā'**bimus**, *we shall carry*
portā'**bis**, *you will carry*	portā'**bitis**, *you will carry*
portā'**bit**, *he, she, it will carry*	portā'**bunt**, *they will carry*

Note that the future sign **–bi-** loses **i** before **–ō** in the 1st sing. and changes to **–bu-** before **–nt** in the 3d plur.

66. **Drill.** — (*a*) Give the future indicative active, with meanings, of **spectō, probō, nāvigō.**

(*b*) Tell the form of **amātis, accūsābat, probābam, nāvigābitis, spectant.**

67. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Ubi magnam cōpiam pecūniae parābis? 2. Ad terram novam nāvigābimus. 3. Pecūnia est vēra causa cūrārum. 4. Magnae undae sunt ad īnsulam. 5. Nautae ad īnsulam nāvigābunt. 6. Praedam ad silvam portābunt. 7. Anna cōpiam aquae ad familiam portābit.

(*b*) 1. Fīliam agricolae (*he will love*). 2. Ad terrās novās (*we shall sail*). 3. Undās magnās (*they will look at*). 4. Pecūniam ad familiam agricolae (*I shall carry*).

(*c*) 1. Ubi sunt silv__ īnsul__ (*of the island*)? 2. Est cōpia māteri__ bon__. 3. Cōpiam pecūni__ et praed__ parā__ (*we shall get*). 4. Familia naut__ (*sailor's*) ad īnsul__ lāt__ nāvigā__ (*will sail*).



FIG 26. NAUTAE NĀVEM PARANT

The ship is obviously a freighter in the process of loading. The skipper (**magister**) is at the left. Taken from an ancient wall painting found at Ostia, the seaport of Rome, at the mouth of the Tiber.

68. EURŌPA

Ad Eurōpam nāvigābimus; tōta[1] familia nāvigābit. Magnam pecūniam ad Eurōpam portābimus. Magnās undās spectābimus, sed magnās undās nōn amāmus. Ad īnsulās clārās, Britanniam et Siciliam, nāvigābimus. Galliam,[2] Italiam, Germāniam spectābimus. Nautae nāvem[3] parābunt. Nāvis pīrātās[4] et praedam nōn portābit sed nautās et pecūniam portābit.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who is going to Europe? 2. What will not be found on the ship?

[1] *whole.*
[2] *Gaul* (*France*).
[3] Accusative singular of **nāvis** (*ship*).
[4] *pirates.*

LESSON X

69. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
lit'tera, lit'terae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letter, epistle* (literary)	**dō'nō, dōnā're,** *give, present* (donation)
poe'na, poe'nae, f., *penalty, punishment* (penal)	**man'dō, mandā're,** *entrust* (mandate)
victō'ria, victō'riae, f., *victory* (victorious)	**mōns'trō, mōnstrā're,** *point out, show* (demonstration)
	nūn'tiō, nūntiā're, *report, announce* (pronunciation)

Adjective

grā'ta, *pleasing, grateful* (gratify)

70. English Word Studies

Always try to see the relation between the meaning of the English derivative and the Latin word from which it comes, and then use the derivative in a sentence.

(*a*) An author is a man of "letters," or a "literary" man; a "literal" translation is one that is almost *letter for letter*.

(*b*) A "mandate" is something *entrusted* to a person or a group, as the government of a weak nation.

(*c*) A "novelty" is something *new*.

(*d*) A person who is on "probation" is being *tested*.

In the same way explain *familiar, undulating, navigable*.

71. Dative: Indirect Object

The noun that shows for whom or what the direct object is intended is called the **indirect object** and is put in the **dative** case.

In Latin, the endings of the dative case in the first declension are :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	-ae	-īs
Examples:	viae	vīīs

Nautae pecūniam dōnō, *I give money to the sailor,* or *I give the sailor money.*

Observe the following points :

(1) In addition to the direct object (**pecūniam,** *money*) in the accusative, an indirect object (**nautae,** *sailor*) to show the receiver may be used.

(2) In Latin the indirect object is expressed by the dative, but in English it may be expressed either by the dative, as in the second translation, or by the accusative with *to* (or *for*).

(3) In English there is no separate form for the dative, as there is in Latin.

(4) In Latin and English the dative is placed before the accusative.

(5) The genitive and dative singular have the same ending in the first declension.

72. Rule. — *The indirect object of a verb is in the dative.* It is used with verbs of *giving, reporting, telling, showing,* etc.

Caution. — After verbs of motion like "come" and "go," *to* is expressed in Latin by a preposition (**ad** with the acc.).

1. He told his story *to the officer* (dative of indirect object).
2. He went *to the city* (accusative with **ad**).

73. Drill. — (*a*) Give the Latin nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of *family, money, care, reason, farmer.*

(*b*) Tell the case to be used in Latin in translating the words in italics.

1. The whole family moved to *California*. 2. I told my *father* what you said. 3. He presented his library to the *city*. 4. We carried our bags to the *station*.



FIG. 27. CŌPIA AQUAE CLĀRAE

This aqueduct near Rome was built by the emperor Claudius (41–54 A.D.).

74. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nautīs poenam nūntiābimus. 2. Familiae pecūniam dōnābit. 3. Puellae litterās mandābimus. 4. Agricolīs victōriam grātam nūntiābō. 5. Aquam clāram ad īnsulam parvam portābant. 6. Annae viās silvae mōnstrābō. 7. Anna Clārae magnam pecūniam dōnābit.

(*b*) 1. (*To many families*) pecūniam dōnat. 2. (*To Anna*) poenam nūntiābit. 3. (*To the sailor*) litterās mandābō. 4. (*To the sailors*) viam lātam mōnstrant. 5. (*To many lands*) nāvigābimus.

(*c*) 1. Pecūniam naut__ (*plur.*) dōnābimus. 2. Nautae _____ (*to the islands*) nāvigābunt. 3. Litterās naut__ (*sing.*) mandābō. 4. Litterās _____ (*to Anna*) portā__ (*she will carry*). 5. _____ (*to Clara*) pecūniam dōnā__ (*she gave*).

75. COLUMBUS

Columbus ad Hispāniam[1] nāvigat. Isabellae, rēgīnae[2] Hispāniae, nūntiat: "Terra nōn plāna est; probābō!" Isabella eī[3] pecūniam dōnat. Columbus nāvigat, sed via longa est et cūrae multae sunt. Nautae Columbum[4] accūsant; poena nautārum magna est. Sed subitō[5] nauta clāmat[6] "Victōria!" et terram grātam mōnstrat. Columbus cūram nāvis[7] nautīs mandat et terram novam spectat. Litterās et praedam ad Isabellam portat. Nunc[8] Columbus magnam fāmam habet.[9]



FIG. 28. VICTŌRIA
A bronze stand showing a winged victory

Thought Questions. — 1. What does Columbus say to Isabella? 2. What does Columbus do when land is sighted?

[1] *Spain.* [2] *queen.* [3] *to him.* [4] Accusative. [5] *suddenly.* [6] *exclaims.* [7] *of the ship.* [8] *now.* [9] *has.*

LESSON XI

76. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
iniū'ria, iniū'riae, f., *wrong, injustice* (injurious)	**in'citō, incitā're,** *urge on, arouse* (excitement)
memo'ria, memo'riae, f., *memory* (memorial)	**oc'cupō, occupā're,** *seize* (occupation)
pug'na, pug'nae, f., *battle* (pugnacious)	**pug'nō, pugnā're,** *fight* (pugnacity)
vī'ta, vī'tae, f., *life* (vital)	**ser'vō, servā're,** *save, guard* (conservation)

77. English Word Studies

(*a*) Explain *pugnacious, reservoir, incite.* From what Latin words are *vitamin, preserve, vitality, injury* derived?

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

Nova Scōtia, *New Scotland,* a province in Canada.
aqua vītae, *water of life,* formerly applied to alcohol.
ad nauseam, *to* (the point of) *seasickness* or *disgust.*
persōna grāta, a *pleasing* or *acceptable person.*

78. Ablative

In English, the object of any preposition is in the accusative (objective).

In Latin, the object of some prepositions is in the accusative; of others, in a special case called the **ablative,** the endings of which are:

	Singular	Plural
	-ā	**-īs**
Examples:	**viā**	**viīs**

79. Ablative of Means

Many ideas expressed in English by a noun preceded by a preposition are expressed in Latin by a noun in the ablative case without a preposition, as the following common type:

Litterīs victōriam nūntiant, *They report the victory by-means-of a letter.*

Observe that **litterīs** (abl.) shows *by what means* they report, and that no preposition is used.

80. Rule. — *Means is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.*

81. Drill. — Tell the form of **memoriae, vītā, litterārum, pecūniā, praedīs, occupābis, servant, incitābāmus, mandābō, pugnābitis.**

82. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Pugnīs īnsulam vāstābātis. 2. Pugnābimus et terram novam occupābimus. 3. Litterīs magnam victōriam nūntiābit. 4. Memoria iniūriae nautās incitābit. 5. Victōriīs vītam et terram et pecūniam servābant. 6. Magnā pecūniā multās familiās servābitis. 7. Columbus nautīs īnsulam parvam mōnstrābat.

(*b*) 1. (*By the victory*) īnsulam servābimus. 2. (*With money*) nautās incitābāmus. 3. (*With large forces*) īnsulās occupābimus. 4. Memoria iniūriārum nautās (*will arouse*). 5. (*To the family*) victōriam nūntiābō.

(*c*) 1. Victōri__ (*by victory*) terram servā__ (*we saved*). 2. Aqu__ (*with water*) silvam serva__ (*they save*). 3. Pecūni__ nautās incitā__ (*I shall urge on*).

4. Cōpi__ (*with troops*) īnsulam occupā__ (*they will seize*). 5. Pecūniam agricol__ (*to the farmer*) dōnā__ (*I shall give*).

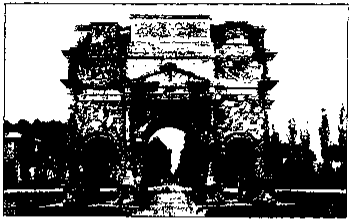


FIG. 29. CŌPIAE RŌMĀNAE GALLIAM OCCUPANT
A Roman triumphal arch in Orange, France.

83. GALLIA

Cōpiae Rōmānae Galliam occupant et Gallī[1] fortūnās et familiās silvīs mandant. Sed memoria iniūriārum Galliam ad pugnam incitat. Gallī[1] Rōmānīs[2] nūntiant:

"Terram nostram[3] cōpiīs occupātis et pugnīs vāstātis. Praedam magnam ad Italiam portātis. Sed pugnābimus et victōriīs vītam et pecūniam nostram[3] servābimus. Victōriās grātās Rōmae nōn nūntiābitis."

Gallī pugnant, sed multae et clārae sunt victōriae Rōmānae. Ubi est Gallia?

Thought Questions. — 1. What did the Gauls do with their families? 2. What did the Romans do to Gaul?

[1] *the Gauls*, i.e. the people of Gaul (Gallia).
[2] *to the Romans.* [3] *our.*

LESSON XII

84. Vocabulary

Nouns	Adjectives
hō'ra, hō'rae, f., *hour*	quīn'ta, *fifth* (quintet)
prōvin'cia, prōvin'ciae, f., *province* (provincial)	tu'a, *your* (referring to one person)

Verbs	Adverb
lau'dō, laudā're, *praise* (laudable)	nunc, *now*
lī'berō, līberā're, *free, set free* (liberator)	

85. Latin Words in French, Spanish, and Italian

The Romance languages, which are derived from Latin, have borrowed words from it with little or no change. This may be seen at a glance from the following list of nine words selected from the vocabularies of previous lessons.

French	Spanish	Italian
accuser	acusar	accusare
porter	portar	portare
matériel	materia	materia
terre	tierra	terra
forme	forma	forma
famille	familia	famiglia
lettre	letra	lettera

Judging from the Latin, what does each of these French, Spanish, and Italian words mean?

(For the relation of Latin to the Romance languages, see Appendix, **French and Spanish through Latin, 686–703.**)

86. First Declension: A Summary

	Endings		English Force	via longa, *a long way*	
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	-a	-ae	Subj. or Pred. Nom.	vi'a lon'ga	vi'ae lon'gae
Gen	-ae	-ārum	Possessive (*of* or *'s*)	vi'ae lon'gae	viā'rum lon-gā'rum
Dat.	-ae	-īs	Indir. obj. (*to* or *for*)	vi'ae lon'gae	vi'īs lon'gīs
Acc.	-am	-ās	Direct obj.	vi'am lon'gam	vi'ās lon'gās
Abl.	-ā	-īs	*from, by, with, in*	vi'ā lon'gā	vi'īs lon'gīs

Observe the following points:

(1) The nominative and ablative singular both end in **-a**, but the **-a** is long in the ablative.

(2) The genitive and dative singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (**-ae**).

(3) The dative and ablative plural have the same ending (**-īs**).

(4) Most of the endings contain **-a**, for this is the **A-Declension.**

87. Base. — That part of a word to which endings are attached is called the **base.** The base of a noun or adjective is obtained by dropping the genitive singular ending: gen. sing., **viae,** base, **vi-.**

88. Declension. — To **decline** a noun or adjective is to give all its case forms, singular and plural.

89. Drill. — Decline together in all cases, singular and plural, **cōpia magna, silva grāta, victōria parva.**

90. Present Imperative Active

Commands are expressed in Latin and English by the **imperative mood.**

The present active imperative singular of all conjugations is the present stem of the verb (36): **vocā**, *call.* In all conjugations except the third, the plural is formed by adding **–te** to the singular: **vocāte**, *call.*

91. Drill. — Form the singular imperative of *fight, praise, carry, report;* the plural imperative of *give, accuse, save, set free.*

92. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Servā pecūniam tuam et pecūnia tua tē (*you*) servābit. 2. Amā fīliam tuam et fīlia tua tē amābit. 3. Nunc quīnta hōra est; nāvigābimus. Mōnstrāte viam. 4. Nautae vītam agricolārum laudant et agricolae vītam nautārum laudant. 5. Pugnāte et līberāte prōvinciam.



FIG. 30. PUELLA RŌMĀNA
A marble bust in a museum in Rome

(*b*) 1. Puellae, (*look at*) undās magnās. 2. (*Accuse*) agricolam et pugnābit. 3. (*Entrust*) fāmam tuam fortūnae. 4. Nautae, nunc ad prōvinciam (*sail*). 5. (*Show*) puellīs litterās tuās.

(*c*) 1. Incitā__ (*imper. plur.*) naut__ (*plur.*). 2. Vāstā__ (*imper. plur.*) prōvinci__ (*sing.*). 3. Laudā__ (*plur.*) puellās. 4. Dōnā pecūniam tuam agricol__ (*sing.*). 5. Agricolae, laudā__ fīliās bon__.



FIG. 31 CLĀRA ANNAE GEMMĀS MŌNSTRAT

93. PUELLAE ET MĀTER

Anna. Ubi est Cornēlia?

Clāra. Ad prōvinciam Novam Scōtiam nāvigat.

Anna. Puellae, spectāte undās magnās. Fortūna Cornēliae nōn bona est.

Claudia. Clāra, mōnstrā Annae gemmās[1] tuās novās. 5

Clāra. Spectā, Anna. Gemmās amō. (*Anna laudat gemmās Clārae.*)

Māter.[2] Fīliae, portāte aquam ad casam[3] et cēnam[4] parāte. Quīnta hōra nunc est.

Clāra. Aquam portāmus, māter. Tē[5] cūrīs[6] tuīs 10 līberābimus. Valē,[7] Anna.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why is Cornelia unlucky? 2. Which girl has the jewels? 3. Which girls are sisters?

[1] *jewels.* [2] *mother.* [3] *house* [4] *dinner.*
[5] *you.* [6] *from worries.* [7] Imperative: *good-by.*



Acme

FIG 32 MODERN AND ANCIENT ROME

Showing the new street from the modern monument of Victor Emmanuel to the ancient Colosseum To the left of the monument is the ancient Forum of Trajan: the building in the foreground contains Mussolini's offices.

FIRST REVIEW (LESSONS III-XII)

94. Vocabulary Review

The English meanings of these Latin words will be found with corresponding numbers on the following page. After learning the entire list both ways, ask some one to test you by reading the words in the Latin list. As each word is read, give the English meaning.

NOUNS

1.	agricola	9.	fōrma	16.	memoria	23.	pugna
2.	aqua	10.	fortūna	17.	nauta	24.	silva
3.	causa	11.	hōra	18.	pecūnia	25.	terra
4.	cōpia	12.	iniūria	19.	poena	26.	unda
5.	cūra	13	īnsula	20.	praeda	27.	victōria
6.	fāma	14.	littera	21.	prōvincia	28.	via
7.	familia	15.	māteria	22.	puella	29.	vīta
8.	fīlia						

ADJECTIVES

30.	bona	35.	magna	39.	plāna
31.	clāra	36.	multa	40.	quīnta
32.	grāta	37.	nova	41.	tua
33.	lāta	38.	parva	42.	vēra
34.	longa				

VERBS

43	accūsō	49.	incitō	54.	nāvigō	59.	probō
44.	amō	50.	laudō	55.	nūntiō	60.	pugnō
45.	dōnō	51.	liberō	56.	occupō	61.	servō
46.	erat	52.	mandō	57.	parō	62.	spectō
47	erant	53.	mōnstrō	58.	portō	63.	sunt
48.	est					64.	vāstō

ADVERBS

65.	nōn	66.	nunc	67.	ubi

PREPOSITION

68. ad

CONJUNCTIONS

69. et 70. sed

95. Vocabulary Review

NOUNS

1. *farmer*
2. *water*
3. *cause*
4. *supply*
5. *care*
6. *report*
7. *family*
8. *daughter*
9. *shape*
10. *fortune*
11. *hour*
12. *wrong*
13. *island*
14. *letter*
15. *matter, timber*
16. *memory*
17. *sailor*
18. *money*
19. *punishment*
20. *loot*
21. *province*
22. *girl*
23. *battle*
24. *forest*
25. *land*
26. *wave*
27. *victory*
28. *way*
29. *life*

ADJECTIVES

30. *good*
31. *clear*
32. *pleasing*
33. *wide*
34. *long*
35. *large*
36. *much*
37. *new*
38. *little*
39. *level*
40. *fifth*
41. *your*
42. *true*

VERBS

43. *accuse*
44. *love*
45. *give*
46. *was*
47. *were*
48. *is*
49. *urge on*
50. *praise*
51. *set free*
52. *entrust*
53. *point out*
54. *sail*
55. *report*
56. *seize*
57. *get*
58. *carry*
59. *test*
60. *fight*
61. *save, keep*
62. *look at*
63. *are*
64. *lay waste*

ADVERBS

65. *not*
66. *now*
67. *where*

PREPOSITION

68. *to*

CONJUNCTIONS

69. *and*
70. *but*

96. English Word Studies

Give the nominative, genitive, gender, and meaning of the Latin noun suggested by each of the following English derivatives:

aqueduct, causal, copious, curate, fortunate, injure, insulation, literature, memorable, nautical, pecuniary, penalize, pugnacity, viaduct

97. Form Review

Drill. — (*a*) Give the singular and plural of the following nouns in the cases required:

(1) **victōria** in the dative; (2) **poena** in the genitive; (3) **unda** in the ablative; (4) **īnsula** in the accusative; (5) **littera** in the nominative.

(*b*) Translate into Latin:

(1)	*a large island*	in the nom., sing. and plur.
(2)	*the true reason*	in the gen., sing. and plur.
(3)	*a new letter*	in the dat., sing. and plur.
(4)	*a long battle*	in the acc., sing. and plur.
(5)	*great wrong*	in the abl., sing. and plur.

98. Rapid-Fire Drill

(1) Translate: **accūsābāmus, mōnstrās, dōnā, litterārum, pecūniā, laudābunt, servāre, nāvigātis, līberābat, parant.**

(2) Translate: *of the girls, we announce, he will love, you* (sing.) *were showing, they give, he fought.*

(3) What forms are: **aquīs, prōvinciae, undās, amābunt, multam, spectābātis, hōrīs, parvā, mandās?**

FIG. 33 ROMAN GLASSWARE IN THE METROPOLITAN MUSEUM

99. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
disciplī'na, -ae,[1] f., *training, learning* (disciplinary)	**au'geō, augē're,** *increase* (augment)
lin'gua, -ae, f., *tongue, language* (linguistic)	**dō'ceō, docē're,** *teach* (docile)
pa'tria, -ae, f., *fatherland, country*	**ha'beō, habē're,** *have, hold* (habit)
	ter'reō, terrē're, *terrify* (terrific)



World Wide

FIG. 34 ROME — ANCIENT, MEDIEVAL, MODERN

Tomb of the emperor Hadrian (117–138 A.D.), later rebuilt into a fort; at the right, St. Peter's and the Vatican

100. Second Conjugation: Present System Active

The verbs that have occurred in previous lessons contain the stem vowel **-ā-** and belong to the first conjugation. All verbs which show the stem vowel **-ē-** in the present system (present, imperfect, and future tenses) belong to the second conjugation.

[1] From now on only the genitive ending will be given instead of the full form.

PRESENT	
do'ceō, *I teach, am teaching, do teach*	docē'mus, *we teach, are teaching, do teach*
do'cēs, *you teach*, etc.	docē'tis, *you teach*, etc.
do'cet, *he, she, it teaches*, etc.	do'cent, *they teach*, etc.
IMPERFECT	
docē'bam, *I was teaching, did teach, taught*	docēbā'mus, *we were teaching, did teach, taught*
docē'bās, *you were teaching*, etc.	docēbā'tis, *you were teaching*, etc.
docē'bat, *he, she, it was teaching*, etc	docē'bant, *they were teaching*, etc
FUTURE	
docē'bō, *I shall teach*	docē'bimus, *we shall teach*
docē'bis, *you will teach*	docē'bitis, *you will teach*
docē'bit, *he, she, it will teach*	docē'bunt, *they will teach*

101. Conjugation. — To **conjugate** a verb is to give all its forms.

102. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **habeō** in the present tense, **terreō** in the imperfect, and **augeō** in the future.

(*b*) Give the singular imperative of *fight, teach;* give the plural imperative of *set free, have, terrify.*

(*c*) Translate: *they had, he increases, we showed, he will teach, you* (plur.) *terrify.*

103. English Word Studies

(*a*) From what Latin words are *terrible, territory, doctrine, document* derived? When is the word *doctor* used to mean one who teaches?

(*b*) A number of Latin verb forms are preserved as English words. First conjugation: **veto, habitat, ignoramus, mandamus.** Second conjugation: **tenet.** For their meaning, see the dictionary.

The Latin ablative of the first declension is preserved in English in the word **via**: "I am going to New York *via* (by way of) Pittsburgh." The ablative plural is found in **gratis**: "He is giving this *gratis*" (out of favor, *i.e.* for nothing). *Gratis* is a contracted form of **grātiīs.**

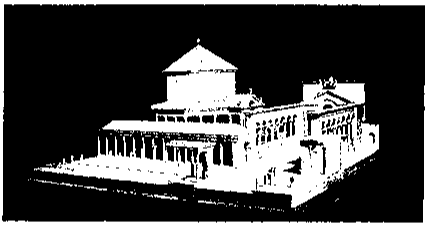
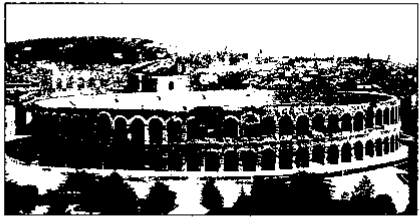


FIG 35. DIOCLETIAN'S PALACE AT SPALATO (SPLIT), JUGOSLAVIA
From a model of a small part of the huge palace of the emperor.

104. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Magnae undae Annam terrēbant. 2. Multās linguās nōn docēbō. 3. Magnam victōriam patriae prōvinciīs nūntiābimus. 4. Magnae undae cūrās nautārum augent. 5. Anna, docē linguās. 6. Victōria cōpiārum cōpiam pecūniae nōn augēbit. 7. Magnam pecūniam et parvam disciplīnam habēbat.

(*b*) 1. Nautae Annam (*were frightening*). 2. (*Love*) linguam patriae tuae. 3. Fīlia linguās (*will teach*). 4. (*Increase*) fortūnam tuam disciplīnā. 5. Pecūniam magnam nōn (*we did have*).



Wide World

FIG. 36. IN ITALIĀ

This Roman amphitheater at Verona, in northern Italy, is still used.

105. LINGUA LATĪNA

Patriam amāmus et amābimus. Disciplīnā fāmam patriae augēbimus. Lingua patriae nostrae nōn Latīna est. Sed linguā Latīnā scientiam[1] nostrae linguae augēmus. Lingua Latīna prīmō[2] nōbīs[3] nova erat sed nunc nōn terret. Linguam Latīnam amāmus et semper[4] in memoriā habēbimus. In Britanniā, in Italiā, in Galliā, in Germāniā, in multīs terrīs magistrī[5] linguam Latīnam docēbant et nunc docent et semper[4] docēbunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. When did Latin scare us? 2. Why study Latin?

[1] *knowledge.* [2] *at first.* [3] *to us.* [4] *always.* [5] *teachers.*

106. Vocabulary

Nouns		Verbs	
amīci'tia, -ae, f., *friendship*	[*amō*] [1]	**ma'neō, manē're,** *remain*	(mansion)
glō'ria, -ae, f., *glory*	(glorious)	**vi'deō, vidē're,** *see*	(provide)
grā'tia, -ae, f., *gratitude, favor, influence*	[*grāta*]	Preposition	
vigi'lia, -ae, f., *watchfulness, guard*	(vigilant)	**in,** with abl., *in* or *on*	

107. Latin Forms of English Names

Many English names of boys and girls are derived from Latin words (*a*) without, or (*b*) with change:

(*a*) Alma, *fostering;* Clara, *clear, bright;* Leo, *lion;* Stella, *star;* Sylvester, *pertaining to the woods.*

(*b*) Mabel, from **amābilis,** *lovable;* Belle, from **bella,** *beautiful;* Florence, from **flōrentia,** *flourishing;* Grace, from **grātia,** *grace;* Margaret, from **margarīta,** *pearl.*

The following names were in common use among the Romans:

August, Augustus, *venerable;* Rufus, *red-haired;* Victor, *conqueror;* Vincent (**vincēns**), *conquering.*

Other Roman names still used in English are:

Emil and Emily (**Aemilius, Aemilia**); Cecilia (**Caecilia**); Claudia; Cornelius, Cornelia; Horace (**Horātius**); Julius, Julia; Mark (**Mārcus**); Paul (**Paulus**).

Exercise. — See whether any members of your class have names derived from Latin which are not included here.

[1] When a new word in the vocabulary is related to a word previously studied, the latter instead of an English derivative is given in brackets.

108. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **magna grātia, vīta longa,** and **lingua nova.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1) *true friendship*	in the acc., sing. and plur.
(2) *good memory*	in the gen., sing. and plur.
(3) *a great country*	in the abl., sing. and plur.
(4) *a famous language*	in the dat., sing. and plur.

109. Prepositions of Place: *In*

In the preceding lessons the various uses of the prepositions *with, of, to, for, by,* with nouns have been expressed in Latin by means of case endings without prepositions. But certain of these English expressions require corresponding prepositions in Latin.

In with the ablative = *in* or *on.*

in silvā, *in a forest.*
in viīs, *on the streets.*

110. Drill. — Give the Latin for the words in italics: 1. *Remain* and *see* the show. 2. They saw me *on the island.* 3. He hunted *in the provinces.* 4. *Show* me your new watch.

111. Sentence Analysis. — Before writing the translation of an English sentence into Latin, you will find it helpful to place above every noun the case and number required in the Latin sentence, as follows:

NOM. S. ACC. S DAT. S.
1. The *man* gave a *book* to the *boy.*

GEN. S. NOM. S. ACC. S. ABL. S
2. My *friend's son* saved his *life* by *flight.*



Alinari

FIG 37 ANCIENT HOUSES IN HERCULANEUM

112. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Magnam pecūniam in patriā nunc habēmus. 2. Magna erat grātia puellārum. 3. Nautae in terrā nōn manēbunt. 4. Laudāte vēram amīcitiam. 5. Fāmam et glōriam patriae augēbimus. 6. Multās vigiliās in vīs videō. 7. Multam māteriam in silvīs vidēbitis.

(*b*) 1. (*On the streets*) vigiliās vidēbāmus. 2. Multa māteria (*in the forest*) est. 3. Cōpiae (*on the island*) nōn manēbunt. 4. (*In the provinces*) multās silvās vidēbimus.

(*c*) 1. Great is the glory of true friendship. 2. They remained in the island. 3. I shall see your daughter on the street. 4. By friendship you will increase your influence.

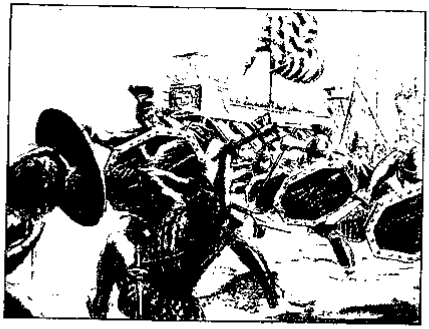


FIG. 38. CAESAR AD BRITANNIAM NĀVIGAT

113. BRITANNIA

Caesar cōpiās suās[1] in Galliā auget et ad magnam īnsulam Britanniam nāvigat. Britannōs[2] pugnīs terret sed in Britanniā nōn manet. Īnsulam videt, nōn occupat. Caesar grātiam et amīcitiam cōpiārum meret,[3] quod[4] magna est vigilia Caesaris.[5] Victōriās multīs litterīs Rōmae nūntiat. Nunc Caesar magnam glōriam habet. Ubi est Britannia?

Thought Questions. — 1. What did Caesar do in Britain? 2. Why did Caesar win the gratitude of his soldiers?

[1] *his*
[2] *the Britons* (accusative).
[3] *wins.*
[4] *because.*
[5] *of Caesar.*

LESSON XV

114. Vocabulary

Nouns		Adjectives	
car'rus, -ī, m., *cart, wagon*	(car)	al'tus (m.), -a (f.), *high, deep*	(altitude)
nu'merus, -ī, m., *number*	(numerical)	me'us, -a, *my, mine*	
ser'vus, -ī, m., *slave*	(servile)	pū'blicus, -a, *public*	(publish)
so'cius, so'cī, m., *comrade, ally*	(associate)		

Verbs

me'reō, merē're, *deserve, earn*	(merit)
te'neō, tenē're, *hold, keep*	(retention)

115. English Word Studies

(*a*) From their meanings tell which of the following words come from **servāre** and which from **servus**: *serf, conserve, serve, servant, reserve.*

(*b*) The following are some words of the **-us** type preserved in English in their original form. Note that in English **-ī** is pronounced like *-i* in mile:

Singular	Plural
alumnus	**alumni**
bacillus	**bacilli**
genius	**genii** (or **geniuses**, with different meaning)
gladiolus	**gladioli** (or **gladioluses**)
radius	**radii** (or **radiuses**)
	literati (singular rare)

Adjectives

bonus, quietus (both nouns in English)

Look up the plurals of **campus, circus, discus, focus, fungus, stimulus** in the dictionary.

116. Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in *-us*

All nouns studied thus far have the genitive singular ending **-ae** and belong to the first declension. Nouns of the **second declension** have the genitive singular ending **-ī**; the endings of the other cases also are different. Nouns ending in **-us** in the nominative are masculine.

Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined in the feminine like nouns of the first declension and in the masculine like those of the second declension.

Endings			English Force	ser'vus bo'nus, *a good slave* (base, serv- bon-)	
	Sing	Plur		Singular	Plural
Nom	-us (ius)	-ī	Subject	ser'vus bo'nus	ser'vī bo'nī
Gen.	-ī	-ōrum	Possessive	ser'vī bo'nī	servō'rum bonō'rum
Dat.	-ō	-īs	Indir. obj.	ser'vō bo'nō	ser'vīs bo'nīs
Acc.	-um	-ōs	Direct obj.	ser'vum bo'num	ser'vōs bo'nōs
Abl.	-ō	-īs	With prepositions	ser'vō bo'nō	ser'vīs bo'nīs

Observe that:

(*a*) The genitive singular and the nominative plural have the same ending (**-ī**), just as these cases have the same ending (**-ae**) in the first declension.

(*b*) The dative and ablative singular have the same ending (**-ō**), likewise the dative and ablative plural (**-īs**); the latter is the same as in the first declension.

(*c*) Several of the endings include an **-o**, for this is the **O-Declension.**

(*d*) Nouns (not adjectives) ending in **-ius** usually contract **-ii** to **-ī** in the genitive singular. so'cii becomes so'cī. The accent is not changed. The **-i-**, being a part of the base, appears in every form: dat. so'ciō, etc.

Caution. — The nominative plural does not contract.

(*e*) The nominative singular and plural are preserved in many English words: **alumnus, alumni.** Other examples are given in **115** (*b*).

117. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **carrus parvus, socius meus.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1) *a good cart* in the nom., sing. and plur.
(2) *a new comrade* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(3) *a small number* in the dat., sing. and plur.
(4) *a large forest* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(5) *a public slave* in the abl., sing. and plur.



FIG. 39. A ROMAN KEY OF BRONZE

118. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Amīcitiam sociōrum merēmus. 2. Magnus numerus servōrum est in viā lātā. 3. Sociīs meīs et tuīs carrum novum mōnstrābō. 4. Vidēte magnum numerum carrōrum altōrum in viā pūblicā. 5. Fīlia mea servōs tuōs laudat. 6. Agricolae, līberāte servōs et merēte grātiam patriae. 7. Parvam cōpiam aquae bonae in īnsulā tenēbāmus.

(*b*) 1. (*My slaves*) in viīs nōn manent. 2. Agricola (*a large number of wagons*) habet. 3. Amīcitiam (*of my comrades*) merēbō. 4. (*To my slave*) pecūniam dōnābō.

(*c*) 1. Gratitude and friendship are pleasing. 2. I shall see many comrades. 3. You (*sing.*) deserve great fame. 4. Keep (*sing.*) your money and you will have an abundance.



FIG. 40. EQUI

These magnificent bronze horses, made in Roman times, now stand over the entrance to the church of St. Mark's, Venice

119. SOCIUS

Socius meus Mārcus in Altā Viā habitat. Carrum parvum et equum parvum habet. Equum incitat, et equus nōs[1] ad silvam portat. Via plāna et lāta est. In viā magnum numerum servōrum pūblicōrum vidēmus; servī in viā labōrant. Mārcus equum mihi[2] mandat. Grātiam meam meret, et amīcitiam Mārcī memoriā tenēbō.

Thought Questions. — 1. What does Marcus have? 2. In what way was Marcus friendly to me?

[1] *us.* [2] *to me.*

120. Vocabulary

NOUN

captī'vus, -ī, m., *prisoner* (captivate)

ADJECTIVES

amī'cus, -a, *friendly,* as a noun, *friend* [*amō*]

ma'lus, -a, *bad* (malice)

sin'gulī, -ae, plur., *one at a time* (singular)

VERBS

mo'veō, movē're, *move* (movement)

vo'cō, vocā're, *call, summon* (vocation)

PREPOSITIONS

ā, ab,[1] with abl., *from, by*

dē, with abl., *down from, from, concerning, about*

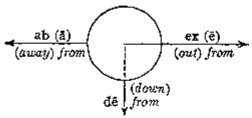
ē, ex,[1] with abl., *out of, from*

121. Prepositions of Place: *Ab, Dē, Ex*

ā, ab
dē
ē, ex } used with the ablative = *from.*

Examples: **ā viā,** (*away*) *from the road.*
dē silvā, (*down*) *from the forest.*
ex aquā, (*out*) *from the water.*

While all three prepositions mean *from,* **ab** means *away from the outside;* **ex,** *out from the inside;* **dē,** merely *from* when it is not important to distinguish. Sometimes **dē** means *down from.* See diagram:



[1] The shorter forms **ā** and **ē** are used only before words beginning with a consonant (except *h*), **ab** and **ex** before consonants and vowels.

122. Latin and English Word Formation

A great many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (**prae** = *in front;* **fixus** = *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are those chiefly used in English, and by their use many new words are continually being formed. Thus through them English *lives* and grows — without them it would be *dead.*

Examples of the prefixes **ab**–, **dē**–, and **ex**– are:

(*a*) **ab-** (**abs**–, **ā**–): *a-vocation, ab-undance, abs-tain.*
(*b*) **dē**–: *de-fame, de-form, de-ter, de-viate.*
(*c*) **ex**– (**ē**–, **ef**–): *ex-alt, ex-port, ex-pect* (from **spectō**), *e-voke.*

Define the above words according to prefix and root. For root words, see previous vocabularies.

The following are other examples of the prefix **ex**– in English: *ex-cuse, e-dict, ex-empt, ef-fect, e-gress, ex-it.*

You will find it helpful to keep a list of prefixes in your notebook and to add after each many examples of their use in English words.

123. The Vocative Case

In Latin, as in English, the case (**vocative**) used in addressing a person has the same form as the nominative, except in the singular of nouns and adjectives of the second declension ending in **-us** and **-ius**. These have **-ĕ**, but in nouns (not adjectives) in **-ius**, **-ie** is contracted to **-ī**:

Ubi estis, Mārce et Lūcī et Claudia? *Where are you, Marcus, Lucius, and Claudia?*

Unless emphatic, the vocative never stands first in the sentence.

124. Drill. — Give the vocative of the following nouns: *prisoner, comrade, sailor, slave, farmer, daughter, friend.*



FIG. 41 ON THE NILE RIVER

From a mosaic floor found at Pompeii. Such mosaics took the place of elaborate rugs.

125. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Servī malī magnam pecūniam et praedam ab īnsulīs portābant. 2. Cornēlī, movē carrōs singulōs dē silvā altā. 3. Mārce, vocā servōs ē silvā; ab īnsulā nāvigābimus. 4. Sociī captīvōs ē viā pūblicā movēbunt. 5. In malā fortūnā vērōs amīcōs habēbāmus. 6. Captīvī, portāte māteriam dē silvīs ad aquam. 7. Magnus numerus carrōrum erat in vīīs plānīs.

(*b*) 1. My daughter had a large number of true friends. 2. Brutus, move the prisoners from the island. 3. The allies are now summoning forces from many provinces. 4. One-at-a-time[1] they sailed from the island to the new land.

[1] Words connected by hyphens are to be expressed by one word in Latin.



FIG. 42 POENA SERVŌRUM MALŌRUM MAGNA ERAT

126. SERVĪ

Servī Rōmānī erant captīvī. Rōmānī multīs pugnīs singulās terrās vāstābant, et magnus erat numerus captīvōrum. Servōs ē Graeciā, ē Galliā, ex Asiā, ex Āfricā parābant. In familiā Rōmānā erant multī servī.

Dominus[1] servōs vocābat: "Mārce et Stāte,[2] portāte māteriam dē silvā; Cornēlī, movē carrum ā viā."

Servī aquam portābant, litterās Graecās docēbant, vigiliae erant, medicī[3] erant. Multī clārī Graecī erant servī et amīcī Rōmānōrum. Litterae[4] Rōmānōrum memoriam multōrum servōrum servant. Poena servī malī magna erat. Servōs bonōs Rōmānī līberābant.

Thought Questions. — 1. How did the Romans get their slaves? 2. Where? 3. Name six things that the slaves did.

[1] *the master* [2] *Statius (Stā'shius).* [3] *doctors.* [4] *literature.*

127. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Slaves

In the earliest days the Romans had few slaves, but as they prospered they came to depend more and more on them to do their work. Many slaves were obtained by the conquest of foreign nations. A large number came from the Orient and spoke Greek. Many of these became teachers, doctors, musicians, actors, bookkeepers, etc.

The lot of the slave was not as hard as we might imagine, though he was often enough mistreated by a cruel master. Slaves were given an allowance, and the thrifty slave could hope to save enough in the course of years to buy his freedom. Masters often granted freedom out of gratitude for services rendered. Many of these freedmen became very rich and influential. A fine example of the intimate relation of master and slave is that of Cicero and his secretary Tiro, a brilliant man who invented a system of shorthand. Some of Cicero's letters show the greatest affection for Tiro.

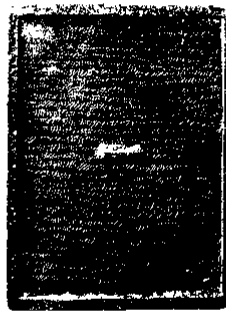


FIG. 43 WAX TABLET WITH GREEK SHORTHAND

The wealthy classes kept large numbers of slaves, all of whom had their special tasks. One might be in charge of polishing the silver, another of writing letters, another of announcing the guests or the hour of the day, etc.

Disobedient slaves were punished in various ways. The master had the right to kill a slave, but naturally he was not often inclined to do so, as he would be destroying his own property by doing this. Flogging was a common punishment. Another was to send a city slave to the farm, where the work was harder. Runaway slaves when caught were branded on the forehead with the letter **F**, which stands for **fugītīvus.** You can guess the meaning of the word from the English derivative.

Read Showerman, pp. 71–73; Davis, pp. 124–138; McDaniel, pp. 26–40, Johnston, pp. 98–124, Mills, pp. 346 ff

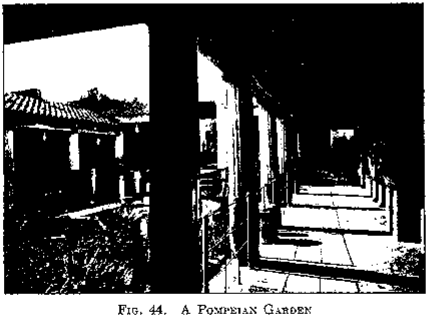


FIG. 44. A POMPEIAN GARDEN

LESSON XVII

128. Vocabulary

Nouns	Adjectives
a'ger, a'grī, m., *field* [*agricola*]	**lī'ber** (m.), **lī'bera** (f.), *free* [*liberō*]
e'quus, -ī, m., *horse* (equestrian)	**nos'ter, nos'tra,** *our* (nostrum)
magis'ter, magis'trī, m., *teacher* (Mr.)	**sa'cer, sa'cra,** *sacred* (consecrate)
pu'er, pu'erī, m., *boy* (puerile)	
vir, vi'rī, m., *man, hero* (virile)	

129. Second Declension: Nouns and Adjectives in -r

Masculine nouns and adjectives whose base ends in **-r** omit the ending in **-us** in the nominative singular. Such words therefore end in **-er** or **-r** in the nominative. The genitive singular shows whether **-e-** is retained before **-r** in the other forms. In memorizing vocabularies, always note carefully (*a*) the *nominative*, (*b*) the *genitive*, (*c*) the *gender* of every noun.

	a'ger nos'ter, *our field* (base, agr- nostr-)		**pu'er lī'ber,** *a free boy* (base, puer- liber-)	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	a'ger nos'ter	a'grī nos'trī	pu'er lī'ber	pu'erī lī'berī
Gen.	a'grī nos'trī	agrō'rum nostrō'rum	pu'erī lī'berī	puerō'rum liberō'rum
Dat.	a'grō nos'trō	a'grīs nos'trīs	pu'erō lī'berō	pu'erīs lī'berīs
Acc.	a'grum nos'trum	a'grōs nos'trōs	pu'erum lī'berum	pu'erōs lī'berōs
Abl.	a'grō nos'trō	a'grīs nos'trīs	pu'erō lī'berō	pu'erīs lī'berīs

Note. — (1) Nouns and adjectives like **puer** and **liber** have the **-e-** throughout; those like **ager** and **noster** have it only in the nominative singular, while **vir** has no **-e-** at all. Most **-er** words are like **ager**; no others are like **vir**.

(2) The English derivative will usually help determine whether the **-e-** is retained or not; *e.g. puerile, liberal, miserable; agriculture, sacred, magistrate.*

130. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **magister amīcus, ager malus, vir līber.**

(*b*) Tell the form of **equīs, agrum, cōpiārum, nostrī, virō.**

131. English Word Studies

Several Latin words of the **-er** type are in common use in English:

Nouns: **arbiter, cancer, minister, vesper.**

Adjectives: **integer, miser, neuter, sinister** (the first two are used as nouns in English).

132. Assimilation. — Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This is called **assimilation** (**ad** = *to;* **similis** = *like*).

The prefix **ad-** is generally assimilated. Define the following — all formed from words in the previous vocabularies: *ac-curate, al-literation, an-nounce, apparatus, a-spect, as-sociate, ad-vocate.*

Additional examples of assimilation of **ad-** are: *ab-breviate, af-fect, ag-gressive, ac-quire, ar-rogant, at-tend.*

133. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Incitā, Mārce, equum ad agrum. 2. Magister noster linguam clāram docet. 3. Magister tuus puerō malō pecūniam nōn dōnābit. 4. Magnōs agrōs et viās lātās et virōs līberōs in Americā vidēbitis. 5. Memoria clārōrum nostrōrum virōrum sacra est.

6. Virī nostrī agrōs sociōrum amīcōrum nōn vāstābant.
7. Equōs nostrōs magistrō et puerīs mōnstrābimus.

(*b*) 1. Give Anna the boy's money. 2. Our country is free and sacred. 3. The farmers were moving the timber out-of the forest to the water with horses. 4. I see many horses in our friends' fields.



FIG 45 MAGISTER PUERŌS DOCET

A school scene from a stone relief found in Trier, Germany.

134. MAGISTER

Magister noster bonus vir est. Puerīs bonīs pecūniam dōnat. Puer bonus sum. Magister puerōs dē agrīs et silvīs, dē glōriā et fāmā patriae nostrae, līberae et sacrae, docet.

Carrum parvum, sed nōn equum magister habet. In carrō ad lūdum[1] venit.[2] Sine[3] equō? Sine equō. Magister carrum nōn movet; carrus sē[4] movet.

Amīcus meus Paulus magistrum nōn amat; magister Paulō pecūniam nōn dōnat. Sed Paulus pecūniam nōn meret. Malus est in lūdō; puellās terret.

Thought Questions. — 1. How does the teacher get to school? 2. Why doesn't Paul like the teacher?

[1] *school.* [2] *he comes.* [3] *without.* [4] *itself.*

LESSON XVIII

135. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
a'nimus, -ī, m., *mind, courage* (unanimous)	**ha'bitō, habitā're**, *live* (habitation)
colō'nus, -ī, m., *settler* (colonize)	**labō'rō, labōrā're**, *labor, suffer* (laborious)
nūn'tius, nūn'tī, m., *messenger* [*nūntiō*]	**mi'grō, migrā're**, *depart* (migration)

Preposition

in, with acc., *into;* with abl., *in, on*



Fig. 46. Scene in an Inn

This ancient picture shows, on the left, two men quarreling over a game; on the right, the innkeeper telling them to do their quarreling outdoors.

136. English Word Formation

The prefix **in-** is often assimilated. Define the following, formed from words found in recent vocabularies: *in-gratiate, in-habit, im-migrant, im-port, in-spect, in-undate.* What is the difference between *emigration* and *immigration?* Additional examples of assimilation of **in-** are: *im-bibe, il-lusion.* Words that have come in through the French often have **en-** or **em-** for **in-** or **im-**: *enchant, inquire* or *enquire.*

137. Present Indicative of *Sum*

The verb *to be* is irregularly formed in English and Latin, as well as in other languages, and does not belong to one of the "regular" conjugations.

sum, *I am*	su'mus, *we are*
es, *you are*	es'tis, *you are*
est, *he, she, it is*	sunt, *they are*

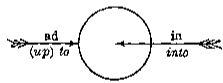
138. What Case?

Review **44, Caution.** Give the Latin in the proper case for the underlined words:

1. They are sailors.
2. We are settlers.
3. They move the prisoners.
4. He is a slave.
5. I teach my friend.
6. You are boys.

139. Prepositions of Place: *Ad, In*

ad with acc. = *(up) to* **in** with acc. = *into*



Carrōs { **ad** / **in** } **aquam movent,** *They move the carts* { *to* / *into* } *the water.*

Compare a like difference between **ab** and **ex** (121).

140. Two Uses of *In* Distinguished

(1) **in** with acc. = *into* (2) **in** with abl. = *in* or *on*

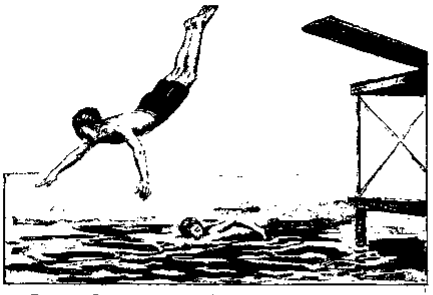


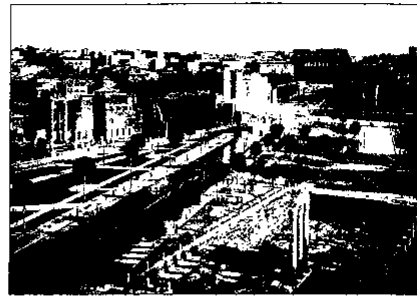
FIG 47 IN AQUAM IN AQUĀ

141. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Servī estis et in agrīs labōrātis. 2. Bonus servus labōrat iniūriā[1] malī servī. 3. Animus magnus virōrum nautās terrēbat. 4. Māteriam equīs et carrīs dē silvīs ad aquam portābitis. 5. Multī līberī virī in īnsulā magnā habitant. 6. Socii nostrī numerum magnum captīvōrum in īnsulam movēbant. 7. Colōnī ex Eurōpā migrant et ad līberam Americam nāvigant. 8. Servī equōs nūntī in silvās incitābant.

(*b*) 1. We are messengers of a great victory. 2. The messenger's horse is in our field. 3. The prisoners will carry the timber from the woods into the fields. 4. Give the loot to the friendly settlers of the island.

[1] The ablative of cause is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling: **Labōrāre iniūriā**, *To suffer because of the wrong.*



Ewing Galloway

FIG. 48 URBS RŌMA

In the foreground, the Forum of Caesar and the three columns of the temple of Venus. The new street passes the fora of Trajan, Augustus, etc., to the Colosseum (see Fig. 32). Modern Rome is in the background.

142. COLŌNĪ RŌMĀNĪ

Puer Rōmānus sum. Es puer? Colōnī sumus et in agrīs labōrāmus. Estis colōnī? Multī agricolae ad urbem[1] Rōmam migrant. In urbem carrō frūmentum portāmus sed in urbe nōn manēmus. In urbe multī virī habitant sed nōn in agrīs. Agrī nostrī magnī sunt. Līberī sumus, sed labōrāmus; multōs servōs nōn habēmus. Pecūniam nōn habēmus.

Nūntius ad agrōs venit[2] et nūntiat victōriās cōpiārum nostrārum. Cōpiae disciplīnam et animum habent.

Thought Questions. — 1. For what purpose do these farmers go to Rome? 2. Why do these farmers have few slaves?

[1] *city* (accusative). [2] *comes*.

LESSON XIX

143. Vocabulary

NOUNS

cas'tra, -ō'rum, n., plur., *camp* (Lancaster)

cōnsi'lium, cōnsi'lī, n., *plan, prudence, advice* (counsel)

sig'num, -ī, n., *sign, standard, signal* (sign)

frūmen'tum, -ī, n., *grain* (fruit)

prae'mium, prae'mī, n., *reward* (premium)

ADJECTIVE

bar'barus (m.), **-a** (f.), **-um** (n.), *foreign* (barbarian)

VERB

ē'vocō, ēvocā're, *call out, summon* [*vocō*]

Watch for other English derivatives in your daily reading.

144. Second Declension: Neuter Nouns and Adjectives in *-um*

The second declension contains, in addition to the masculine nouns ending in **-us, -er,** and **-r,** a large group of neuter nouns ending in **-um.** The only difference between them and the **-us** nouns is in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

CASE ENDINGS			sig'num par'vum, *a small sign* (base, sigo- parv-)			
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Nom.	**-um**	**-a**	sig'num	par'vum	sig'na	par'va
Gen.	**-ī**	**-ōrum**	sig'nī	par'vī	signō'rum	parvō'rum
Dat.	**-ō**	**-īs**	sig'nō	par'vō	sig'nīs	par'vīs
Acc.	**-um**	**-a**	sig'num	par'vum	sig'na	par'va
Abl.	**-ō**	**-īs**	sig'nō	par'vō	sig'nīs	par'vīs

Note. — (*a*) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions have the same form in the accusative singular as in the nominative.

(*b*) Neuter nouns and adjectives of all declensions end in **-ā** in the nominative and accusative plural.

(*c*) Neuter nouns (not adjectives) of the second declension ending in **-ium** usually contract **-iī** to **-ī** in the genitive singular: **cōnsi'liī** becomes **cōnsi'lī**. The accent is not changed. The **-i-**, being a part of the base, appears in every form (dat.) **cōnsiliō**, etc.

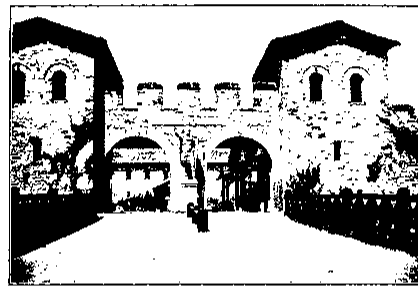


FIG. 49. CASTRA RŌMĀNA IN GERMĀNIĀ

The rebuilt entrance gate of a permanent camp at Saalburg, Germany, erected by the Romans. The Romans built many such camps in Germany as a protection against German invasions.

145. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **frūmentum bonum** and **praemium grātum.**

(*b*) Give in Latin:

(1) *a new standard* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(2) *a famous reward* in the abl., sing. and plur.
(3) *a great plan* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(4) *a small camp* in the dat.

146. English Word Studies

(*a*) The following are Latin words of the **-um** and **-ium** type preserved in their original form in English:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
bacterium	**bacteria**	**curriculum**	**curricula** (or **-ums**)
candelabrum	**candelābra** (or **-ums**)	**spectrum**	**spectra** (or **-ums**)

(*b*) Latin adjectives and participles used as nouns in English:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
addendum	**addenda**	**memorandum**	**memoranda** (or **-ums**)
agenda			
datum	**data** (remember to say *these* **data**)	**minimum**	**minima** (or **-ums**)
dictum	**dicta** (or **-ums**)	**stratum**	**strata** (or **-ums**)
maximum	**maxima** (or **-ums**)		

147. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Amīcus meus multa praemia merēbit. 2. Cōnsiliō bonō vītam amīcī nostrī servābō. 3. Litterīs virōs barbarōs ad castra ēvocābat. 4. Agricolae frūmentum ex agrīs in castra portābant. 5. Captīvī singulī nostrīs virīs cōnsilium nūntiābant. 6. Castra sociōrum nostrōrum nunc sunt in magnā īnsulā. 7. Fabī, nūntiā signō victōriam amīcīs tuīs.

(*b*) 1. We shall give our friends great rewards. 2. The men were moving the grain from the camp with horse and wagon. 3. We saw much grain (*plur.*) in our friends' fields. 4. The colonists will sail from Europe to America.

148. TROIA

Graecī et Troiānī[1] ad Troiam[2] pugnābant. Troiānī barbarī erant, quī[3] in Asiā habitābant. Annōs x pugnant. Tum Ulixēs,[4] clārus Graecus, cōnsilium novum docet. Graecī multam māteriam ex silvā ad castra portant. Ex māteriā equum altum parant. In equum virī ascendunt.[5] In equō scrībunt:[6] "Graecī cēdentēs[7] Minervae praemium dōnant." Tum equum ad Troiam movent. Ad īnsulam parvam nāvigant et frūmentum parant. Troiānī equum et castra dēserta[8] Graecōrum vident. Equum vocant sacrum et in oppidum movent. Nocte[9] Graecī ab īnsulā revertunt[10] et ūnus ex Graecīs[11] virōs signō ex equō ēvocat. Sociōs in oppidum vocant. Troiam occupant et vāstant.



FIG. 50. EQUUS TROIĀNUS

Thought Questions. — 1. Where did the Greeks go from Troy? 2. When did they return? 3. How did the Greeks in the horse know when to come out?

Read Sabin, pp. 277–292; Colum, pp. 118–121.

[1] *the Trojans.* [2] *Troy* [3] *who.* [4] *Ulys'sēs.* [5] *climb* [6] *write.* [7] *departing.* [8] *deserted.* [9] *at night.* [10] *return.* [11] *one of the Greeks.*

LESSON XX

149. Vocabulary

Nouns	Verbs
ar'ma, **-ō'rum**, n., plur., *arms, weapons* (armor)	**dē'beō**, **dēbē're**, *owe, ought, be obliged to* (debt)
auxi'lium, **auxi'lī**, n., *help, aid;* plur., *reinforcements* (auxiliary)	**mātū'rō**, **mātūrā're**, *hasten* (maturity)
bel'lum, **-ī**, n., *war* (belligerent)	
concor'dia, **-ae**, f., *harmony* (concord)	

150. English Word Studies

(*a*) English words borrowed from the Latin which have preserved the original case forms of the second declension are:

Gen. *agri*-culture, *horti*-culture
Abl. *quarto, limbo, No.* (= *Numero*)

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

multum in parvō, *much in little.*
dē novō, *anew*, literally, *from a new (start).*
in memoriam, *to the memory (of)* — the title of a poem by Tennyson.

151. Imperfect and Future Indicative of *Sum*

Review the present tense of the verb **sum** (137). The imperfect and future tenses of **sum** are likewise irregularly formed:

IMPERFECT	
e'ram, *I was*	erā'mus, *we were*
e'rās, *you were*	erā'tis, *you were*
e'rat, *he, she, it was*	e'rant, *they were*
FUTURE	
e'rō, *I shall be*	e'rimus, *we shall be*
e'ris, *you will be*	e'ritis, *you will be*
e'rit, *he, she, it will be*	e'runt, *they will be*

Caution. — Do not say *You was.*

152. Infinitive Used as Subject

(*a*) The infinitive is a verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb; as,

Habēre amīcōs est grātum, *To have friends is pleasing.*
(Cf. **Errāre hūmānum est,** *To err is human.*)

Note. — While Latin nouns are declined and represent different genders, the infinitive when used as subject is indeclinable and is *neuter*. Therefore the predicate adjective must also be neuter, as **grātum** in the example above.

(*b*) The infinitive may be used as a predicate nominative; as, **Vidēre est crēdere,** *To see is to believe.*

153. Infinitive Used as Object

With many verbs the infinitive may be used as direct object, like other nouns; as,

Parat cōpiās movēre, *He prepares to move the troops.*

Note. — This is sometimes called the **complementary infinitive**, because in a sense it *completes* the meaning of the main verb.

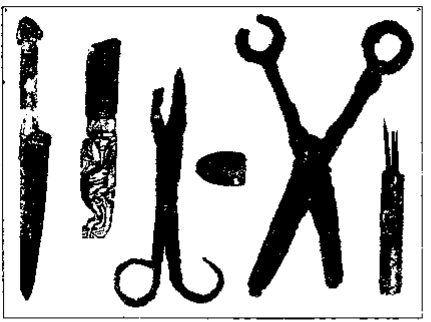


FIG. 51 ROMAN KNIVES AND SCISSORS
In the center, a thimble; at the right, a case of needles

154. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Grātum erat vidēre magnum numerum equōrum in agrīs. 2. Habēre pecūniam est habēre multās cūrās. 3. Puerō praemium nostrum mōnstrāre mātūrāmus. 4. Nūntiī pecūniā et praemiīs animōs nautārum incitāre parābant. 5. Cōpiae signa et arma ad terram novam portāre mātūrant. 6. Āmīcī nostrī frūmentum habēre dēbent. 7. Bonum erit habēre concordiam et auxilium in bellō.

(*b*) 1. It was pleasing to see the courage and harmony of the colonists. 2. Slaves, hasten to increase the supply of grain. 3. The messenger ought to report the plan of war to the men. 4. It is bad to owe money.

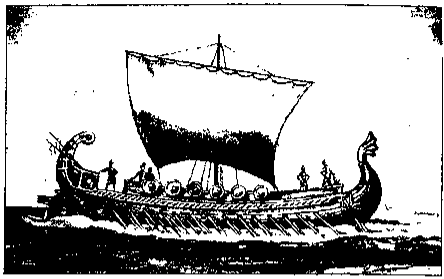


FIG 52. NĀVIGĀRE PARANT
A Roman warship, or trireme

155. BELLUM ET VICTŌRIA

Colōnī in īnsulā manēbant et sociīs arma et frūmentum dōnābant. Equīs et carrīs frūmentum ad castra portābant. Virī pugnāre et augēre numerum captīvōrum mātūrant. Cōpiae sociōrum multōs agrōs vāstābant et colōnīs praedam multam dōnābant. Sociōs ob[1] auxilium laudant: "Sociī bonī, semper amīcī erimus. Magna est concordia nostra, magna erit victōria." Castra movēre et nāvigāre parant. Multōs nautās et nūntiōs singulōs in viā vidēbāmus. Erat novum vidēre multōs virōs, equōs, et carrōs. Longum erat bellum, sed magnae erant victōriae cōpiārum. Patria victōriās memoriā tenēre dēbet.

Thought Questions. — 1. How did the allies aid the colonists? 2. Where were messengers seen?

[1] *on account of.*

SECOND REVIEW (LESSONS XIII–XX)

156. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. ager[1]
2. amīcitia
3. animus
4. arma
5. auxilium
6. bellum
7. captīvus
8. carrus
9. castra
10. colōnus
11. concordia
12. cōnsilium
13. disciplina
14. equus
15. frūmentum
16. glōria
17. grātia
18. lingua
19. magister
20. numerus
21. nūntius
22. patria
23. praemium
24. puer
25. servus
26. signum
27. socius
28. vigilia
29. vir

Adjectives

30. altus
31. amīcus
32. barbarus
33. līber
34. malus
35. meus
36. noster
37. pūblicus
38. sacer
39. singulī

Verbs

40. augeō
41. dēbeō
42. doceō
43. ēvocō
44. habeō
45. habitō
46. labōrō
47. maneō
48. mātūrō
49. mereō
50. migrō
51. moveō
52. teneō
53. terreō
54. videō
55. vocō

Prepositions

56. ab
57. dē
58. ex
59. in

[1] Give the full vocabulary form of each word as presented in the previous lessons.

157. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *field*
2. *friendship*
3. *mind*
4. *arms*
5. *help*
6. *war*
7. *prisoner*
8. *cart*
9. *camp*
10. *settler*
11. *harmony*
12. *plan*
13. *training*
14. *horse*
15. *grain*
16. *glory*
17. *gratitude*
18. *tongue*
19. *teacher*
20. *number*
21. *messenger*
22. *fatherland*
23. *reward*
24. *boy*
25. *slave*
26. *sign*
27. *comrade*
28. *watchfulness*
29. *man*

Adjectives

30. *high, deep*
31. *friendly*
32. *foreign*
33. *free*
34. *bad*
35. *my*
36. *our*
37. *public*
38. *sacred*
39. *one at a time*

Verbs

40. *increase*
41. *owe, ought*
42. *teach*
43. *call out*
44. *have*
45. *live*
46. *labor*
47. *remain*
48. *hasten*
49. *deserve*
50. *depart*
51. *move*
52. *hold*
53. *frighten*
54. *see*
55. *call*

Prepositions

56. *from, by*
57. *from, concerning*
58. *out of, from*
59. *in, on, into*

158. English Word Studies — Review

(1) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the first declension.

(2) Give and define three English words which preserve Latin verb forms.

(3) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, masculine.

(4) Give and define three English nouns which retain Latin nominative forms, singular and plural, of the second declension, neuter.

(5) Give prefix and root word from which the following are derived, and define:

defame, approve, advocate, invocation, immigrant, emigrant, avocation, vocation, deter

(6) What is the original form of the prefix in the following?

affect, effect, defect, aspect, improve, alliteration, affront, abstain

159. Declension and Agreement of Adjectives and Nouns

We have noted (23) that an adjective in Latin must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. This agreement is shown by endings. In order, therefore, to modify nouns of different genders, every adjective thus far studied has a threefold declension as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N	M.	F	N.
Nom.	mag'nus	mag'na	mag'num	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'na
Gen.	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'nī	magnō'-rum	magnā'-rum	magnō'-rum
Dat.	mag'nō	mag'nae	mag'nō	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs
Acc.	mag'num	mag'nam	mag'num	mag'nōs	mag'nās	mag'na
Abl.	mag'nō	mag'nā	mag'nō	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs

160. Drill. — (*a*) Decline in full **līber, lībera, līberum** and **novus, nova, novum.**

(*b*) Decline the adjective **sacer, sacra, sacrum** in turn with **nūntius, via,** and **bellum.**

(*c*) Give the vocative of **servus, nūntius, captīvus.**

161. A Study in Agreement

Since **nauta** is masculine and belongs to the first declension, an adjective, when made to agree with it in gender, number, and case, must assume the masculine endings of the second declension, as follows: **nauta bonus, nautae bonī,** etc. Decline in full. Similarly **agricola.**

162. Drill. — Decline together *a bad boy, our sailor, pleasing harmony,* and *public aid.*

163. Review of Verbs

(1) Give the present stems of the following verbs:

habitō, terreō, vocō, moveō, dēbeō, mātūrō, augeō

(2) Conjugate in full, with meanings, (*a*) **migrō** in the present, (*b*) **maneō** in the imperfect, (*c*) **doceō** in the future.

(3) Give in Latin:

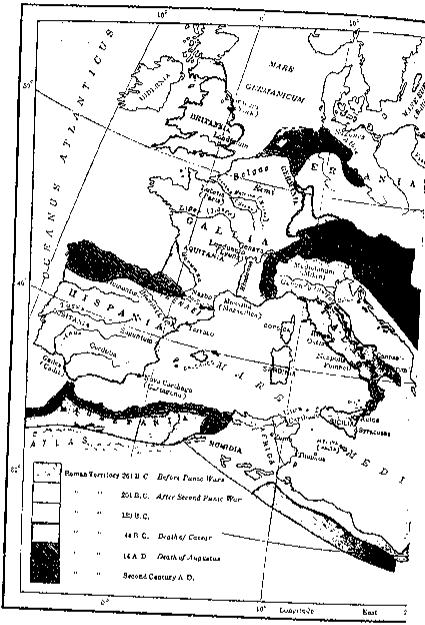
they were, he will be, I am, you (sing.) *are, move, she is, you* (plur.) *were, we shall be, I was, fight, they are*

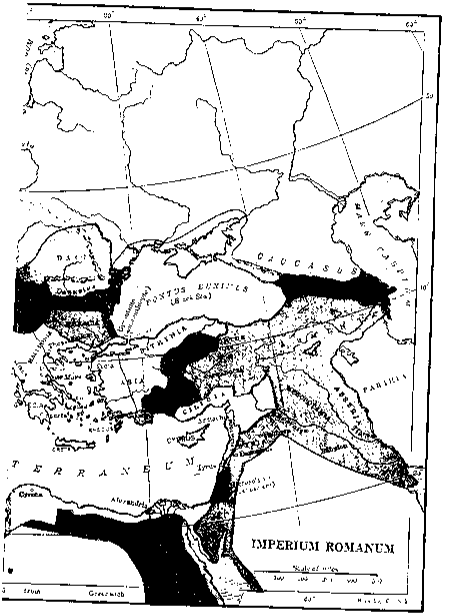
164. Rapid-Fire Drill

(1) Translate: **habēbis, māteriā, probāmus, manent, sociōrum, dēbētis, ēvocābunt.**

(2) Translate: *we were, from the waves, she did entrust, of our gratitude, we deserve, he was hastening, I shall move, to see.*

(3) What forms are: **tenent, socī, amābāmus, amīce, vigiliīs, nūntiī, nūntiābimus, docēbitis, mōnstrās, auxiliōrum, nūntī?**


OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
MARE GERMANICUM
BRITANNIA
GALLIA
HISPANIA
ITALIA
SICILIA
SARDINIA
CORSICA
NUMIDIA
Roman Territory 261 B.C. Before Punic Wars
201 B.C. After Second Punic War
133 B.C.
44 B.C. Death of Caesar
14 A.D. Death of Augustus
Second Century A.D.
10° East


IMPERIUM ROMANUM
Scale of miles
PONTUS EUXINUS
(Black Sea)
CAUCASUS
PARTHIA
ARABIA
MARE CASPIUM
TERRANEUM
Cyprus
Alexandria
Greenwich

LESSON XXI

165. Questions

In Latin a question is regularly introduced by an interrogative word — either a pronoun (**quis,** *who?* **quid,** *what?*) or adverb (**ubi,** *where?* etc.), or the particle **-ne.** The latter is therefore a kind of question mark at the beginning of a sentence and cannot be translated. It is never used alone but is always attached to the first word in the sentence. Such attached words are called enclitics. As the enclitic becomes part of the preceding word, the word accent may shift: **īnsulam'ne.**[1]

When **nōn** is used in a question, it is put first and the enclitic **-ne** is attached to it.

166. Conversation: A Geography Lesson

M. = **Magister,** *teacher* **D.** = **Discipulī,** *pupils*

M. Spectāte, discipulī. **D.** Spectāmus, magister.

M. Ubi est Italia? **D.** In Eurōpā Italia est.

M. Estne Italia lāta? **D.** Italia longa sed nōn lāta est.

M. Īnsulamne vidētis? **D.** Corsicam vidēmus.

M. Estne Corsica magna īnsula? **D.** Parva, nōn magna īnsula est Corsica.

M. Quid in Siciliā vidētis? **D.** Aetnam vidēmus.

M. Magnam īnsulam mōnstrō; Britannia est. Colōnī ex Britanniā ad Americam migrābant.

[1] There was a tendency to avoid attaching an enclitic to a word ending in a short vowel and having a short penult. Thus **Corsi'cane** would not be used but the enclitic would be attached to some other word in the sentence.

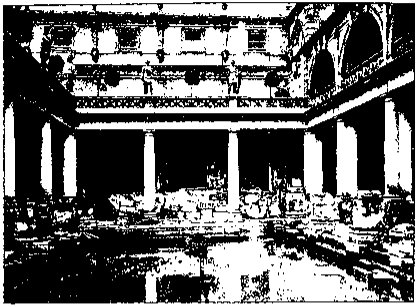


FIG. 53 IN BRITANNIĀ

Ancient Roman baths at Bath, England

M. Eratne Gallia prōvincia? **D.** Gallia erat prōvincia imperī[1] Rōmānī.

M. Nōnne magna erat glōria Galliae? **D.** Magna erat et est et erit glōria Galliae.

M. Discipulī, quis oculōs[2] bonōs habet? **Lūcius.** Ego.[3]

M. Mōnstrā discipulīs Rōmam. **Lūcius.** Rōma in Italiā est.

Note. — Ask questions and make statements similar to the above, using the accompanying map or a large wall map.

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Eurōpane est in Italiā? 2. Estne Italia īnsula? 3. Ubi est Rōma? 4. Estne Italia prōvincia?

[1] *Empire.* [2] *eyes.* [3] *I.*



FIG 54. SPARTACUS, CAPTĪVUS RŌMĀNŌRUM

167. SPARTACUS

Spartacus erat clārus servus, captīvus Rōmānōrum. Sociōs ēvocat et incitat: "Ō sociī, Rōmānī nōn sunt amīcī nostrī. Puer eram in patriā meā, et vīta grāta erat. Silvās et agrōs amābam; līber eram. Vērum amīcum habēbam, puerum bonum et grātum. Sed Rōmānī patriam meam vāstant; mē et amīcum meum ex patriā portant; nunc captīvus sum et servus. Vir sum et in arēnā pugnō. Hodiē[1] virum necāvī[2] — et erat amīcus meus! Estisne virī? Rōmam nōn amātis. Nōnne nunc hōra est? Pugnāte! Servōs līberābimus et ad patriam migrāre mātūrābimus."

Thought Questions. — 1. What happened to Spartacus and his boyhood friend? 2. How did the friend die?

Read Showerman, pp. 72–73; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 167–170; Tappan, pp. 139–140.

[1] *today* [2] *I killed*

168. Vocabulary

a'gō, a'gere, *drive, do, discuss, live* or *spend* (time)	(agent)
cē'dō, cē'dere, *move, retreat, yield*	(accede)
accē'dō, accē'dere, *approach* (w. ad)	
excē'dō, excē'dere, *go away, depart*	
dēfen'dō, dēfen'dere, *defend*	(defendant)
op'pidum, –ī, n., *town*	
pō'nō, pō'nere, *put, place*	(postpone)
sem'per, adv., *always*	(sempiternal)

169. English Word Studies

We have seen that many English nouns and adjectives have preserved their original Latin forms. A great many more have preserved the base of the Latin word. Others again consist of the Latin base plus silent **–e**. The following are examples:

base: *form, public, sign;* base plus **–e**: *cause, fortune, fame, cure*

The same rule is illustrated in the following words in which changes in the base have taken place:

base. *letter* (**littera**), *number* (**numerus**), *car* (**carrus**), *clear* (**clārus**); base plus **–e**: *single* (**singulī**)

Give other examples of this rule from nouns and adjectives already studied.

170. Third Conjugation

(*a*) Verbs of the **third conjugation** have the stem vowel **–ĕ–**. Note the difference of stem vowel in:

1*st Conj.* (*Long-A Verbs*): Pres. stem **portā–** (from infin. **portāre**)
2*d Conj.* (*Long-E Verbs*): Pres. stem **docē–** (from infin. **docēre**)
3*d Conj.* (*Short-E Verbs*): Pres. stem **pōnĕ–** (from infin. **pōnĕre**)

(*b*) The short vowel –e– of the third conjugation changes to –i– in forming the present tense, except in the third person plural, where it becomes –u–. In the first person singular it disappears before –ō–. Short –e– is lengthened in the imperfect tense.

PRESENT (*I place*, etc.)		IMPERFECT (*I was placing*, etc.)	
pō'nō	pō'nimus	pōnē'bam	pōnēbā'mus
pō'nis	pō'nitis	pōnē'bās	pōnēbā'tis
pō'nit	pō'nunt	pōnē'bat	pōnē'bant

171. Plural Imperative in –*īte*. The short stem vowel –e– in third conjugation verbs changes to short –i– before –te in forming the plural imperative: sing., **accēde**; plur., **accēdīte**, *approach*.

172. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate **agō, dēfendō,** and **cēdō** in the present and imperfect tenses indicative.

(*b*) Form the present imperative, singular and plural, of the above verbs, and of **vocō** and **videō**.

(*c*) Give the Latin for *he departs, he moves, he hastens, we are defending, you* (plur.) *approach*.

173. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Semper, puerī, agite vītam bonam. 2. Colōnī ex agrīs in oppida excēdēbant. 3. Equōsne tuōs, Cornēlī, in aquam agis? 4. Memoria poenae nōn grāta est. 5. Ubi praedam pōnitis? In viā praedam pōnimus. 6. Agricolae ad oppidum nostrum nōn accēdunt. 7. Ad īnsulam cēdēbāmus et castra dēfendere parābāmus.

(*b*) 1. He was living a good life. 2. The slave is getting ready to put the grain into the wagon. 3. Ought we not to increase the number of farmers in the fields? 4. Is he not living a long life?

174. VIRGINIA ET VĒRA

Virginia et Vēra sunt duae puellae quae[1] in oppidō nostrō vītam grātam agunt. Estne oppidum in Eurōpā? In Eurōpā nōn est; in Americā est, et puellae Americānae sunt. Nōmen oppidī "Chicago" est.



FIG. 55. PUELLA RŌMĀNA

Virginia ad Vēram accēdit: "Multī virī oppidum nostrum accūsant. Nōnne id[2] dēfendere dēbēmus? Nōnne in hōc[3] animum nostrum pōnere dēbēmus?" Vēra respondet: "Quī[4] videt oppidum nostrum id semper laudat et excēdit amīcus."

Quot[5] litterās nōmen "Virginia" habet? Nōmen "Virginia" octō litterās habet; nōmen "Vēra" quattuor habet. Littera prīma ambōrum[6] "V" est; littera ultima "a" est. Nōmen "Virginia" longum est; nōmen "Vēra" nōn longum est. Puella Virginia parva est; Vēra magna est, sed Vēra semper Virginiae cēdit. Puella parva habet nōmen magnum; puella magna habet nōmen parvum. Alia[7] puella nōmen "Alta" habet, sed alta nōn est. Estne Clāra clāra?

Thought Questions. — 1. What does Virginia think that she and Vera should do? 2. Which of the girls more often has her way?

[1] *who* [2] *it.* [3] *on this.* [4] *he who.* [5] *how many.* [6] *both.* [7] *another.*

LESSON XXIII

175. Vocabulary

ae'quus, -ā, **-um**, *even, equal, fair, just*	(equality)
exspec'tō, **exspectā're**, *look out for, await*	[*spectō*]
mit'tō, **mit'tere**, *let go, send*	(admittance)
offi'cium, **offi'cī**, n., *duty*	(office)
po'pulus, -ī, m., *people*	(popular)
re'gō, **re'gere**, *guide, rule*	(regent)

176. English Word Studies

(*a*) Many English verbs preserve the Latin base with or without silent -e: (*a*) *cede, probe, accuse, evoke;* (*b*) *defend, laud.*

Give other examples of this rule from verbs that you have studied.

(*b*) Show how *admit* and *emit* get their meanings from **mittō**, then use them in English sentences. Explain by derivation: *demote, deter, invocation, equity.*

177. Apposition

1. **Multī virī, amīcī familiāe meae, in oppidō sunt,** *Many men, friends of my family, are in the town.*

2. **Nautīs, amīcīs nostrīs, pecūniam dōnāmus,** *We give money to the sailors, our friends.*

Observe that **amīcī** (1) describes the subject **virī** and stands in direct relation to it and is therefore in the nominative, while **amīcīs** (2) describes **nautīs**, the indirect object, and is therefore in the dative. No verb is involved. This construction is called **apposition.**

178. Rule. — *A noun in apposition with another noun (or pronoun) is in the same case.*

179. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **officium nostrum** and **populus aequus.**

(*b*) Conjugate **exspectō, mittō,** and **regō** in the present and imperfect tenses.

(*c*) Give the Latin for the words in italics: I saw John, my *friend*. Have you heard the story of Spartacus, the *slave?* We lived in Australia, a large *island*.

180. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Mārcus, agricola Rōmānus, in agrīs nunc nōn labōrat. 2. In Americā, patriā nostrā, semper habitābimus. 3. Vir bonus et aequus populum patriae nostrae regit. 4. Dēfendere patriam est officium virōrum. 5. Agricolae in agrīs nōn manent sed ad oppidum cēdunt et nūntium exspectant. 6. Mittite auxilia ad Rōmānōs, sociōs nostrōs. 7. Magna erat et semper erit glōria populī Rōmānī.

(*b*) 1. Did the boys see our friend, the sailor, on the street? 2. It is the duty of the slave to drive the horses to water. 3. Are you sending aid to our allies, the Roman people? 4. Our friends, the sailors, were departing from the town.

181. VIR QUĪ PATRIAM REGIT

Estne aequus vir quī[1] patriam nostram regit? Officium virī quī populum regit est patriam semper dēfendere et servāre, in bellō virōs ad pugnam ēvocāre. Bonīs virīs patriam, magnam nostram cūram, mandāre dēbēmus. Bonōs virōs probāmus, malōs accūsāmus. Vir quī populum regit semper labōrat; vītam dūram agit. Labōrāsne semper et vītam dūram agis?

Vir quī patriam regit in albā domō[2] habitat. In quō[3] oppidō habitat? Semperne ibi manet? Quat-

[1] *who.* [2] *white house.* [3] *what.*

tuor aut octō annōs ibi manet. Tum excēdit et alium virum ad Albam Domum mittimus. Vidēbisne Albam Domum? Multī puerī et puellae eam[1] spectant. Ūnus ex puerīs[2] fortasse[3] erit vir quī in Albā Domō habitābit. Fortasse tū[4] eris ille[5] vir! Exspectāsne hoc[6]? Sī[7] labōrābis, fortasse hoc[6] praemium merēbis.

Thought Questions. — 1. What is the President's duty? 2. Who sees the White House?



FIG 56 DOMUS RŌMĀNA

Interior of a Roman house Note the chairs, table, boxes of manuscript rolls (libri), and statuary. (From "Julius Caesar")

[1] *it* [2] *one of the boys* [3] *perhaps.* [4] *you.*
[5] *that.* [6] *this.* [7] *if.*

182. Vocabulary

ca'piō, ca'pere, *take, seize* {*captivus*}
acci'piō, acci'pere, *receive*
fa'ciō, fa'cere, *do, make* (efficient)
mū'niō, mūnī're, *fortify* (munitions)
quod, conj., *because*
ve'niō, venī're, *come* (convene)
inve'niō, invenī're, *come upon, find*



FIG 57. THE ROMAN FORUM IN THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY

183. Latin and English Word Formation: Vowel Changes

When a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, short **-a-** or short **-e-** in the root is usually "weakened" to short **-i-** before a single consonant except **-r-**. The English derivatives show the same change. Long vowels are not affected; for example:

From **agō**, Latin **ex-igō**, **ab-igō**, **red-igō**, etc.; English *exigency*, etc.

From habeō, Latin **pro-hibeō**, **ex-hibeō**, etc.; English *prohibit*, *exhibit*, etc.

From teneō, Latin **con-tineō**, **re-tineō**, etc.; English *continent*, *retinue*, etc.

Exercise. — Illustrate the rule further by compounding **capiō** and **faciō** with **ad-**, **dē-**, **ex-**, and **in-**. Give English derivatives of these compounds in further illustration of the rule.

184. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *-iō*: Present and Imperfect Indicative Active

A small but important group of verbs of the third conjugation ends in **-iō** instead of **-ō**. While their present stems end in **-ĕ**, **-i-** is inserted before the lengthened stem vowel in forming the imperfect and future tenses, as well as in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present tense. Compare the following model of an **-iō** verb with **pōnō** (**170**, *b*):

PRESENT (*I take*, etc.)		IMPERFECT (*I was taking*, etc.)	
ca'piō	ca'pimus	capiē'bam	capiēbā'mus
ca'pis	ca'pitis	capiē'bās	capiēbā'tis
ca'pit	ca'piunt	capiē'bat	capiē'bant

Note. — The imperative is like that of other verbs of the third conjugation: cape, capite. The imperative singular of faciō is fac.

185. Fourth Conjugation

Most verbs ending in **-iō** belong to the **fourth conjugation** and are distinguished by the stem vowel **-ī-**.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation are called Long-I Verbs, because they retain long **–ī–** throughout their conjugation except where long vowels are regularly shortened (**37**, *a*). Note by contrast that **–iō** verbs of the third conjugation have short **–i–** throughout.

PRESENT (*I fortify*, etc.)		IMPERFECT (*I was fortifying*, etc.)	
mū'niō	mūnī'mus	mūniē'bam	mūniēbā'mus
mū'nīs	mūnī'tis	mūniē'bās	mūniēbā'tis
mū'nit	mū'niunt	mūniē'bat	mūniē'bant

Note. — The imperative is **mūnī, mūnīte.**

186. Drill. — Conjugate and give all possible meanings of the present and imperfect tenses of **accēdō, inveniō, faciō.**

187. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Puella magnam pecūniam in viā invenit. 2. Ubi estis, puerī et puellae? Veníimus. 3. Puerī malī magnam poenam merent, sed bonī multa praemia merent. 4. Nōnne aequum est semper laudāre et dēfendere amīcōs? 5. Castra mūniēbant et virōs ēvocābant, quod pugnāre parābant. 6. In oppidō equōs inveniunt et multam praedam capiunt. 7. Virī magna praemia accipiunt, quod officium faciunt.

(*b*) 1. We do not find good timber in the forest. 2. We were fortifying the camp and defending the island with arms. 3. It is pleasing to find money. 4. Marcus is not receiving a reward because he was a bad boy.

188. RŌMĀNĪ

Quondam Rōma oppidum parvum erat. Populus Rōmānus oppidum mūniēbat. Victōriīs magnīs patriam servābat et augēbat. Magna praemia Rōmānī accipiēbant, quod officium faciēbant et armīs patriam dēfendēbant. Magnum numerum colōnōrum in aliās terrās mittēbant. Multās terrās barbarās capiēbant et aequē[1] multās prōvinciās regēbant. Frūmentum ex aliīs terrīs in Italiam portābant. Ad Britanniam, Hispāniam, Āfricam, Graeciam, Asiam nāvigābant. Nunc Rōma magna et pulchra est. Multī Americānī ad Italiam veniunt et viās pulchrās et templa inveniunt. Mātūrābisne in Italiam venīre?



Ewing Galloway

FIG. 58. RŌMA MAGNA ET PULCHRA

The modern monument to Victor Emmanuel and the ancient column of Trajan.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why were the Romans rewarded? 2. What do visitors to Italy see?

Read Showerman, pp 16–19; Sabin, pp. 100–101; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 11–13; Harding, pp. 7–12.

[1] *justly.*

189. Vocabulary

dū'cō, dū'cere,[1] *lead, draw*	(reduce)
effi'ciō, effi'cere, *make out, bring about*	[*faciō*]
lo'cus, –ī, m., *place;* plur., **lo'ca,** n.[2]	(local)
pre'tium, pre'tī, n., *price*	(precious)
ter'minus, –ī, m., *end, boundary*	(terminal)

190. English Word Studies

(*a*) Explain by derivation: *location, efficiency, terminate, invention.*

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

ad infīnītum, *to infinity, i.e.* without limit.
ad astra per aspera, *to the stars through difficulties.*
ex animō, *from the heart* (sincerely).
Experientia docet, *Experience teaches.*

191. Word Order

We have observed from the beginning (**14**) that the words in a Latin sentence show their connection with one another by means of endings, regardless of position (unlike English). They may therefore be shifted rather freely without obscuring the relationship. The normal order is:

SUBJECT

NOUN — *adjective* (*genitive, appositive*)

PREDICATE

ablative — indir. obj. — dir. obj. — *adverb* — **VERB**

[1] The imperative singular is dūc.

[2] When used in this original sense, **locus** changes gender in the plural

(*a*) **Remember,** therefore, that the normal order of words is as follows:

1. Adjectives usually follow their nouns, but adjectives of quantity and size precede: **virī bonī**; **multī virī**.
2. Possessive adjectives (**meus, tuus,** etc.) follow their nouns, unless emphatic.
3. A genitive follows its noun.
4. An indirect object stands before a direct object.
5. A word used to ask a question usually stands first, as in English.
6. The verb stands last. Forms of the linking verb are often placed in the middle of a sentence, as in English.
7. For **nōnne**, see **165**.

(*b*) But this normal order is far less regular in Latin than the normal order is in English. The shifted order serves to bring out varying shades of emphasis. This is done also in English, though to a less extent, largely in imitation of the Latin. Emphasis is gained particularly by:

1. Putting the emphatic word *first* in the sentence.
2. *Separating* the emphatic word from the word to which it belongs.

The former is common in English: *Great is the glory of the Lord!*

192. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Ad locum altum veniunt et magnam silvam vident. 2. Ad terram sociōrum cōpiās dūcēbāmus. 3. Multōs equōs habēre dēbēmus, sed magnum est pretium. 4. Magister tuus concordiam nōn efficit, quod puerī sunt malī. 5. Vocā, Mārce, virōs ad arma et mūnī loca plāna. 6. Ubi est terminus agrōrum Mārcī, amīcī nostrī? 7. Ad oppidum auxilia nunc mittimus, sed locum nōn mūnīmus.

(*b*) 1. The price of instruction is small, but the rewards are great. 2. Great is the fame of our teacher. 3. We are coming to the boundaries of our friends' fields. 4. They are hastening to lead a large number of horses to the water.

193. AMĪCITIA

Mārcus, amīcus meus, fīlius est vīcīnī[1] nostrī. Nōn in oppidō sed in agrīs habitāmus. Pater Mārcō equum et carrum dōnat. Carrus parvus est et pretium carrī nōn magnum erat. Prīmō[2] equus carrum dūcere nōn vult.[3] Sed Mārcus equum docet et disciplīna multum efficit. Tum Mārcus ad locum altum, terminum agrōrum, equum agere mātūrat. Ibi[4] puer malus equum terret et ego[5] ex carrō paene[6] cadō. Sed Mārcus equum tenet et mē[7] servat. Nōnne Mārcō grātus esse dēbeō?



FIG. 59. AMĪCUS

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did the wagon cost little? 2. Why is the speaker grateful to Marcus?

[1] *neighbor.* [2] *at first.* [3] *does not want.* [4] *there*
[5] *I.* [6] *almost.* [7] Accusative of ego.

LESSON XXVI

194. Vocabulary

com'modus, **-a, -um,** *suitable, convenient*	(commodity)
fu'giō, **fu'gere,** *run away, flee*	(fugitive)
ō'tium, ō'tī, n., *leisure, rest*	(otiose)
stu'dium, stu'dī, n., *eagerness, interest;* plur., *studies*	(studious)
va'leō, valē're, *be strong, be well, be powerful*	(valid)
va'rius, -a, -um, *changing, varying*	(variety)

195. Latin Phrases in English

victōria, nōn praeda, *victory, not loot.*

auxiliō ab altō, *by aid from (on) high.*

Montānī semper līberī, *Mountaineers (are) always free* (motto of West Virginia).

ex officiō, *out of (as a result of) one's duty or office; e.g.* a president of an organization may be a member of a committee *ex officio* (pronounced "offishio"), as a result of his office as president.

196. Third Conjugation: Future Active

The future sign of verbs of the first and second conjugations is **-bi-** (65). The future sign of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations, however, is **-ē-**. The **-ō** verbs of the third conjugation, in forming the future, substitute **-ē-** for the stem vowel **-ĕ-**, except in the first singular (**-am**).[1]

pō'nam, *I shall place*	pōnē'mus, *we shall place*
pō'nēs, *you will place*	pōnē'tis, *you will place*
pō'net, *he will place*	pō'nent, *they will place*

[1] The third singular and plural have **-ĕ-**, according to rule (37, *a*).

197. Drill. — (*a*) Give the present of **mittō**, the imperfect of **cēdō**, and the future of **dūcō**, **dēfendō**, and **agō**.

(*b*) Tell the form of **fugit**, **valēbis**, **efficiet**, **dūcēmus**, **docēmus**, **accipitis**, **mūniunt**, **migrābat**.

198. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Valēsne, fīlia mea? Valeō. 2. Puerī bonī magnam fāmam ex studiīs accipiunt. 3. Varia est fortūna vītae. 4. Multās hōrās in ōtiō nōn agēmus sed semper labōrābimus. 5. Puerī nōn excēdent sed puellās dēfendent. 6. Cōpiae nostrae ē castrīs nōn fugiunt sed ad locum commodum excēdunt. 7. Litterās ad Mārcum, amīcum meum, mittam.



FIG. 60 A SLEEPY CHILD

(*b*) 1. Where were the girls? 2. Did they remain in a suitable place? 3. We shall remain in the town and send a messenger to our daughters. 4. They fortify the camp and summon reinforcements from the province.

199. CERĒS ET PRŌSERPINA

Cerēs, dea frūmentī, et fīlia Prōserpina in Siciliā habitābant. Quondam Prōserpina et aliae puellae in agrīs erant. Locum commodum inveniunt et flōrēs[1] variōs legunt. Ōtium grātum est. Plūtō, deus Īnferōrum,[2] Prōserpinam videt et amat. Equōs incitat et

[1] *flowers.* [2] *those below*, i.e. the shades in Hades.



Courtesy of Willy Pogany

FIG. 61 PLŪTŌ ET PRŌSERPINA

ad locum accēdit ubi puellae sunt. Puellās terret. Prōserpina fugere mātūrat, sed Plūtō valet et eam[1] capit, in carrō pōnit, ad Īnferōs dūcit.

Cerēs nocte[2] ex agrīs venit. Fīliam exspectat, sed Prōserpina nōn venit. Magna est cūra deae. Ad multa loca, ad terminōs terrae Cerēs accēdit. Semper fīliam vocat sed nōn invenit.

Quod Cerēs Prōserpinam nōn invenit, in agrīs nōn labōrat. Flōrēs nōn sunt, frūmentum in agrīs nōn est. Pretium frūmentī magnum est. Populus vītam dūram agit et deam accūsat. Multī agricolae dīcunt:

"Quid[3] agēmus? In agrīs labōrāmus sed frūmentum nōn habēmus. Deī nōn aequī sunt; officium nōn faciunt."

Iuppiter, quī deōs et virōs regit, iniūriās populī videt et deae agrōrum nūntiat:

"Plūtō fīliam tuam habet. Mercurium nūntium ad Īnferōs mittam. Mercurius fīliam tuam ad tē[4] dūcet. Sed nōn semper in terrā Prōserpina manēbit. Partem[5] annī in terrā, partem sub terrā aget."

Cerēs fīliam accipit. Prōserpina partem annī in terrā, partem sub terrā agit. Cum[6] lībera in terrā est, multōs flōrēs et magnam cōpiam frūmentī vidēmus, quod Cerēs grāta in agrīs est et magnum est studium deae. Sed cum Prōserpina ad Īnferōs excēdit, Cerēs trīstis[7] est, et flōrēs nōn sunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. What was Proserpina doing when Pluto came? 2. What happened to the flowers after Proserpina left? 3. On what terms did Proserpina go back to her mother?

Read Sabin, pp. 43–47; Guerber, pp. 183–187, 194–195; Bulfinch, pp. 58–64; Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 48–51; Baker, pp. 127–136.

[1] *her.* [2] *at night.* [3] *what.* [4] *you.*
[5] Accusative singular of **pars.** [6] *whenever.* [7] *sad.*



FIG. 62. THE RETURN OF PROSERPINA
From a painting by Lord Leighton.

LESSON XXVII

200. Vocabulary

affi'ciō, affi'cere, *affect, visit with, afflict with*	[*faciō*]
cum, prep. with abl., *with*	
dū'rus, -a, -um, *hard, harsh*	(durable)
fir'mus, -a, -um, *strong, steadfast, firm*	(firmness)
ge'rō, ge'rere, *carry on, manage*	(belligerent)
inci'piō, inci'pere, *take to, begin*	[*capiō*]
perpe'tuus, -a, -um, *constant*	(perpetuity)

201. Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **cum** is often used as a prefix in Latin and English but always in the assimilated forms **com-**, **con-**, **col-**, **cor-**, **co-**. It usually means *together* rather than *with*.

Define the following words, all formed from verbs which you have studied: *convoke, collaborate, commotion, convene.*

Give some other English words formed by attaching this prefix to Latin verbs, nouns, or adjectives already studied.

202. Formation of Adverbs

In English, adverbs are usually formed from adjectives by adding the suffix *-ly*: adj., *clear;* adv., *clearly.*

In Latin, adverbs are likewise formed from adjectives. As a rule, adverbs are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-ē** to the base: adj., **clārus**; adv., **clārē**; adj., **līber**; adv., **līberē**.

203. Drill. — Form adverbs from **pūblicus, grātus, commodus,** and **aequus.**

204. Ablative of Accompaniment

As you already know, the means *with which* something is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (80): *They fought with arms*, **Armīs pugnābant.** When, however, *with* means *together with* or *along with*, the preposition **cum** is used with the ablative. This expresses **accompaniment: Cum servō venit**, *He is coming with the slave.*

Caution. — When tempted to use **cum** (*with*), be sure that *with* means accompaniment or association. In the following English sentences determine when **cum** should be used and when it should be omitted:

(*a*) *Anna is with the sailor.*

(*b*) *Soldiers fight with weapons; generals fight with armies; both soldiers and generals fight with their enemies.*

205. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Amīcus noster cum familiā ad Eurōpam nāvigābit. 2. Cum cōpiīs īnsulārum bellum dūrum et perpetuum gerēmus. 3. Armīs oppida dēfendent et cum sociīs pugnābunt. 4. Magister dūrus puerōs malōs et puellās malās poenā aequē afficit. 5. Nautae terram firmam vidēre incipiēbant. 6. Nautae, pūblicē līberāte captīvōs. 7. Servus cum magnā cōpiā pecūniae ē patriā fugit; nōn ōtium sed dūrās cūrās invenit. 8. In amīcitiā firmā et perpetuā cum sociīs nostrīs manēbimus.



FIG. 63. BRONZE HELMET

(*b*) 1. It is not just to carry on war with friends. 2. A bad boy afflicts the family with constant care. 3. The settlers began to flee with (their) families. 4. We shall send reinforcements with grain and defend the island with our troops.

206. LŪCIUS ET MĀRCUS

Rōmānī cum Germānīs, populō firmō et dūrō, bella perpetua gerēbant. Quondam[1] Rōmānī et Aquītānī,[2]



FIG. 64 EQUUS
An ancient bronze at Tunis, Africa

sociī Rōmānōrum, cum Germānīs pugnābant. Lūcius, clārus Aquītānus, ex equō virōs Rōmānōs et Aquītānōs in Germānōs incitābat. Servus Lūciō nūntiat: "Germānī frātrem[3] tuum Mārcum capiunt!" Lūcius frātrem amābat. Perīculum Mārcī Lūcium magnā cūrā afficit. Lūcius equum incitat, armīs Germānōs terret, frātrem servat, fugit. Sed equus nōn valēbat: Lūcius frātrem sōlum[4] in equō pōnit, et ad castra Aquītānōrum et Rōmānōrum equum incitat. Tum sōlus Germānōs exspectat. Multī Germānī accēdunt. Lūcius firmus cēdere incipit, auxilium exspectat — sed auxilium nōn venit — ē vītā excēdit. Mārcus videt et equum in Germānōs incitat — et vītam āmittit.[5]

Thought Questions. — 1. Who was Marcus' brother? 2. Who was killed?

[1] *once.* [2] *Aquitā'nians.* [3] *brother.* [4] *alone* [5] *loses.*

207. Vocabulary

au'diō, **audī're**, *hear*	(audience)
conti'neō, **continē're**, *hold together, detain, contain*	[*teneō*]
tar'dus, **–a, –um**, *slow, late*	(retard)
tra'hō, **tra'here**, *draw, drag*	(attraction)
ver'bum, **–ī**, n., *word*	(verbal)

208. Latin and English Word Formation



FIG. 65. A ROMAN LAMP

Lamp and stand are of bronze. At the end of the handle is a mask.

Most prefixes are prepositions, but a few are not. **Re–** is used only as a prefix in Latin and English; it means *back* or *again*. It sometimes has the form **red–**, especially before vowels. Examples: ***retineō, hold back; reficiō, make again; redigō, drive back.***

In English, re– is freely used with all sorts of words: *reduce, revisit, rehash, refill.*

Exercise. — Give other examples of the prefix re– in Latin and English words. Explain *revoke, incipient, refuge, audition.*

209. Future Active of Fourth Conjugation and Third Conjugation *–iō* Verbs

Verbs of the fourth conjugation form the future by adding **–ē–** directly to the present stem (long **–ī–** of

the stem is shortened, however, since it precedes another vowel). Verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-iō** closely resemble fourth conjugation verbs in the future tense; the reason for this is the insertion of **-i-** (**184**):

I shall fortify, etc.		*I shall take*, etc	
mū'niam	mūniē'mus	ca'piam	capiē'mus
mū'niēs	mūniē'tis	ca'piēs	capiē'tis
mū'niet	mū'nient	ca'piet	ca'pient

210. **Drill.** — Give the future tense of **parō, contineō, trahō, incipiō, audiō.** Give the imperfect of **afficiō.**

211. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Grātum est audīre vēra verba amīcōrum. 2. Equōs in locō lātō et commodō continēbimus. 3. Nautae nostrī ex aquā puerum trahunt et vītam servant. 4. Armīsne oppidum dēfendere incipiēmus? 5. Magister tardōs puerōs poenā pūblicē afficiet sed puellās bonās verbīs dūrīs nōn terrēbit. 6. Colōnī ex agrīs ad oppidum carrīs frūmentum portābunt et magnam pecūniam accipient. 7. Magnus numerus equōrum carrōs agricolārum tardē trahēbat. Carrī frūmentum continēbant.

(*b*) 1. Anna, a good girl, will justly receive a large reward. 2. We shall fortify the camp and defend (it) with arms. 3. The boys will not receive the reward, because they are late. 4. The late boys and girls will not hear the words of the famous man.

212. VĪTA ANTĪQUA

Poētae[1] multa[2] dē deīs et virīs antīquīs nārrant. Multās fābulās dē clārīs Graecīs et Rōmānīs ā magistrō tuō audiēs et in librīs inveniēs. Fortasse ōlim studia tē[3] ad Graeciam et Italiam trahent. Ibi templa deōrum et loca clāra vidēbis dē quibus[4] poētae scrībunt. Tum grātum erit verba poētārum memoriā tenēre. Italia multās antīquās ruīnās[1] continet. Multa[2] dē vītā antīquōrum Graecōrum et Rōmānōrum inveniēs sī[5] ad Italiam nāvigābis et ibi manēbis. Multī Americānī ex Eurōpā variās rēs[6] Rōmānās portant. Fortasse magister tuus rēs Rōmānās habet et puerīs et puellīs mōnstrāre incipiet. Librī tuī Latīnī multās novās fābulās dē clārīs Rōmānīs continēbunt. Sī puerī tardī nōn erunt, librōs accipient.



FIG 66 RUĪNAE ANTĪQUAE
Temple of Venus and Colosseum
(cf. FIG 48)

Thought Questions. — 1. How will you learn about the Romans? 2. What four things do the ancient poets tell about?

[1] Use the English derivative. [2] *many things.* [3] *you* (accusative).
[4] *which.* [5] *if.* [6] *things.*

LESSON XXIX

213. Vocabulary

conve'niō, conveni're, *come together, assemble*	[*veniō*]
con'vocō, convocā're, *call together*	[*vocō*]
i'bi, adv., *there*	
me'dius, -a, -um, *middle, middle of*	(mediator)
redū'cō, redū'cere, *lead back*	[*dūcō*]
senten'tia, -ae, f., *feeling, opinion, motto*	(sentence)

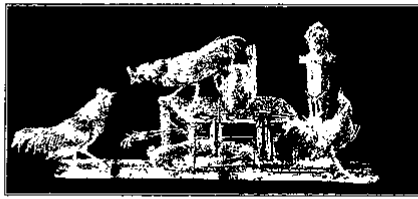


FIG. 67. A COCKFIGHT
From a Pompeian wall painting

214. English Word Studies

A friend is a person whom you know well, love dearly, and treat familiarly. How many English words can you call friends, according to this definition? If you will trace English words back to their Latin roots, you will gain many new friends. For example: A "sentence" in grammar is a single, complete *opinion* or expression. A judicial "sentence" is a judge's *opinion*. A "convention" *comes together* in an "auditorium" to *hear* the speaker. A "mediator" settles disputes by taking a *middle* position. A spiritualistic "medium"

is supposed to take a *middle* position between the unseen spirit and the "audience" who *hear*. A "studious" person is one who is *eager* to learn. An "alarm" is a call *to arms* (**ad arma**). To "repatriate" a person is to bring him *back* to his *fatherland*. Learn to look carefully at the *make-up* of every strange English word and you will often detect an old Latin friend *in disguise*.

215. Idioms

Every language contains set phrases or fixed expressions with meanings which cannot be translated literally. For example, we say, *How are you?* when we really mean, *How do you feel?*

Certain set phrases occur in Latin which are peculiar to it and cannot be translated literally into English. These fixed expressions are said to be **idiomatic**. The following should be memorized and entered in the notebook under the general heading "Idioms":

1. **grātiās agere,** *to thank,* with dat. (literally, *to act gratitude*)
2. **grātiam habēre,** *to feel grateful,* with dat. (lit., *to have gratitude*)
3. **vītam agere,** *to live a life* (lit., *to act life*)
4. **bellum gerere,** *to wage* or *carry on war*
5. **castra pōnere,** *to pitch camp* (lit., *to place camp*)
6. **viam mūnīre,** *to build a road* (lit., *to fortify a road;* roads were built like walls)
7. **verba facere,** *to speak, make a speech* (lit., *to make words*)
8. **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember* (lit., *to hold in memory*)
9. **cōnsilium capere,** *to adopt a plan* (lit., *to take a plan*)

216. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Pōnite castra, puerī, in agrīs et ibi agite līberam vītam. 2. Magistrō nostrō grātiam habēmus et

līberē grātiās agēmus. 3. Puerōs ex mediā silvā in oppidum redūcam. 4. Rōmānī multās longās viās in Italiā mūniēbant. 5. Puerōs singulōs convocābimus et sententiās audiēmus. 6. Virī ex multīs terrīs convenient et verba facient. 7. Magister verba faciet et puellīs grātiās aget.

(*b*) 1. The boys and girls feel grateful and will thank the teacher. 2. We ought to feel grateful to your friends. 3. The boys will find water and pitch camp. 4. We shall remember the teacher's words about duty.

217. AENĒĀS

Graecī Troiam occupant. Aenēās Troiānus arma capit et cum multīs virīs oppidum dēfendere mātūrat.



FIG. 68 COIN OF CAESAR

Aeneas carrying his father and the image of Athena.

Sed Venus dea, māter Aenēae,[1] eum[2] in mediō oppidō invenit et verba facit:

"Tenē memoriā familiam tuam. Cum familiā et amīcīs ex oppidō fuge et nāvigā ad aliās terrās. Novam patriam inveniēs. Deī Troiam vāstant. Troiānōs poenā afficient."

Cōnsilium nōn grātum sed bonum Aenēās audit et probat. Ad familiam virōs redūcit et amīcōs convocat. Patrem[3] portat et fīlium parvum dūcit. Cum multīs servīs et sociīs ex oppidō fugit. Singulī in ūnum locum conveniunt et ibi castra pōnunt. Māteriam ex silvā portant et nāvēs[4] parant. Tum

[1] Genitive singular. [2] *him*. [3] Accusative singular of pater.
[4] Accusative plural of nāvis.

undīs nāvēs mandant et migrant. Ad multās īnsulās et terrās novās veniunt sed patriam novam nōn inveniunt. Vītam dūram agunt. Semper mala est fortūna. Causa est īra Iūnōnis,[1] rēgīnae deōrum.

In īnsulā Crētā castra pōnunt. Tum in somnō Aenēās Penātēs[2] videt et sententiam audit:

"Crēta patria vestra nōn erit. Excēdite, Troiānī. Locus est quem[3] Graecī Hesperiam, aliī Italiam vocant. Ibi patria vestra erit. Ibi in ōtiō et concordiā habitābitis et magnum oppidum pōnētis."



FIG. 69. AENĒĀS PATRIEM PORTAT ET FILIUM DŪCIT

Ita Troiānī cōnsilium novum capiunt. Castra movent et ad Italiam nāvigant.

Thought Questions. — 1. What did Venus tell Aeneas to do? 2. Whom does Aeneas take with him from Troy? 3. Why didn't Aeneas stay in Crete?

Read Sabin, pp. 331-333; Gayley, pp. 346-350; Bulfinch, pp. 262-263; Guerber, pp. 360-364.

[1] *of Juno* [2] Accusative plural: *Penātēs* [3] *which* (accusative).

THIRD REVIEW (LESSONS XXI–XXIX)

218. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. locus
2. officium
3. oppidum
4. ōtium
5. populus
6. pretium
7. sententia
8. studium
9. terminus
10. verbum

Adjectives

11. aequus
12. commodus
13. dūrus
14. firmus
15. medius
16. perpetuus
17. tardus
18. varius

Verbs

19. accēdō
20. accipiō
21. afficiō
22. agō
23. audiō
24. capiō
25. cēdō
26. contineō
27. conveniō
28. convocō
29. dēfendō
30. dūcō
31. efficiō
32. excēdō
33. exspectō
34. faciō
35. fugiō
36. gerō
37. incipiō
38. inveniō
39. mittō
40. mūniō
41. pōnō
42. redūcō
43. regō
44. trahō
45. valeō
46. veniō

Adverbs

47. ibi
48. semper

Preposition

49. cum

Conjunction

50. quod

Interrogative Particle

51. -ne

219. Vocabulary Review

NOUNS

1. *place*
2. *duty*
3. *town*
4. *leisure*
5. *people*
6. *price*
7. *opinion*
8. *eagerness*
9. *end*
10. *word*

ADJECTIVES

11. *even, just*
12. *convenient*
13. *hard*
14. *strong*
15. *middle (of)*
16. *constant*
17. *slow*
18. *changing*

VERBS

19. *approach*
20. *receive*
21. *affect*
22. *drive, act*
23. *hear*
24. *take*
25. *move, retreat*
26. *contain*
27. *come together*
28. *call together*
29. *defend*
30. *lead*
31. *bring about*
32. *go away*
33. *await*
34. *do, make*
35. *flee*
36. *carry on*
37. *begin*
38 *come upon*
39. *send*
40. *fortify*
41. *put*
42 *lead back*
43. *rule*
44. *draw*
45 *be strong*
46. *come*

ADVERBS

47. *there*
48. *always*

PREPOSITION

49. *with*

CONJUNCTION

50. *because*

INTERROGATIVE PARTICLE

51. = *?*

220. English and Latin Word Studies

1. Give prefix and Latin root word from which the following are derived: **redigō, concipiō, attrahō, corrigō, committō**; *respect, allocation, depopulate, exigency.*

2. Define according to derivation: *inspect, exponent, fugitive, verbose, incipient.*

3. Make Latin words out of **ad-** and **capiō, in-** and **pōnō, con-** and **labōrō, ad-** and **teneō, dē-** and **mereō.**

221. Nouns and Adjectives

Drill. — 1. Decline: (*a*) **oppidum commodum,** (*b*) **puella bona,** (*c*) **vir aequus,** (*d*) **officium magnum.**

2. Decline in Latin: (*a*) *a small word,* (*b*) *harsh opinion,* (*c*) *a sacred place,* (*d*) *a famous people.*

3. Give the nominative, singular and plural, of *great interest.*

Give the genitive, singular and plural, of *a constant duty.*

Give the dative, singular and plural, of *a good price.*

Give the accusative, singular and plural, of *varying opinion.*

Give the ablative, singular and plural, of *a firm man.*

222. Verbs: Present System of the Four Conjugations

Drill. — 1. Conjugate in the present indicative active: **sum, exspectō, dēbeō, mittō, efficiō, veniō.**

2. Conjugate in the imperfect indicative active: **sum, convocō, mereō, cēdō, afficiō, inveniō.**

3. Conjugate in the future indicative active: **sum, līberō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō, audiō.**

4. Form the present imperative, singular and plural, of **convocō, audiō, trahō, gerō, fugiō, valeō.**

223. Formation of Adverbs. — Give the Latin for *harshly, conveniently, fairly.*

224. Recognition of Verb Forms: Rapid-Fire Drill

I. *Give tense, person, and number, and translate:* Vident, mittent, dūcent, pōnit, pōnet, terrent, mittunt, incipient, erunt, valēbō, erās, fugiēbās, es, audiētis, exspectābimus, eris, dūcēbant, capiēmus, inveniēmus, erimus, veniam, accēdunt, erant, laudāmus.

II. *Give in Latin:* We shall send; he will be; I fortified; they approached; you (*sing.*) await; we are strong; we were; they will flee; they receive; you (*plur.*) did come; they were; he is managing; he is; they will begin; they will be.

225. Conundrum. — Why is the future tense of the third and fourth conjugations like a horse without a bridle? (Answer: It has no "-bit.")

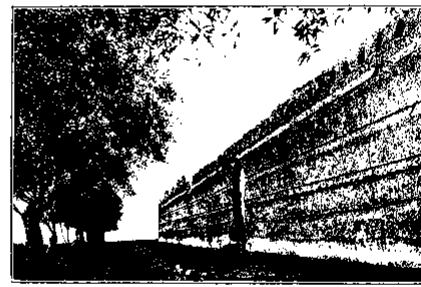


FIG. 70. HADRIAN'S VILLA NEAR TIVOLI

The emperor Hadrian (117–138 A.D.) built a magnificent summer home, or rather a fair-sized town, near Rome. The wall here shown furnished a shady walk morning and afternoon, on the one side or the other.

LESSON XXX

226. Substantives

A noun is sometimes called a **substantive**.

A **pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun, as *he*, which takes the place of the name of some person, or *that*, which takes the place of the name of a thing. Pronouns, too, are substantives.

Other words also may at times be used substantively. We have already noted the substantive use of the infinitive (**152, 153**).

Sometimes an adjective is used substantively without a noun. The masculine refers to persons, the neuter to things:

(*a*) **Nostrī (virī) veniunt,** *Our (men) are coming.*
(*b*) **Multa audiēs,** *You will hear many (things).*

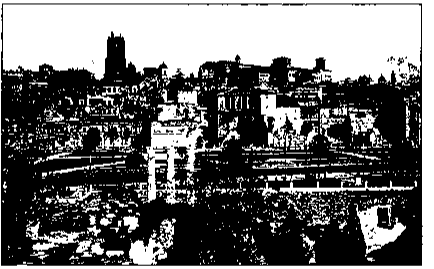


FIG. 71. IMPERIAL ROME

In the foreground, the Forum of Caesar (see Fig. 48); the medieval tower is above the Forum of Trajan, at the right, the Forum of Augustus.

227. Hints for Reading

The first step in reading Latin is to follow the order of words, separating them into groups according to their sense and grammatical relation. Such word groups or phrases should be read and understood as units, with proper attention to emphasis and expression.

After translating **Forum Rōmānum** with due regard to the word groups in each sentence, practice reading the entire passage aloud in the Latin with as much expression as you can.

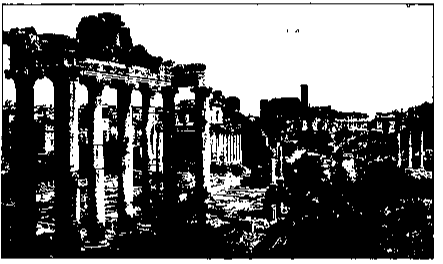


FIG. 72. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

The temple of Saturn, then the Forum and the Colosseum; at the right, the temple of Castor.

228. THE STORY OF LUCIUS

Forum Rōmānum

Quondam puer parvus Lūcius in Italiā habitābat. Dē glōriā patriae multa audiēbat. Magister Lūciō et

cēterīs[1] puerīs loca clāra Rōmae mōnstrābat. In Forum Rōmānum puerōs dūcēbat. In hunc[2] locum populus Rōmānus conveniēbat. Ibi virī amīcōs vidēbant et aedificia[3] pūblica spectābant. Ibi nūntiī magnās victōriās nūntiābant. Ibi virī clārī in rōstrīs[4] verba pūblicē faciēbant. Magister multa dē patriā in Forō docēbat. Puerī magistrō magnam grātiam habēbant, quod Forum amābant. Ē Forō puerī cum magistrō in Sacram Viam ambulābant[5] et tabernās[6] spectābant. Cupitisne[7] plūra[8] dē Lūciō audīre?

Thought Questions. — 1. Where did the Romans meet their friends? 2. Why were the boys grateful to their teacher?

229. Conversation

(See *map of the Roman world* between pp. 92 and 93.)

M. = **Magister** **D.** = **Discipulī**

M. Spectāte, puerī et puellae. **D.** Spectāmus, magister.

M. Ubi oppida vidētis? **D.** In Āfricā et in Asiā et in Eurōpā multa oppida vidēmus.

M. In mediā terrā aquam vidētis. Illam[9] aquam "Medi-terrā-neum Mare" [10] vocāmus.

M. Ibi est Lūsitānia — vidētisne? **D.** Vidēmus.

M. Ubi est Hibernia? **D.** Hibernia est īnsula in Ōceanō Atlanticō.

M. Multī virī multōrum populōrum in Eurōpā habitant.

M. Ubi pugnābant Socīī in Bellō Magnō? **D.** Socīī in Galliā et in Italiā pugnābant.

[1] *the other.* [2] *this.* [3] *buildings.*
[4] *the rostra* (speakers' platform). [5] *walked.* [6] *shops.*
[7] *desire* [8] *more.* [9] *that.* [10] *Sea.*

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi habitāmus? 2. Nōnne officium nostrum est patriam dēfendere? 3. Ubi est Graecia? 4. Tenēsne memoriā Bellum Magnum?

230. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

The City of Rome

The Romans tell us that Rome was founded in 753 B.C. The first settlement was on the Palatine Hill, named after Pales, the goddess of shepherds. This was natural because the first settlers were shepherds. As the city grew, it spread to the near-by hills and the valleys between them. In the course of time it came to be known as the "City of the Seven Hills." These hills are neither high nor extensive. The Palatine is only 142 feet above the level of the Tiber River — about the height of a ten-story building.

Below the Palatine Hill was the valley which came to be known as the Forum. At first a marshy district, it became the market place of Rome, then its chief shopping and business district, and finally the civic center. In its final development it was a rectangular paved space surrounded by temples, law courts, senate house, and other public buildings. At one end was a speakers' platform called the *rostra* because it was ornamented with the beaks of ships (rōstra) captured in a war fought in the fourth century B.C.

The Palatine, because of its nearness to the Forum, became the residence district for the statesmen and wealthy people of the city. Hence it was natural that

the first emperors had their homes there. Eventually the whole imperial administration was centered on this hill, and the emperor's buildings covered it completely. So the hill which was named after the patron goddess of the shepherds who built their rude huts there came to be the site of magnificent buildings. Thus it happens that our word *palace* is derived from the name of the hill.

Another hill near the Forum, the Capitoline, got its name from the famous temple of Jupiter known as the Capitolium, because it was the "head" (**caput**), or chief temple of that god. From it the Capitol at Washington gets its name, as well as the Capitols of the various states. The hill also had on it a fort and the temple of Juno Moneta. In connection with this a mint for coining money was later established, and thus from the word **monēta** we get our words *money* and *mint*.

The streets of Rome were narrow and crooked. In the early days they were unpaved. Only during the last part of the first century B.C. (99–1) did Rome begin to become beautiful.

In the early days the people of Rome got their water from wells, springs, and the Tiber River, which winds its way along one side of the city in the shape of the letter S. In 312 B.C. Appius Claudius built the first aqueduct, which brought pure water from a distance. There were many street fountains, and eventually many houses were piped for running water.

For better administration the emperor Augustus divided the city into fourteen regions, or wards. One feature of this arrangement was the reorganization and

extension of the police and fire department (**vigilēs**, *watchmen*). Previously fire protection had been so poor that private fire companies were organized. These bought up burning houses at bargain prices and then proceeded to extinguish the fire.



FIG. 73 THE PANTHEON
A temple built under Augustus

In early days a wall known as the Servian wall was built around the city. But Rome soon outgrew this. In the third century A.D. the wall of Aurelian was built.

At its height, Rome had a population of more than a million. The modern city has been growing rapidly in recent years, and has again reached this figure. In 1931 it had 1,008,083 people and became once again the largest city in Italy.

Rome has been one of the most important cities of the world for a longer time than any other. For hundreds of years it was the capital of the great Roman Empire, then it continued its importance as the seat of the papacy, and in recent generations it has become also the capital of one of the powerful nations of Europe. Even in ancient times it received the name of the "Eternal City" (**urbs aeterna**), and it seems that this name has been justified.

Read Showerman, pp. 14–28, Mills, pp. 293–301.

LESSON XXXI

231. Vocabulary

commit'tō, commit'tere, *join together, commit, entrust;*
proe'lium commit'tere, *to begin battle* [*mittō*]
fīni'timus, -a, -um, *neighboring;* **fīni'timus, -ī,** m., *neighbor*
pau'cī, -ae, -a, *few* (paucity)
proe'lium, proe'lī, n., *battle*
-que, conj., *and* (translated before the word to which it is joined)
re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, rest of* (relic)

232. English and Latin Word Formation

We have seen how Latin and English words are formed from others by the use of prefixes. There are other ways of forming new words. These we shall discuss later. For the present it is sufficient to recognize the roots that words have in common. Note the relationship and review the meanings of the following words which have occurred in the preceding vocabularies:



FIG 74. VIR RŌMĀNUS

(*a*) **amīcus** and **amīcitia,** (*b*) **nāvigō** and **nauta,** (*c*) **nūntiō** and **nūntius,** (*d*) **capiō** and **captīvus** (a "captive" is one who is *taken*), (*e*) **pugna** and **pugnō,** (*f*) **puer** and **puella,** (*g*) **habeō** and **habitō** (to "inhabit" a place is to keep on *having* it).

From now on try to associate new Latin words with those you have already had, as well as with English derivatives which you find.

233. Voice: Active and Passive

As you already know, a verb is in the active voice when it shows that the subject acts (**31**):

Vir accūsābit, *The man will accuse.*

When the verb shows that the subject is acted upon, it is in the **passive voice**:

Vir accūsābitur, *The man will be accused.*

Observe that voice is shown in Latin by endings.

Note. — The linking verb **sum** has no voice, for it merely indicates existence.

234. Progressive and Passive Verb Forms Distinguished in English

Be careful to distinguish between active progressive forms and true passive verb phrases, both of which employ the verb *to be*.

ACTIVE (progressive): *He is seeing* (**videt**); *They were calling* (**vocābant**).

PASSIVE: *He is seen* (**vidētur**); *They were called* (**vocābantur**).

235. Drill. — Tell which of these verbs are passive: *He called, we were cold, he was laughing, they were called, you are being beaten, he is fighting, they will be scolded.*

236. Passive Voice of the Four Conjugations

The passive personal endings, which are substituted for the active,[1] are:

[1] But in forms ending in **-ō** in the active (as **portō** and **portābō**), the passive ending **-r** is *added to*, not *substituted for*, the active ending. The **-ō-** becomes short.

PERSONAL ENDINGS	PRESENT	
-r -mur	por'tor, *I am carried*	portā'mur, *we are carried*
-ris -minī	portā'ris, *you are carried*	portā'minī, *you are carried*
-tur -ntur	portā'tur, *he is carried*	portan'tur,[1] *they are carried*

Similarly doceor, pōnor, capior, mūnior (see 669, 670, 672, 671).

IMPERFECT

portā'bar, *I was being carried, was carried* — portābā'mur, *we were being carried*, etc.
portābā'ris, *you were being carried*, etc. — portābā'minī, *you were being carried*, etc.
portābā'tur, *he was being carried*, etc. — portāban'tur, *they were being carried*, etc.

Similarly docēbar, pōnēbar, capiēbar, mūniēbar (see 669, 670, 672, 671).

FUTURE

portā'bor, *I shall be carried* — portā'bimur, *we shall be carried*
portā'beris, *you will be carried* — portābi'minī, *you will be carried*
portā'bitur, *he will be carried* — portābun'tur, *they will be carried*

Similarly docēbor, pōnar, capiar, mūniar (see 669, 670, 672, 671).

237. **Drill.** — (*a*) Conjugate the verbs **laudō, videō, dēfendō, accipiō,** and **inveniō** in the present system passive.

[1] For the vowel shortened before -ntur, see 37, *a*.

(*b*) Translate: *we shall be accused, he is being taught, it was not approved, they will be sent.*

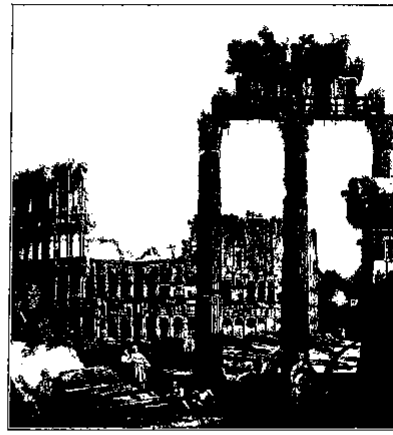


FIG. 75 RŌMAM VIDĒMUS — RŌMA VIDĒTUR

The Colosseum at Rome as it was in the eighteenth century, when a much greater portion was still standing. From a painting by Guardi.

238. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Reliquī nautae ad prōvinciam mittentur. 2. Rōmānī proelium cum fīnitimīs nunc committunt. 3. Americam, terram līberōrum, amāmus et laudāmus. 4. Paucī virī in fīnitimīs agrīs oppidīsque vidēbantur.

5. Multa praemia reliquīs puerīs puellīsque dōnābuntur. 6. Captīvī ad oppidum redūcentur et proelium committētur.

(*b*) 1. They will receive a few words of advice. 2. A few words of advice will be received. 3. Are the-rest-of the boys working in the fields? 4. The-rest-of the men will be sent to the island and will lead-back many prisoners.

239. AD ITALIAM

In magnīs undīs nāvēs[1] Troiānōrum volvuntur. Sed Troiānī ex undīs servantur et ad Actium nāvigant; ibi inveniunt Helenum Troiānum, quī terram regēbat. Helenus verba facit:



FIG. 76. SICILIA

The three-cornered island is here represented as three-legged. The Greek letters give the name of the city of Panormus (Palermo).

"Longa est via ad Italiam, ad quam[2] accēdere parātis. Accēdite ad Siciliam et nāvigāte ab Siciliā ad Italiam fīnitimam. Dūrum est semper nāvigāre, sed Fāta viam invenient."

Verba Helenī grātē accipiuntur, et Aenēās Helenō grātiās agit. Castra moventur nāvēsque[1] undīs committuntur. "Italiam, Italiam videō!" clāmat nauta et mōnstrat terram. In terrā equī clārē

[1] Nominative plural. [2] *which.*

videntur. "Signum proelī sunt equī," dīcit Anchīsēs;[1] "equīs bellum geritur." Nōn ibi manent sed ad Siciliam nāvigant. Aetna eōs[2] terret et ab Siciliā fugiunt.

Tum Iūnō ad Aeolum, quī ventōs regit et continet, venit dīcitque:

"Sī ventōs dūrōs in nāvēs[3] Troiānōrum mittēs, magnam grātiam habēbō et magna praemia tibi[4] dōnābō."

Aeolus ventōs in nāvēs mittere mātūrat. Altae undae Troiānōs terrent. Arma virīque in undīs sunt. Tum Neptūnus, deus undārum, ventōs audit et ad locum venit ubi nāvēs sunt. Īra Neptūnī magna est; ventī lātē fugiunt. Paucī Troiānī āmittuntur; reliquī ad terram veniunt et servantur. Sed in quā[5] terrā sunt? Nōn sciunt.[6]

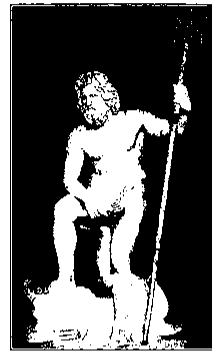


FIG. 77. NEPTŪNUS

Thought Questions. — 1. Where does Helenus tell the Trojans to go? 2. What does Juno ask Aeolus to do? 3. What does Neptune do?

Read Sabin, pp. 334–336; Bulfinch, pp. 264–266; Guerber, pp. 364–366.

[1] Father of Aeneas; pronounced *Anki'sēs* in English. [2] *them.*
[3] Accusative plural. [4] *to you.* [5] *what.* [6] *know*

LESSON XXXII

240. Vocabulary

appel'lō, appellā're, *call, call upon, name* (appellate)
aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or*
et . . . et, conj., *both . . . and*
ne'que (or **nec**), conj., *and not, nor;* **ne'que . . . ne'que,** *neither . . . nor*
praesi'dium, praesi'dī, n., *garrison, guard, protection*

241. Latin Phrases in English

magnum bonum, *great good.*
terra firma, *solid earth* (as opposed to water).
via media, *a middle way* or *course.*
cōnsiliō et armīs, *by counsel and by arms.*
In Deō spērāmus, *In God we trust* (motto of Brown University).

242. Ablative of Personal Agent

A transitive verb is one that has a direct object:

Anna aquam portat, *Anna is carrying water.*
Puer virum videt, *The boy sees the man.*

An intransitive verb cannot have a direct object:

Anna labōrat, *Anna is working.*
Puer excēdit, *The boy departs.*

In English, and generally in Latin, only transitive verbs are used in the passive voice.

Let us see what happens when the first two sentences, containing transitive verbs, are turned around and the verb becomes passive:

Aqua ab Annā portātur, *The water is carried by Anna.*
Vir ā puerō vidētur, *The man is seen by the boy.*

Observe that in both English and Latin (*a*) the direct object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive verb; (*b*) the subject of the active verb becomes the object of a preposition (**ab,** *by*), indicating the agent.

243. Rule. — *The ablative preceded by* **ā** *or* **ab** *is used with a passive verb to show the person by whom anything is done.*

Caution. — The ablative of personal agent must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of means, both of which are frequently translated with *by*. Remember that *"means" refers to things*, while *"agent" refers to a person*. Furthermore, the ablative of means *never* takes a preposition, while the ablative of personal agent is never used without the preposition **ā** (**ab**). This preposition means *by* only when used before a noun referring to a person and with a passive verb.

1. **Oppidum cōnsiliō capitur,** *The town is taken by strategy* (**means**).

2. **Oppidum ā nostris capitur,** *The town is taken by our men* (**agent**).

244. Agreement. — In both English and Latin, when two singular subjects are connected by *or* (**aut**), *either . . . or* (**aut . . . aut**), *neither . . . nor* (**neque . . . neque**), the verb is in the singular: *Neither the boy nor the girl is in the forest,* **Neque puer neque puella in silvā** ***est.***

245. Drill. — (*a*) Change the following from active to passive, or from passive to active, and translate:

1. Vir servum vidēbat. 2. Oppida ā populō reguntur. 3. Puerī verba tua exspectābant. 4. Reliqua pecūnia ab amīcō meō accipiētur.

(*b*) Turn back to page 117 (**211**) and put into the passive (*a*) 3, 5, 6, 7.

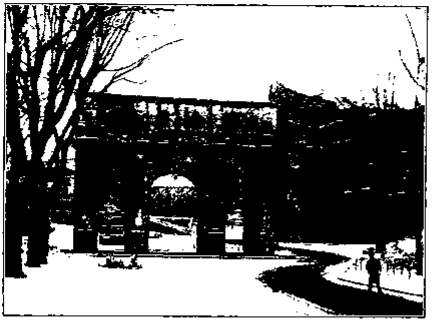


FIG. 78. RUĪNAE RŌMĀNAE

An unusual picture of the Arch of Constantine and part of the Colosseum, taken on one of the rare occasions when snow is seen in Rome.

246. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Puer equōs dūcit; equī ā puerō dūcuntur. 2. Magister puerōs puellāsque docēbat; puerī puellaeque ā magistrō docēbantur. 3. Aut puerī aut virī equōs ad agrōs redūcent. 4. Neque servus neque equus in viīs vidēbitur. 5. Multa praemia ā reliquīs puerīs puellīsque grātē accipientur. 6. Neque praesidium neque auxilium ā sociīs nostrīs mittitur. 7. Et sociī et amīcī[1] ā multīs populīs appellābimur.

(*b*) 1. The men see few horses; few horses are seen by the men. 2. The girls were frightened by the

[1] Observe that the predicate nominative (**15**, *b*) may be used with other verbs than sum.

bad boys. 3. The grain is being carried by wagon to the town. 4. Neither water nor grain is being carried by the-rest-of the men.

247. AENĒĀS IN ĀFRICĀ EST

Aenēās sociōs convocat et verba facit:

"In terrā nōn nōtā sumus. Sed deī nōs[1] servābunt. Cōnfīdite deīs.[2] Neque terra neque aqua nōs terret. Italia nostra erit. Ibi et terminus malōrum nostrōrum et ōtium grātum invenientur. Ibi patria erit et nova Troia."



FIG. 79. VENUS

Tum Aenēās cum sociō ūnō ex castrīs excēdit. Loca explōrāre mātūrat. Venus māter eum[3] videt et appellat. Nōmen oppidī, quod[4] appellātur Carthāgō et in Āfricā est, et nōmen rēgīnae, quae[5] est Dīdō, Aenēae[6] Venus nūntiat. Via ā deā Aenēae mōnstrātur. Aenēās prōcēdit et magnum oppidum videt. In mediō oppidō templum est. Ad templum rēgīna Dīdō cum multīs sociīs venit. Ibi sunt reliquī Troiānī quōs[7] undae ab Aenēā[8] sēpārāverant.[9]

Dīdō mala Troiānōrum audit et dīcit:

"Auxiliō meō aut in Italiam aut in Siciliam veniētis,

[1] *us.* [2] Dative with cōnfīdere. [3] *him.*
[4] *which.* [5] *who.* [6] Dative. [7] *whom.* [8] Ablative.
[9] Use the English derivative in the past perfect tense (*had* —).

amīcī. Sed sī in nostrā patriā manēre grātum est, oppidum nostrum vestrum est, et praesidium habēbitis."

Tum magna cēna ā rēgīnā parātur. Aenēās nūntium ad fīlium, quī Iūlus[1] appellātur, mittit; nūntius dīcit: "Venī ad oppidum, Iūle. Pater tē[2] exspectat."

Sed in locō Iūlī Venus deum Amōrem[3] mittit. Sed et Aenēās et reliquī Troiānī deum[4] crēdunt esse Iūlum. Tum Amor rēgīnam afficit, et Dīdō Aenēam amāre incipit.

Thought Questions. — 1. How does Aeneas find out where he is? 2. Whom does he see at the temple? 3. Why does Aeneas send for Iulus?

Read Sabin, pp 335–336; Guerber, pp. 366–367.



FIG. 80. AMOR RĒGĪNAM AFFICIT, ET DĪDŌ AENĒAM AMĀRE INCIPIT

[1] *Iulus* (*Iyū'lus*). [2] *you*. [3] *Love*, a Roman god.
[4] deum . . . Iūlum: *believe the god to be Iulus.*

248. Vocabulary

āmit'tō, āmit'tere, āmī'sī, *let go, lose*	[*mittō*]
an'nus, –ī, m., *year*	(annual)
lī'ber, lī'brī, m., *book*	(library)
perī'culum, –ī, n., *trial, danger*	(perilous)
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before, for*	
pro'perō, properā're, properā'vī, *hasten*	

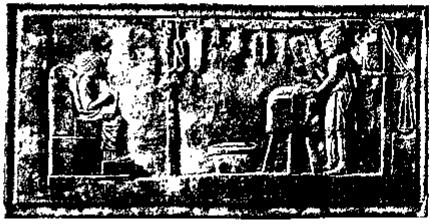


FIG. 81. A ROMAN BUTCHER SHOP

From a relief in Dresden. Apparently the lady is going to have spareribs for dinner. Cleavers and chopping blocks have not changed much.

249. Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix **prō–** has its prepositional meanings, with the additional one of *forward*. Define the following derivatives of words which you have already studied:

provoke, prospect, produce, proceed

Latin Phrases in English

prō patriā, *for (one's) country.*
prō bonō pūblicō, *for the public good.*
prō fōrmā, *for (as a matter of) form.*

250. The Perfect Tense

In English, the past tense refers to an action that is completed: *He went yesterday.*

The present perfect refers to an action that is completed, but from the point of view of the present: *He has just gone.* One cannot say *He has gone yesterday.*

In Latin, the perfect tense is used like both the past and the present perfect of English, though it more often corresponds to the past.



FIG. 82. SATYRS AS ROPEWALKERS

A satyr was a mythological being, half man, half goat. The central figure plays a flute; the one on the right, a lyre. An ancient wall painting.

251. The Perfect Stem

In Latin, the perfect stem is found by dropping the personal ending **-ī** from the perfect indicative active: **āmīsī, āmīs-**. As we shall see, several tenses are formed from the perfect stem.

Note. — All verbs of the first conjugation thus far studied form the perfect stem by adding **-v** to the present stem: **properā-, properāv-**. No rules, however, can be given for forming the perfect stem of verbs of the other conjugations. Hereafter the first person singular of the perfect active indicative will be given in the vocabularies as the third form. This should be memorized.

252. Perfect Active Indicative

The following endings (used in no other tenses) are added directly to the perfect stem in forming the **perfect indicative active**:

Perfect Endings	First Conjugation	Second Conjugation
-ī	portā'vī, *I carried, I have carried, I did carry*	do'cuī, *I taught, I have taught, I did teach*
-istī	portāvis'tī, *you carried*, etc.	docuis'tī, *you taught*, etc.
-it	portā'vit, *he carried*, etc.	do'cuit, *he taught*, etc.
-imus	portā'vimus, *we carried*, etc.	docu'imus, *we taught*, etc.
-istis	portāvis'tis, *you carried*, etc.	docuis'tis, *you taught*, etc.
-ērunt	portāvē'runt, *they carried*, etc.	docuē'runt, *they taught*, etc.
Similarly **posuī, cēpī, mūnīvī** (see **670, 672, 671**).		

253. Drill. — (*a*) Conjugate the following in the perfect indicative active: **convocō (convocāv-), agō (ēg-), excēdō (excess-), dēfendō (dēfend-), mittō (mīs-), trahō (trāx-), accipiō (accēp-), videō (vīd-), fugiō (fūg-), veniō (vēn-).**

(*b*) Translate: *to lose, he has departed, we have entrusted, we shall be heard.*

254. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Āmīsimus; nūntiāvit; augēbis; occupāvistis; āmittitur; ēvocāminī. 2. Puer in viā librum āmīsit. 3. Ex oppidō excessimus et ad agrōs silvāsque properāvimus. 4. Multī vītam in bellō āmīsērunt sed magnam glōriam accēpērunt. 5. Multōs annōs in perīculō ēgimus; nunc ōtium habēmus. 6. Properāre

dēbēmus, quod perīculum nunc est magnum. 7. Multī captīvī ā puerīs prō castrīs vidēbantur.

(*b*) 1. Were the girls being frightened by the horses? 2. Where were the boys? 3. They saw the danger clearly and fled to the woods. 4. I have entrusted the care of the money to guards.

255. AENĒĀS ET DĪDŌ

Ad Annam sorōrem[1] Dīdō properāvit:

"Anna soror," dīcit, "animus meus perīculīs terrētur; Aenēam amō. Quid[2] agam?"



FIG. 83 MERCURIUS

As messenger of the gods Mercury sometimes became weary in spite of his winged feet.

Anna respondet:

"Aenēās est bonus vir. Prō Troiā pugnāvit; nunc prō nostrā patriā pugnābit. Populī fīnitimī nōn sunt amīcī. Terminī nostrī ab Aenēā dēfendentur."

Aenēās in Āfricā cum rēgīnā manet. Dīdō Troiānum per oppidum dūcit et eī[3] oppidum mōnstrat.

Tum Iuppiter Mercurium nūntium ad Aenēam mīsit. "Annum in hōc[4] locō ēgistī," Mercurius dīcit. "Verba deī memoriā nōn tenēs; properā in Italiam cum sociīs tuīs, ubi fīlius tuus reget. Ibi ōtium habēbis neque labōrābis."

Aenēās sociōs convocāvit. Sociī frūmentum in

[1] Accusative: *sister*. [2] *what*. [3] *to him*. [4] *this*

nāvēs[1] portāvērunt. Dīdō Aenēam verbīs accūsāvit:

"Cūr fugis? Dūrus es; iniūriam facis. Magnum est perīculum nostrum. Ā populīs fīnitimīs agrī nostrī vāstābuntur, oppidum āmittētur. Prō patriā meā et tuā pugnāre dēbēs."

Aenēās respondet:

"Deum Mercurium vīdī. Officium meum est ad Italiam nāvigāre. Dūrum est, sed deus imperat."

Aenēās excessit et ad nāvēs vēnit. Socīī convēnērunt et nāvēs in aquam trāxērunt. Tum nāvēs undīs ventīsque commīsērunt. Dīdō nāvēs vīdit et sē[2] interfēcit.[3]

Troiānī ad Italiam migrāvērunt et patriam novam invēnērunt. Ita[4] librī poētārum nārrant.

Thought Questions. — 1. What does Mercury tell Aeneas to do? 2. What argument did Dido use to persuade Aeneas to stay in Carthage?

Read Sabin, pp. 337-338; Gayley, pp. 350-352; Bulfinch, pp. 266-268.

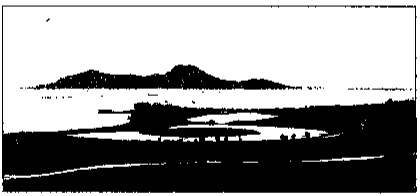


FIG. 84. ANCIENT ROMAN HARBOR AT CARTHAGE

[1] Accusative plural. [2] *herself.* [3] *killed.* [4] *so.*

LESSON XXXIV

256. Vocabulary

com'parō, comparā're, comparā'vī, *get together, prepare*	[*parō*]
fī'lius, fī'li, m., *son*	[*filia*]
nōs'cō, nōs'cere, nō'vī, *learn;* in perf. tenses, "have learned" = *know*	
prōcē'dō, prōcē'dere, prōces'sī, *go forth, advance*	[*cēdō*]
sum, es'se, fu'ī, *be*	(essence)
ab'sum, abes'se, ā'fuī, *be away from, be absent*	

257. Latin and English Word Formation

We have already studied the preposition **in** used as a prefix (**136**). There is another prefix **in-**, used chiefly with adjectives and nouns, which has an entirely different meaning and must be carefully distinguished from the former. It is a negative prefix (like "un-"), as in *injustice*. It is assimilated like the other prefix **in-**, *e.g. il-legal, im-moral, ir-regular*. Define the following derivatives of words which you have already studied:

immemorial, immaterial, inglorious, ingratitude, illiberal, illiterate, infirm

The prefix **dis-** in English and Latin means *apart*, but sometimes it is purely negative like **in-**. Distinguish carefully from **dē-**. It is either assimilated or left unchanged, as follows:

dis-inter, dis-locate, dis-arm, dif-fuse, di-vert, di-stant, dis-similar

Define the first three of these words, derived from words in previous vocabularies.

258. Perfect Indicative of *Sum*

The verb **sum** is conjugated regularly in the perfect:

fu'ī, *I was, I have been*	fu'imus, *we were, we have been*
fuis'tī, *you were, you have been*	fuis'tis, *you were, you have been*
fu'it, *he was, he has been*	fuē'runt, *they were, they have been*

259. How the Perfect and Imperfect Differ

The Latin perfect tense must be carefully distinguished from the imperfect, which always refers to action or being as *repeated, customary,* or *continuous,* like the English progressive past. In the following sentences the first group would be in the perfect in Latin, the second in the imperfect:

PERFECT

1. *I saw John yesterday.*
2. *I went to camp last summer.*
3. *The alarm clock rang and I got up.*
4. *Did you ever live in Louisville?*

IMPERFECT

1. *I saw John frequently.*
2. *I used to go to camp every summer.*
3. *The alarm clock kept on ringing, but I did not get up.*
4. *Did you live in Boston long?*

The perfect tense is used much more often in Latin than the imperfect. In translating the English past into Latin, use the perfect unless there is a clear reason for using the imperfect.

260. Drill. — Tell the form of **erātis, āmīsistī, accipiētis, fuērunt, vīdimus, vidēmus, dūcet, fūgī.**



FIG 85. ITALIA PULCHRA

A picturesque Roman tomb about fifteen miles east of Rome on the way to Tivoli. Part of the bridge is ancient. The river, called the Anio, is a tributary of the Tiber.

261. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Multī puerī aberant. Nōnne valēbant? 2. Aquam portābam et relīquī puerī in magnō agrō castra pōnēbant. 3. Paucī (of us) labōrābāmus, sed relīquī puerī in castrīs semper manēbant. 4. Agricolārum fīliī et fīliae multa dē agrīs et equīs nōvērunt. 5. Magistrī fīlius multa dē lībrīs nōvit, sed agrī fīlium agricolae docent. 6. Multī virī servī fuērunt; nunc līberī sunt. 7. Prō patriā ad pugnam prōcessērunt;

prō patriā et arma et frūmentum comparāvērunt; prō patriā labōrāvērunt et pecūniam dōnāvērunt.

(*b*) 1. We are the sons of free (men) and love our native land. 2. We know much about many lands and peoples. 3. Much grain is being prepared by the farmers in the provinces. 4. The farmer has spent many years in the fields.

262. GRĀTIA

Tenēsne memoriā puerum magnum quem[1] in viā vīdistī? Huic[2] grātiam habēre dēbēmus, quod amīcum nostrum ex aquā trāxit et vītam servāvit. Magnīs undīs amīcus noster terrēbātur: auxilium aberat et amīcus noster vītam āmittēbat. Sed puer eum[3] audīvit et ex silvā, ubi māteriam comparābat, prōcessit et amīcum nostrum ex aquā trāxit. Reliquī spectābant et nihil[4] faciēbant. Amīcus noster fuit grātus et magnum praemium puerō dōnāvit. Nōmen puerī nōn nōvī. Fīlius agricolae est sed nōn semper in agrīs fuit. In oppidō fīnitimō habitābat.



FIG. 86. PUER RŌMĀNUS

Thought Questions. — 1. Where was the big boy? 2. What was he doing there? 3. What was his name?

[1] *whom.* [2] *to him.* [3] *him.* [4] *nothing.*

LESSON XXXV

263. Vocabulary

dīmit'tō, dīmit'tere, dīmī'sī, *let go, send away*	[*mittō*]
inimī'cus, -a, -um, *unfriendly, hostile;* as a noun, *enemy*	[*amīcus*]
in'teger, -gra, -grum, *untouched, fresh*	(integer)
por'ta, -ae, f., *gate*	(portal)
prōdū'cō, prōdū'cere, prōdū'xī, *lead forth* or *out*	[*dūcō*]
retī'neō, retinē're, retī'nuī, *hold back, restrain, keep*	[*teneō*]



FIG. 87. FORUM RŌMĀNUM

Thus it appeared during the Roman Empire. The view is toward the west. To the left background, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

264. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen that prefixes are so called because they are attached to the beginnings of words (122). Particles which are attached to the ends of words are called **suffixes** (**sub,** *under, after;* **fixus,** *attached*). Like

the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.



FIG 88. ARCH OF CONSTANTINE
An aqueduct in the distance

The suffix **–ia** usually has the form **–y** in English. Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: **memoria, glōria, familia, iniūria.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *colony, luxury, perfidy?*

Some **–ia** nouns drop the **–ia** entirely in English: *concord, vigil, matter* (from **māteria**).

You will find it useful to list suffixes in your notebook, together with many examples of their use in English words.

265. Past Perfect Indicative Active

The **past perfect** tense (sometimes called pluperfect) refers to an action that was completed before a certain time in the past: ***He had gone*** (before something else happened).

In Latin, the past perfect is formed by adding the tense sign **–erā–** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings used throughout the present system. It is equivalent in form to the various forms of the

imperfect tense of **sum** added to the perfect stem of the given verb :

portā'**veram**, *I had carried*	portāverā'**mus**, *we had carried*
portā'**verās**, *you had carried*	portāverā'**tis**, *you had carried*
portā'**verat**, *he, she, it had carried*	portā'**verant**, *they had carried*

Similarly **docueram, posueram, cēperam, mūnīveram.**
(For full conjugation see **669, 670, 672, 671.**)

266. Future Perfect Indicative Active

The **future perfect** tense refers to an action completed before a certain time in the future: *He **will have gone*** (before something else will happen).

In Latin, the future perfect is formed by adding the tense sign **–eri–** to the perfect stem, together with the personal endings used throughout the present system. It is equivalent in form to the various forms of the future tense of **sum** (except **–erint** in the third plural) added to the perfect stem of the given verb :

portā'**verō**,[1] *I shall have carried*	portāve'**rimus**, *we shall have carried*
portā'**veris**, *you will have carried*	portāve'**ritis**, *you will have carried*
portā'**verit**, *he, she, it will have carried*	portā'**verint**, *they will have carried*

Similarly **docuerō, posuerō, cēperō, mūnīverō.**
(For full conjugation see **669, 670, 672, 671.**)

[1] **–i–** disappears before final **ō** (**37**, *a*)

Note. — The three tenses, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect, which are based upon the perfect stem, form the perfect system.

267. Drill. — Conjugate the following in the perfect system active: **videō, -ēre, vīdī; cēdō, -ere, cessī; efficiō, -ere, effēcī; moveō, -ēre, mōvī; incipiō, -ere, incēpī.**

268. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Inimīcōs nostrōs amāre dēbēmus. 2. Parvī puerī linguam retinēre dēbent. 3. Magister puerōs dīmīsit, quod fōrmās verbōrum nōn nōverant. 4. Nautae nostrī perīculum vīderint. 5. Integrae cōpiae nostrae bellum gerere incēpērunt et prō populīs līberīs pugnāvērunt. 6. Barbarī prō portīs castrōrum cōpiās prōdūxerant. 7. Carrī ex silvā vēnerant et ad oppidum tardē prōcēdēbant.

(*b*) 1. The slave deserved a large reward, because he had saved the life of our son. 2. Marius had fought in Gaul for (his) native land. 3. We shall have seen strange lands, towns, and peoples. 4. He will have sent the messenger to the province.

269. AENĒĀS ET LATĪNUS

Aenēās ad Italiam nunc vēnerat. Terra fīnitima ubi Troiānī castra posuerant ā bonō Latīnō regēbātur. Lāvīnia, fīlia Latīnī, ā Turnō amābātur, sed deī verbīs signīsque mātrimōnium nōn probāverant. "Vir veniet quī[1] Lāvīniam in mātrimōnium dūcet. Terra Latīnī ā populō novō regētur." Haec[2] fuērunt verba deōrum, et Latīnus audīvit.

[1] *who.* [2] *these.*

Aenēās nūntiōs et dōna commoda ad portās oppidī Latīnī dīmīsit. Nūntiī dīxērunt:



FIG. 89. STREET IN OSTIA
This ancient seaport of Rome was not far from the country of Latīnus

"Properāmus concordiam amīcitiamque efficere. Bellum nōn gerēmus in populum Latīnī."

Latīnus dōna accēpit et retinuit; tum respondit:

"Sī Aenēās nōn fuerit inimīcus, tum nostra amīcitia erit perpetua."

Tum Latīnus equōs integrōs prōdūxit et nūntiōs cum equīs et dōnīs ad castra Troiāna dīmīsit. Troiānī amīcitiam concordiamque effēcerant — Aenēās et Latīnus nunc erant amīcī sociīque.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who wanted to marry Lavinia? 2. Why didn't he? 3. Did the Trojans attack the country of Latinus?

Read Gayley, pp. 362–367; Guerber, pp. 372–374.

270. Vocabulary

benefi'cium, benefi'cī, n., *kindness* [*faciō*]
cu'piō, cu'pere, cupi'vī, *desire* (cupidity)
du'bitō, dubitā're, dubitā'vī, *hesitate, doubt* (indubitable)
e'go, me'ī, *I* (egoist)
gla'dius, gla'dī, m., *sword* (gladiator)
is, *he*, *it*[1]; **ea**, *she*, *it*[1]
mi'ser, mi'sera, mi'serum, *wretched, unhappy* (misery)
si'ne, prep. with abl., *without*
tū, tu'ī, *you*
ves'ter, ves'tra, ves'trum, *your* (referring to two or more persons)

271. English Word Studies

(*a*) Why is a *gladiolus* so named? How does a *miser* feel? What does *inimical* mean? From their meanings tell which of the following words come from **porta** and which from **portāre**: *report, portiere, transport, port.*

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

inter nōs, *between us.*

Et tū, Brūte, *You too, Brutus* (said by Caesar on receiving the deathblow from his friend, Brutus).

Tē Deum, *Thee, God* (*we praise*); the name of a hymn.

Pāx vōbiscum, *Peace* (*be*) *with you!*

272. How Personal Pronouns Are Used

In English, personal pronouns are used to show the person of the verb: *I* am, *you* are. In Latin, as we have seen (**34**), personal endings are used instead. When, however, emphasis or sharp contrast in subjects

[1] The word *it* is used to translate **is** and **ea** when the noun referred to is masculine or feminine in Latin but neuter in English (**13**).

is desired, the Latin employs the personal pronouns **ego** (*I*) and **tū** (*you*). Is and ea serve as the personal pronouns of the third person (*he* and *she*). The full declension of these will be given later. Memorize the declensions of **ego** and **tū**:[1]

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**e'go**, *I*	**nōs**, *we*
Gen.	**mei**, *of me*	**nos'trum**, *of us*
Dat.	**mi'hi**, *to (for) me*	**nō'bis**, *to (for) us*
Acc.	**mē**, *me*	**nōs**, *us*
Abl.	**mē**, *with (from,* etc.) *me*	**nō'bīs**, *with (from,* etc.) *us*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	**tū**, *you*	**vōs**, *you*
Gen.	**tu'i**, *of you*	**ves'trum**, *of you*
Dat.	**ti'bi**, *to (for) you*	**vō'bīs**, *to (for) you*
Acc.	**tē**, *you*	**vōs**, *you*
Abl.	**tē**, *with (from,* etc.) *you*	**vō'bīs**, *with (from,* etc.) *you*

273. Possessive Adjectives

From the base of **ego** (**me-**), **nōs** (**nostr-**), **tū** (**tu-**), and **vōs** (**vestr-**), the possessive adjectives **meus**, **noster**, **tuus**, and **vester** are derived.

The possessive adjectives follow the noun except when emphatic.

Caution. — Never use the genitives **meī**, **tuī**, **nostrum**, and **vestrum** to show possession; use the corresponding possessive adjectives **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, and **vester**.

Query. — What is the difference between **tuus** and **vester**?

[1] When the preposition **cum** is used with the ablative forms of **ego** and **tū**, it is attached to them: **mēcum**, *with me*; **nōbīscum**, *with us*.

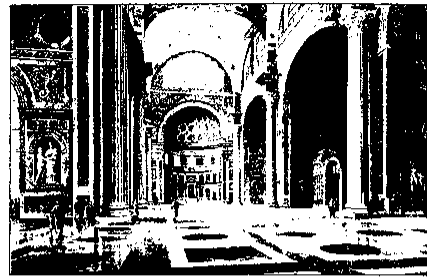


FIG. 90. THE BASILICA OF MAXENTIUS

A reconstruction of a courthouse built in 310 A.D. near the Forum.

274. Personal Pronoun Test

First copy these sentences. Then translate the underlined English words into the proper Latin forms.

1. She is my friend; he, my enemy.
2. I shall give you a book.
3. She showed us beautiful flowers.
4. I criticize you; you criticize me.
5. We'll treat you (*plur.*) if you'll treat us.
6. I will show you (*sing.*) the house.
7. He came to us and showed us many pictures which he had taken.
8. Come with us and we will go with you (*plur.*).
9. He was mentioned by me, but she told me nothing.
10. Your daughter was seen by us with you (*sing.*) on the street.

275. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Ego sum amīcus tuus, is est inimīcus. 2. Cupitisne vidēre nōs, amīcōs vestrōs? 3. Retinuī gladium meum et cōpiās integrās ad portam oppidī prōdūxī. 4. Fīlius meus in perīculum mēcum properāre nōn dubitāverat. 5. Ego sum miser sine tē, tū misera es quod tēcum nōn maneō. 6. Multa beneficia ā tē, amīce, accēpī.

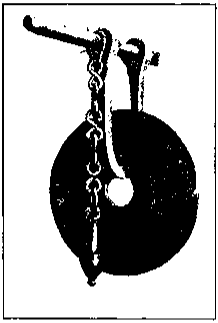


FIG. 91. ROMAN GONG

(*b*) 1. We are Americans; you are foreigners. 2. Come (*plur.*) with us; we are your friends, not your enemies. 3. I desire to present the sword to you (*sing.*). 4. I was wretched without you but hesitated to flee with you.

276. LŪCIUS PILAM ĀMITTIT

Lūcius. Mārce, venī ad nōs.

Mārcus. Mēne vocās, Lūcī?

Lūcius. Tē vocō. Pilam[1] meam novam āmīsī. Fortūna est misera! Dā[2] nōbīs auxilium. Sī et nōs et tū pilam quaerēmus, nōs eam[3] inveniēmus. Sed sine auxiliō tuō numquam[4] ea ā nōbīs inveniētur.

Mārcus. Ubi pilam āmīsistī? Quid faciēbās?

[1] *ball* [2] *give.* [3] *it* [4] *never.*



FIG. 92. "INVĒNĪ PILAM TUAM, LŪCĪ!"

Lūcius. In herbā āmīsī. Ego et Cornēlius lūdēbāmus. Is nōn āmīsit; mea fuit culpa.

Mārcus. Invēnī pilam tuam, Lūcī! Cape.

Lūcius. Magnam grātiam tibi prō beneficiō tuō habeō, Mārce. Nunc lūde nōbīscum. Dubitāsne? Tē vincam!

Mārcus. Grātiās agō. Vōbīscum lūdere cupiō. Sed mē nōn vincēs.

Lūcius. Cupisne pilā aut gladiīs lūdere?

Mārcus. Gladiōs vestrōs nōn amō. Pilā lūdere cupiō.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who lost the ball? 2. Who found it? 3. What was the reward?

LESSON XXXVII

277. Vocabulary

de'us, –ī, m., *god* (deity)
discē'dō, discē'dere, disces'sī, *go away, depart* [*cēdō*]
e'tiam, adv., *also, even*
iu'beō, iubē're, ius'sī, *order, command*
red'igō, redi'gere, redē'gī, *drive* or *bring back, reduce* [*agō*]
remo'veō, removē're, remō'vī, *move back, remove, withdraw* [*moveō*]

278. Latin and English Word Formation

The Latin suffix **–ia** usually has the form **–y** in English, as we have seen (**264**). When it is preceded by **–t–**, the combination **–tia** as a general rule has the form **–ce** in English.

Give the English forms of the following words found in the preceding vocabularies: **grātia, sententia.**

What must be the Latin words from which are derived *science, diligence, prudence?*

Latin Verb Forms in English

Present: *deficit*
Perfect: *affidavit, vici*

279. Past Perfect and Future Perfect of *Sum*

Past Perfect	Future Perfect
fu'eram, *I had been*	**fu'erō,** *I shall have been*
fu'erās, *you had been*	**fu'eris,** *you will have been*
fu'erat, *he had been*	**fu'erit,** *he will have been*
fuerā'mus, *we had been*	**fue'rimus,** *we shall have been*
fuerā'tis, *you had been*	**fue'ritis,** *you will have been*
fu'erant, *they had been*	**fu'erint,** *they will have been*

280. Infinitive Object as in English

1. Virōs discēdere iussī, *I ordered the men to go away.*
2. Mē labōrāre docuistī, *You taught me to work*

Observe that (*a*) in English such verbs as *order, teach* (also *wish, forbid,* etc.) take an infinitive as *object,* often with a noun or pronoun in the accusative, which may be regarded as its *subject;* (*b*) in Latin certain verbs of similar meaning take the infinitive with subject accusative.

281. Rule. — *The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.*

282. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Fīliōs nostrōs semper retinēre bonōs librōs docēmus. 2. Nōnne bonum est inimīcōs in amīcitiam et concordiam redigere? 3. Deus nōs etiam inimīcōs amāre docet. 4. Servī ex silvā māteriam remōverant et ad oppidum fīnitimum prōcesserant. 5. Magister nōs amīcōs nostrōs dīmittere et etiam discēdere ā viā iussit. 6. Novum est vidēre magnum numerum equōrum in vīs lātīs oppidī.

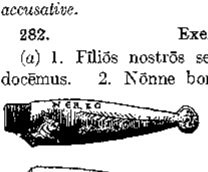


FIG. 93. ROMAN POCKETKNIFE
On one side is the name of a race horse; on the other, a driver's

(*b*) 1. It was good to see our forces near the gates of the town. 2. They had hesitated to remove the grain to the town without wagons. 3. The sons of farmers are beginning to go away from the farms (ager). 4. Lucius, order the boy to lead out fresh horses to the gate.

283. Q. FABIUS MAXIMUS

Bellō[1] Pūnicō Hannibal cum Rōmānīs pugnāre cupiēbat sed Q.[2] Fabius Maximus semper discēdēbat neque in ūnō locō manēbat. Hannibal Italiam in prōvinciam redigere nōn poterat.[3]



FIG. 94. STATUA DEAE
Ancient statue of Diana at Cherchell, Algeria.

Maximus magnā vigilantiā etiam Tarentum, oppidum Italiae, recēpit. Līvius in hōc[4] oppidō fuerat sed oppidum āmīserat et ad arcem[5] cum cōpiīs Rōmānīs fūgerat. Maximus oppidum recēpit; tum ad arcem prōcessit. Ibi Līvius, superbus quod arcem retinuerat, Fabiō dīxit:[6] "Meā operā Tarentum recēpistī." Fabius respondit: "Certē,[7] Līvī, nam ego recēpī oppidum quod[8] tū āmīsistī."

Statuās deōrum ex oppidō Tarentō Maximus nōn remōvit sed deōs īrātōs Tarentīnīs[9] in oppidō retinērī iussit.

Thought Questions. — 1. How did Maximus weaken Hannibal? 2. How did Livius help in recovering Tarentum?

[1] Ablative: *in* ——. [2] Q. = Quintus. [3] *could*
[4] *this* (ablative). [5] *citadel* (accusative).
[6] From dīcō, dictus: derivative? [7] Adverb. [8] *which*.
[9] *angry at the people of Tarentum.*

284. Vocabulary

ēgre'gius, –a, –um, *distinguished, excellent* (egregious)
exem'plum, –ī, n., *sample, example* (exemplify)
per, prep. with acc., *through*
prōpō'nō, prōpō'nere, prōpo'suī, prōpo'situs, *set forth, present* [*pōnō*]
sub, prep., *under, close to;* with acc. after verbs of motion; with abl. after verbs of rest
susci'piō, susci'pere, suscē'pī, suscep'tus, *take up, undertake* [*capiō*]

285. Latin and English Word Formation

The preposition **sub,** used as a prefix in Latin and English, means *under, up from under:* **sus-tineō,** *to hold up;* **succēdō,** *to come up.* It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *sup-port, suc-ceed, sug-gest, sus-ceptible, suf-fer, sur-rogate, sus-tenance, sus-pend,* but *sub-mit, sub-trahend.* We use it freely in English to form new words: *sub-let, sub-lease.*

Per usually remains unchanged when used as a prefix.

Explain by derivation the meaning of *permanent, permit, sustain, suspect.*

286. Perfect Participle

A **participle** is that part of a verb which is used like an adjective.

The **perfect passive participle** in Latin is declined like **magnus, –a, –um.** In the first conjugation it is regularly formed by adding **–tus** to the present stem: **portā-tus.** It agrees, like an ordinary adjective, with a noun or pronoun in gender, number, and case: **litterae plicātae,** *the folded letter.* The perfect participle

represents an act as having taken place before the time indicated by the main verb.

The perfect participle of each new verb will hereafter be given in the vocabularies as the fourth form. The four forms given are called the **principal parts.**

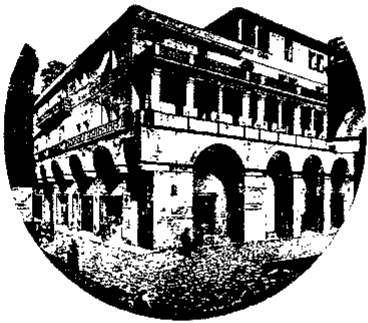


FIG. 95 ANCIENT APARTMENT HOUSE
Reconstruction of a Roman building at Ostia, the seaport of Rome.

287. Perfect System Passive

In English, all the passive tenses are **compound,** consisting of two or more words.

In Latin, the tenses of the present and perfect systems thus far studied have been single or **simple** in

form. The three perfect tenses in the passive, however, are compound, and are formed by combining the perfect participle of the given verb with the present, imperfect, and future tenses of **sum** to form the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses, respectively. In the compound tenses the participle really modifies the subject and therefore agrees with it in gender, number, and case.

288. Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the present perfect passive is formed by using the perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *have been*) as an auxiliary or helping verb with the past participle.

In Latin, the perfect passive is formed by using the *present* tense of **sum** as an auxiliary with the perfect participle.

portā'tus (-a, -um)	**sum,** *I was, have been carried*	portā'tī (-ae, -a)	**su'mus,** *we were, have been carried*
	es, *you were, have been carried*		**es'tis,** *you were, have been carried*
	est, *he was, has been carried*		**sunt,** *they were, have been carried*

Similarly **doctus sum, positus sum, captus sum, mūnītus sum.**
(For full conjugation, see 669–672.)

289. Past Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the past perfect passive is formed by using the past perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *had been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the past perfect passive is formed by using the *imperfect* tense of **sum** (*i.e.* **eram**) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the imperfect tense of **sum** to the perfect stem: **portāv-eram**):

portā'tus (–a, –um)	e'ram, *I had been carried* e'rās, *you had been carried* e'rat, *he had been carried*	portā'tī (–ae, –a)	erā'mus, *we had been carried* erā'tis, *you had been carried* e'rant, *they had been carried*

Similarly **doctus eram, positus eram, captus eram, mūnītus eram.**

(For full conjugation, see 669–672.)

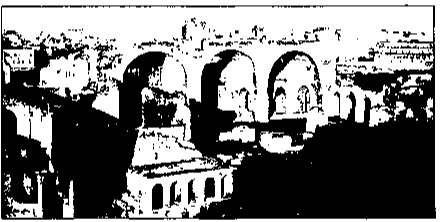


FIG. 96. THE BASILICA OF MAXENTIUS (cf. Fig. 90)

290. **Drill.** — (*a*) Conjugate the following in the perfect and past perfect passive:

trahō, –ere, trāxī, trāctus	moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus
videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus	agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus

(*b*) Translate: *they have been seen; I had been dragged; you had been moved; driven; having been seen.*

291. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Ēgregium exemplum beneficī ā magistrō vestrō prōpositum est. 2. Arma carrīs ad castra portāta erant. 3. Equī ab agricolā per silvam ad aquam āctī erant. 4. Puellae magnīs undīs terrentur sed iniūriam nōn accipient. 5. Ēgregiumne exemplum amīcitiae memoriā tenētis? 6. Causam populī suscipere est officium bonōrum. 7. Vir ā puerō sub aquam trāctus erat, sed et vir et puer servātī[1] sunt.

(*b*) 1. The rest of the books had been removed by the boy's teacher. 2. The farmer's son had seen few towns, but he knew much about horses and fields and woods. 3. My son had presented an excellent example. 4. He had been taught by good teachers.

292. AENĒĀS ET TURNUS

Troia ā Graecīs capta erat et Aenēās cum paucīs Troiānīs ad Italiam vēnerat. Sed Iūnō inimīca remānsit et multōs barbarōs populōs Italiae contrā Aenēam miserum incitāvit. Ā Turnō Lāvīnia, fīlia rēgis[2] Latīnī, amābātur sed Aenēae[3] dōnāta erat. Turnus frātus bellum gerere properāvit. Sed causa Troiānōrum ā Fātīs suscepta erat. Aenēās auxilium ā Graecīs quī in Italiā habitābant accēpit, quod erant inimīcī Turnō. Per multōs diēs bellum gerēbant, et multa ēgregia exempla virtūtis[4] in proeliīs clārīs prōposita sunt.

[1] Note that the participle is plural because it refers to both **vir** and **puer**.

[2] Genitive singular of **rēx**. [3] Dative. [4] *of courage.*



FIG. 97 VENUS ASKS VULCAN TO MAKE ARMOR FOR AENEAS
From a painting by Velasquez.

Tandem Turnus sōlus Aenēam ad pugnam ēvocāvit. In locō commodō sub portīs oppidī gladiīs pugnāvērunt. Nōn longa fuit pugna, quod Venus, māter Aenēae, filiō ēgregia arma dōnāverat, quae[1] deus Vulcānus fēcerat. Fāta iusserant auxilium ad Turnum nōn mittī;[2] itaque Īūnō aberat. Turnus vītam āmīsit, et cōpiae Turnī discessērunt. Colōnia,[3] appellāta "Lāvīnium" prō Lāvīniā, ab Aenēā cōnstitūta est.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did Turnus carry on war with the Trojans? 2. Why did Aeneas defeat Turnus?

Read Sabin, pp. 341–342; Gayley, pp. 367–372; Bulfinch, pp. 290–292.

[1] *which.* [2] *to be sent.* [3] Use the English derivative.

LESSON XXXIX

293. Vocabulary

ad'sum, ades'se, ad'fuī, adfutū'rus,[1] *be near, be present* [*sum*]
ēdū'cō, ēdū'cere, ēdū'xī, ēduc'tus, *lead out* [*dūcō*]
lī'berī, -ō'rum, m., *children* [*liber*]
permit'tō, permit'tere, permī'sī, permis'sus, *let go through, allow, entrust* (with dat.) [*mittō*]
prī'mus, -a, -um, first (primary)
rema'neō, remanē're, remān'sī, remānsū'rus,[1] *remain behind, remain* [*maneō*]

294. Latin Phrases in English

Deō grātiās, *thanks to God.*
Deī grātiā, *by the grace of God* (seen on Canadian coins).
per annum, *by (through) the year.*
sīc semper tyrannīs, *thus always to tyrants* (motto of the state of Virginia).
sub rosā, *under the rose, i.e.* in concealment.

295. Future Perfect Indicative Passive

In English, the future perfect passive is formed by using the future perfect tense of *to be* (i.e. *shall have been*) as an auxiliary with the past participle.

In Latin, the future perfect passive is formed by using the *future* tense of sum (*i.e.* erō) as an auxiliary with the perfect participle (cf. the formation of the corresponding active tense by adding the future of sum to the perfect stem: portāv-erō):

[1] A few verbs lack the perfect participle; some of these have the future active participle in -ūrus, which appears as the fourth principal part.

portā'tus (-a, -um)		portā'tī (-ae, -a)	
	e'rō, *I shall have been carried*		e'rimus, *we shall have been carried*
	e'ris, *you will have been carried*		e'ritis, *you will have been carried*
	e'rit, *he will have been carried*		e'runt, *they will have been carried*

Similarly **doctus erō, positus erō, captus erō, mūnītus erō.**
(For full conjugation see 669–672.)

296. **Drill.** — Conjugate the following in the perfect system passive:

āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus
retineō, -ēre, retinuī, retentus
redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctus
capiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus

297. **Present Infinitive Passive**

In English, the present infinitive passive is formed by using the auxiliary *to be* with the past participle.

In Latin, the present infinitive passive is formed by changing the active infinitive ending **-re** to **-rī**:

Active: portā're, *to carry;* doceˊre; mūnī're
Passive: portā'rī, *to be carried,* doceˊrī; mūnīrī

Note. — In the third conjugation, final **-ĕre** is changed to **-ī**:
Active: pō'nere, *to place;* ca'pere
Passive: pō'nī, *to be placed;* ca'pī

298. **Drill.** — Form and translate the present passive infinitive of **videō, agō, trahō, suscipiō, ēdūcō,** and **moveō.**

299. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nōnne dūrum est sub aquā remanēre? 2. Fortūnās meās et vītam līberōrum meōrum tibi permittere nōn dubitāvī. 3. Equī ex oppidō per agrōs lātōs ēductī erunt. 4. Pecūnia merērī et servārī ā puerīs puellīsque dēbet. 5. Deō grātiam habēre et ego et tū dēbēmus, quod vītam nostram regit. 6. Puerī adfuērunt prīmī, quod puellae tardae fuērunt. 7. Verbīs bonōrum virōrum semper incitārī et regī dēbēmus.



FIG. 98 CAST OF A DOG AT POMPEII

Pompeii was buried by a shower of ashes from Vesuvius (79 A.D.). This dog, like many human beings, was suffocated by them. As the body decayed, the ashes formed a perfect mold which the excavators filled with plaster

(*b*) 1. The troops will have been ordered to seize the fortified town. 2. The boys are absent, but the girls are present. 3. We have ordered the boys to be dismissed. 4. The children ought to be called together and praised by the teacher.

300. NIOBĒ

Niobē,[1] rēgīna superba, in Graeciā habitābat. Avus erat Iuppiter, quī deōs virōsque regēbat, et hoc[2] superbiam rēgīnae augēbat. Niobē erat superba etiam quod septem fīliōs et septem fīliās habēbat.

[1] *Nī'obē.* [2] *this.*

Apollō deus erat fīlius Lātōnae, et Diāna erat fīlia. Aliōs līberōs Lātōna nōn habēbat.

Sacra[1] Lātōnae ā populō suscipiēbantur. Superba Niobē adfuit et rogāvit: "Cūr sacra mātrī[2] duōrum līberōrum suscipitis? Hoc[3] nōn permittam. Etiam Niobē dea est; XIV, nōn duōs, līberōs habet. Lātōna glōriam nōn meret — Niobē esse prīma dēbet. Sī[4] verba mea ā vōbīs nōn probāta erunt, poenā afficiēminī."



FIG. 99. NIOBĒ

Superba verba rēgīnae ā Lātōnā audīta sunt. Fīlium vocāvit et eum[5] septem fīliōs Niobae interficere iussit. Niobē septem fīliōs nunc āmīserat, tamen remānsit superba. Itaque Lātōna iussit etiam fīliās septem ēdūcī et ā Diānā interficī. Singulae fīliae ē vītā discessērunt, et Niobē misera in saxum dūrum mūtāta est. Poenā magnā et aequā affecta erat.

Thought Questions. — 1. Give three reasons for Niobe's pride. 2. Who was Diana's brother? 3. Why were Niobe's children killed?

Read Sabin, pp. 13–15; Gayley, pp. 99–103; Bulfinch, pp. 117–120; Guerber, pp. 93–96

[1] *sacred rites* [2] *for the mother.* [3] *this.*
[4] *if.* [5] *him* (subject of interficere)



FIG. 100. THE PERISTYLE OF A ROMAN HOUSE (From "Julius Cæsar.")

FOURTH REVIEW (LESSONS XXXI–XXXIX)

301. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. annus
2. beneficium
3. deus
4. exemplum
5. filius
6. gladius
7. liber
8. liberī
9. perīculum
10. porta
11. praesidium
12. proelium

Adjectives

13. ēgregius
14. finitimus
15. inimīcus
16. integer
17. miser
18. paucī
19. primus
20. reliquus
21. vester

Pronouns

22. ego
23. tū
24. is, ea

Verbs

25. absum
26. adsum
27. āmittō
28. appellō
29. committō
30. comparō
31. cupiō
32. dīmittō
33. discēdō
34. dubitō
35. ēdūcō
36. iubeō
37. nōscō
38. permittō
39. prōcēdō
40. prōdūcō
41. properō
42. prōpōnō
43. redigō
44. remaneō
45. removeō
46. retineō
47. sum
48. suscipiō

Adverb

49. etiam

Prepositions

50. per
51. prō
52. sine
53. sub

Conjunctions

54. aut
55. aut . . . aut
56. et . . . et
57. neque
58. neque . . . neque
59. -que

302. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *year*
2. *kindness*
3. *god*
4. *example*
5. *son*
6. *sword*
7. *book*
8. *children*
9. *danger*
10. *gate*
11. *garrison*
12. *battle*

Adjectives

13. *distinguished*
14. *neighboring*
15. *unfriendly*
16. *untouched, whole*
17. *wretched*
18. *few*
19. *first*
20. *remaining*
21. *your*

Pronouns

22. *I*
23. *you*
24. *he, she*

Verbs

25. *be away*
26. *be present*
27. *lose*
28. *call, name*
29. *join together, entrust*
30. *get ready*
31. *desire*
32. *send away*
33. *depart*
34. *hesitate*
35. *lead out*
36. *order*
37. *learn*
38. *entrust*
39. *go forth*
40. *lead forth*
41. *hasten*
42. *set forth*
43. *reduce*
44. *remain*
45. *remove*
46. *hold back*
47. *be*
48. *undertake*

Adverb

49. *also*

Prepositions

50. *through*
51. *for*
52. *without*
53. *under*

Conjunctions

54. *or*
55. *either . . . or*
56. *both . . . and*
57. *nor*
58. *neither . . . nor*
59. *and*

303. Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **servō, moveō, dūcō, capiō.** For

example: from servō is derived *conservation*, used as follows: *The* conservation *of our forests is a necessity.*

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

304. First Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Verbs of the first conjugation generally form the perfect stem by adding -v to the present stem (251, Note) and form the perfect participle by adding -tus to the present stem (286). Review the meanings of the following verbs, whose principal parts are regular:

accūsō, amō, appellō, convocō, dōnō, dubitō, ēvocō, exspectō, habitō, incitō, labōrō, laudō, līberō, mandō, mātūrō, migrō, mōnstrō, nāvigō, nūntiō, occupō, parō, portō, probō, pugnō, servō, spectō, vāstō, vocō.

305. Rapid-Fire Drill

(*a*) ~~Give voice, tense, person, and number~~, and translate:

Appellantur, permitte, redūcēmini, āmīsērunt, nōvī, remanē, retinuit, dīmīserāmus, discēdite, iusserō, prōcesserant, discessisti, prōductus eram, removēte, redēgērunt, prōpositum est, remānsit, properā.

(*b*) Give in Latin:

1. It was committed; you have been away; we have hastened. 2. I have prepared; he had been; to remove. 3. To dismiss; to be presented; to be called; he had had.

(*c*) Give in Latin:

To me; we; us; with you (*sing.*); of us; to you (*plur.*); of me; for us; with us; to you (*sing.*); you (*dir. obj. sing.*); you (*subject plur.*).

306. Decline: (*a*) **proelium integrum,** (*b*) **agricola bonus,** (*c*) **fīlius meus,** (*d*) **liber parvus,** (*e*) **perīculum magnum.**

307. Synopses:[1] (Six tenses)

(*a*) 1. Give **iubeō** in the 1st sing., indic. act.
2. Give **prōpōnō** in the 2d sing., indic. pass.
3. Give **prōdūcō** in the 3d sing., indic. act.
4. Give **liberō** in the 2d plur., indic. pass.

(*b*) Give **sum** in the 1st sing.; **absum** in the 3d sing.; **adsum** in the 2d plur.

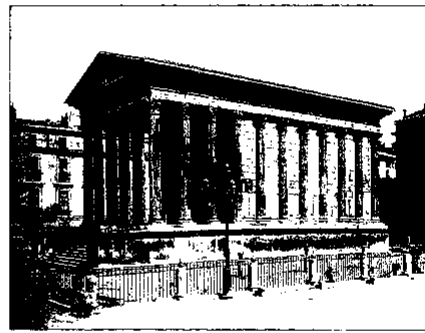


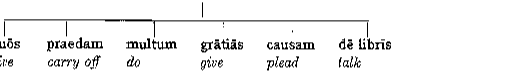
FIG. 101 ROMAN TEMPLE AT NÎMES, FRANCE

See Fig 2 and note how closely modern buildings imitate such ancient buildings as the one shown here

[1] For definition of synopsis, see **645.**

308. Hints for Developing "Word Sense"

No word in any language, except a few prepositions, etc., has the same meaning at all times. While words, as a rule, have one general meaning, they may have several *shades of meaning*, which depend entirely upon their context or surroundings. In translating a Latin word, therefore, it is necessary to derive its exact meaning (as opposed to its general or "vocabulary" meaning) from its context or setting; for example,



The above are only a few of the meanings of **agō**. From now on, do not confine yourself to the meanings given to words in the vocabulary, but select the one best suited to the context. In this way you will learn to express yourself in good English.

309. How to Study a Connected Passage

Do not turn to the vocabulary at the end of the book for a word you do not know. Read an entire paragraph before you look up a word. There are three ways to find the meaning of a word *without looking it up*:

1. *English derivatives* (nearly every Latin word has at least one English derivative).

2. *Related Latin words* (if you know the meaning of **re-** and **dūcō**, you know the meaning of **redūcō**).

3. *Sensible guessing.*

Use the vocabulary merely to verify results. In this way you will save time and gain a better command of Latin.

310. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Lūdus

Lūciumne in memoriā habētis? Lūcius reliquīque puerī Rōmānī ā magistrō in Forum Rōmānum ductī erant. Nunc iterum dē Lūciō audiētis, quod bonī puerī puellaeque fuistis. Dē lūdō Lūcī nunc agēmus. Lūdus est locus ubi magister puerōs puellāsque docet. Prīmus lūdus vocābātur "lūdus litterārum." In Lūcī lūdō puellae nōn erant, et paucī puerī. Nōn erat pūblicus lūdus, sed tamen pretium disciplīnae erat parvum. Puerī pecūniam et praemia ad magistrum portābant. Servī puerōs ad lūdum ante aurōram dūcēbant et lanternam librōsque portābant. Nōnne dūra erat vīta puerōrum Rōmānōrum? Servī in lūdō manēbant et puerōs ad familiās redūcēbant.



FIG. 102. SLEEPYHEAD
Perhaps a schoolboy on his way to school with his lantern.

What Roman Boys Studied

Etiam magister servus erat. Litterās et verba et numerōs docēbat. Lingua lūdī erat Latīna, quod puerī Rōmānī erant. Numerōs Lūcius nōn amābat. Magister puerīs fōrmās litterārum mōnstrābat. Tum digitōs puerōrum tenēbat, et litterās faciēbant. Sententiae[1] puerīs ā magistrō mōnstrābantur. Exemplum sententiae est: "Ibi semper est victōria ubi concordia est." Sententiās semper amābat Lūcius et in memoriā tenēbat. Dīligentiā et studiō praemia merēbat.

Bad Luck

Tardī discipulī poenā afficiēbantur, sed Lūcius semper prīmus veniēbat, quod ad lūdum properābat neque in vīs remanēbat. Sed mala fortūna vēnit. Pecūnia ā Lūciō ad magistrum portābātur et in viā āmissa est. Tardus fuit. Magister puerōs appellāverat, et reliquī puerī responderant, "Adsum!" Tum magister Lūcium appellāvit. Puerī respondērunt, "Abest!" Tum vēnit Lūcius sine pecūniā et magister puerīque dē pecūniā āmissā audīvērunt. Magister dūrus Lūcium miserum ā puerīs sublevārī iussit et poenā eum[2] affēcit, quod pecūniam āmīserat et tardus fuerat.

Found!

Magister discipulōs dīmīsit et singulī excessērunt. Lūcius cum servō discessit et pecūniam in viā invēnit. Ad lūdum properāvit et magistrō pecūniam dōnāvit. Magister bonō puerō grātiās ēgit et librum dōnāvit.

[1] *mottoes* [2] *him.*



FIG. 103 LŪCIUS IN LŪDŌ POENĀ AFFICITUR

311. Conversation: School

Magister. Discipulōs appellābō. Anna. **Anna.** Adsum.

M. Maria. **Maria.** Adsum.

M. Mārcus. **Discipulī.** Abest.

M. Ubi est Mārcus? **D.** Ad lūdum nōn vēnit. (Etc.)

M. Grātane erat vīta puerōrum Rōmānōrum? **D.** Nōn grāta erat vīta puerōrum Rōmānōrum, quod puerī Rōmānī ante aurōram in lūdum dūcēbantur.

M. Ubi puerī Rōmānī labōrābant? **D.** In lūdō puerī Rōmānī labōrābant.

M. Multīne puerī in lūdō fuērunt? **D.** Paucī puerī in lūdō fuērunt.

Questions to Be Answered in Latin

1. Ubi nunc estis? 2. Estne grātum in lūdō esse? 3. Pecūniamne tuam āmīsistī? 4. Ubi librum tuum Latīnum āmīsistī? 5. Tardusne in lūdum vēnistī? 6. Semperne tardus in lūdum veniēs?

312. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Roman Schools

Even before going to school some Roman children learned the alphabet by playing with letters cut out of ivory, as ours do from their blocks. They started to school at about the same age as our children. The schools were quite different, however. They were very small private schools, usually run by slaves for small fees. Work began early in the morning. The children were taken to and from school by slaves called **paedagōgī**, a Greek word which means those who "lead (take) children." They did no teaching but merely kept their children in order. Our word pedagogue is derived from this word.

In the elementary school, called the **lūdus litterārum**, the three *R*'s formed the basis of the curriculum. For reading the Romans had to depend at first on the Twelve Tables of the law. In the third century B.C. a school teacher translated the *Odyssey* from Greek for the use of his pupils. Later other works of literature were used.

Writing was practiced on wax tablets, which were something like slates, except that the writing surface was a thin layer of wax on a wooden board. The writing was done by scratching the wax with a pointed stylus made of metal or bone. The other end of this was flat for erasing, or rather smoothing over the wax. The Romans also wrote with pen and ink on papyrus, a kind of paper made out of thin strips of a reed which grew in Egypt. Most books were made out of rolls of this material. But it was expensive, and school chil-

dren used only the backs of old books and loose sheets for their "scratch paper."

Arithmetic was complicated by the fact that the Romans did not have the Arabic system of numerals with its zero. Multiplication and division were impossible. The Romans had two helps in their arithmetic: an elaborate system of finger counting and the abacus, or counting board, similar to those used as toys by children today and those which you may see in Chinese laundries.

More advanced education prepared boys for the one respected profession in ancient Rome, that of law and public life. Hence the secondary school, called the **schola grammaticī** (*school of the grammarian*), specialized in language, composition, rhetoric, and public speaking. But the course was also a broadly cultural one and included literature, both Greek and Latin. Most educated Romans learned to speak and write Greek fluently.

The college course in the **schola rhētoricī** (*school of the rhetorician*) was still more technical in preparation for a career in which public speaking, whether in a law court or a legislative body, played a very important role. For graduate work students could go to such university centers as Athens or Rhodes and listen to lectures by leading philosophers and rhetoricians.

Read Showerman, pp. 194–202; Davis, pp. 191–204; McDaniel, pp. 70–76; Johnston, pp. 85–95; Mills, pp. 323–330.



FIG. 104. THE HOME OF THE VESTAL VIRGINS IN THE FORUM

LESSON XLI

313. Vocabulary

dīligen'tia, -ae, f., *carefulness, diligence*	(diligent)
dō,[1] **da're, de'dī, da'tus,** *give*	(dative)
in'ter, prep. with acc., *between, among*	
ob, prep. with acc., *toward, on account of, for*	
perti'neō, pertinē're, -ti'nuī, -tentū'rus, with **ad,** *extend to, pertain to*	[*teneō*]
submit'tō, submit'tere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, (*send from under*), *dispatch, furnish*	[*mittō*]

314. Latin and English Word Formation

As a prefix in Latin and English, **inter-** has its usual meanings. It is rarely assimilated. It is used rather freely in English to form new words: *inter-class, inter-state, inter-scholastic,* etc.

As a prefix **ob-** has the meaning *towards* or *against.* It is regularly assimilated before certain consonants: *oc-cur, of-ficial, o-mission, op-ponent;* but *ob-tain, ob-serve, ob-durate, ob-vious.*

Explain by derivation the meaning of *intercede, opponent, intervene, obvious.*

315. Principal Parts

The principal parts of the model verbs of the four conjugations and of **sum** are as follows:

[1] **Dō** is irregular in three parts — perfect **dedī,** and **ă** in **dare** and **datus.** The **a** is short in all indicative forms except the present tense, second person singular.

Conjugation	Pres. Indic	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	Perf. Part.
I	portō	portāre	portāvī	portātus
II	doceō	docēre	docuī	doctus
III	(*a*) pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positus
	(*b*) capiō	capere	cēpī	captus
IV	mūniō	mūnīre	mūnīvī	mūnītus
Irregular Verbs	sum	esse	fuī	futūrus[1]
	absum	abesse	āfuī	āfutūrus

316. Tense Stems

Every Latin verb has approximately *one hundred and fifty forms*, all of which are built upon **three stems**, obtained from the principal parts as follows:



Fig. 105. Wax Tablet and Papyrus Rolls

From models made by pupils of the Peabody High School, Pittsburgh, Pa.

1. To find the **present stem**, drop **–re** from the present infinitive active: **portā–**, etc.

2. To find the **perfect stem**, drop **–ī** from the perfect indicative active: **portāv–**, etc.

3. To find the **participial stem**, drop **–us** from the perfect participle: **portāt–**, etc.

Query. — What tenses are formed (*a*) upon the present stem, (*b*) upon the perfect stem, (*c*) with the perfect participle?

[1] *See* **293**, footnote 1.

317. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Officium pūblicum est puerīs puellīsque disciplīnam dare. 2. Dīligentia puerōrum amīcīs nūntiāta erit. 3. Castra in altō locō erant inter oppidum et silvam. 4. Ob multās causās amīcitia et concordia inter līberōs esse dēbent. 5. Ob amīcitiam auxilium submīsimus. 6. Ob magnum perīculum cōpiae nostrae colōnīs arma permīsērunt. 7. Nostrī agrī ad viam, vestrī ad silvam pertinent.

(*b*) 1. On-account-of the danger we did not desire to sail to Europe. 2. The fields had been laid waste and the town seized by the slaves. 3. He has been aroused by the messenger's harsh words. 4. We have dispatched reinforcements to the terrified provinces.



FIG. 106. MAGISTER ET PUERĪ
A bowl in the Metropolitan Museum, New York.

318. LŪDĪ RŌMĀNĪ ET AMERICĀNĪ

Inter lūdōs[1] Rōmānōs et nostrōs similitūdō[2] nōn magna est. In lūdīs Rōmānīs erant nūllae puellae, in nostrīs sunt multae; puerī Rōmānī ad lūdum ā servīs dūcēbantur, nōs sōlī venīmus; magistrī Rōmānī servī erant, nostrī līberī sunt; lingua lūdōrum Rōmānōrum

[1] *schools.*

[2] *likeness* (nominative feminine).



FIG. 107. PUER RŌMĀNUS AD LŪDUM Ā SERVŌ DŪCĒBĀTUR

erat Latīna, lingua lūdōrum nostrōrum est Anglica. Ob dīligentiam et studium puerīs Rōmānīs praemia dabantur, nunc puerī Americānī "A" merent. Tardī discipulī Rōmānī poenā afficiēbantur, sed tardī discipulī poenā semper afficiuntur. Ob multās causās vīta discipulōrum nostrōrum grāta est, sed etiam puerī Rōmānī lūdum librōsque amābant. Magna pecūnia lūdīs nostrīs datur et beneficia disciplīnae pūblicae ad omnēs[1] puerōs puellāsque pertinent. Nōnne est officium pūblicum dare pecūniam et submittere auxilium lūdīs?

Thought Questions. — 1. How do our schools resemble Roman schools? 2. How did the boys get to school?

[1] *all.*

LESSON XLII

319. Vocabulary

cūr, interrog. adv., *why?*

nātū'ra, **-ae**, f., *nature* (natural)

pul'cher, **-chra**, **-chrum**, *beautiful* (pulchritude)

quī, quae, quod, *who, which, that*

susti'neō, sustinē're, -ti'nuī, -ten'tus, *hold up, maintain, endure* [*teneō*]

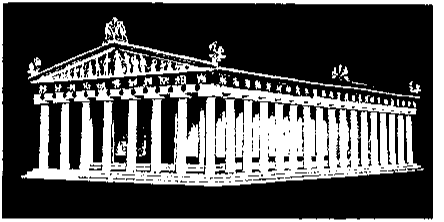


FIG. 108. THE PARTHENON

From a model made by pupils of the Edward D. Libbey High School, Toledo, Ohio, under the direction of Mrs. P. Emerson Burton.

320. Word Study: Intensive Prefixes

Most of the Latin prepositions which are used as prefixes in Latin and English may have intensive force, especially **con-**, **ex-**, **ob-**, **per-**. They are then best translated either by an English intensive, as *up* or *out*, or by an adverb, as *completely, thoroughly, deeply*. Thus **commoveō** means to *move greatly*, **permagnus**, *very great*, **obtineō**, to *hold on to*, **concitō**, to *rouse up*, **excipiō**, to *catch, receive*.

Explain *component, conservation, evident, elaborate.*

321. The Relative Pronoun *Quī*

The pronouns *who, which, what,* and *that* in English are called **relative** pronouns because they *relate* or refer to some preceding word, called their **antecedent.**

There is only one relative pronoun in Latin, declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius[1]	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cuī	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

English Meanings in Singular and Plural

	M AND F.	N
Nom.	*who, which, that*	*which, that*
Gen.	*of whom, whose, of which*	*of which, whose*
Dat.	*to (for) whom, which*	*to (for) which*
Acc.	*whom, which, that*	*which, that*
Abl.	*by,* etc., *whom, which*	*by,* etc., *which*

322. Relative Pronouns as Used in English

While *that* as a relative can be used to refer to both persons and things, *who* always refers to persons and *which* to things. In other words, *which* is the neuter of *who*. *Which* and *that* do not change form to indicate case, while *who* does:

Nom. *who* Gen. *whose* Dat. and Acc. *whom*

[1] Note that the genitive singular is alike in all genders, likewise the dative singular, and that the accusative singular, masculine and feminine, ends in *-m*, as in English *whom*. As in all pronouns the nominative singular feminine is like the nominative plural neuter.

323. The Relative Pronoun as Used in Latin

When a sentence contains two or more subjects and predicates, the separate parts are called **clauses.** A **relative clause** is introduced by a relative pronoun.

In the following sentences the antecedent and relative are underlined. Give the number and gender of each:

1. (*a*) **Puella abest; puellam accūsō,** *The girl is absent, the girl I accuse.*

(*b*) **Puella quam accūsō abest,** *The girl whom I accuse is absent.*

2. **Oppidum quod vidit erat parvum,** *The town which he saw was small.*

3. **Castra ex quibus vēnimus erant magna,** *The camp from which we came was large*

4. **Virum cui librum dedī vīdistī,** *You saw the man to whom I gave the book.*

5. **Puer cuius librum habeō est amīcus noster,** *The boy whose book I have is our friend.*

Observe that the relative and the antecedent are always of the same number and gender but not necessarily in the same case.

324. Rule. — *The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.*

Note. — While the relative may be omitted in English, it is never omitted in Latin. *The man* (*whom*) *I saw,* **Vir *quem* vīdī.**

325. Drill. — Give in Latin the proper form of the underlined English words:

1. I saw the horses that were on the road.
2. The boy whom I visited is my cousin.

3. Have you seen the girl to whom I gave the books?

4. The man by whom we were robbed has been arrested.

5. Where is the road by which we came?

6. I know the town in which the president was born.

7. The land from which our parents came is beautiful.

8. Have you ever seen the islands to which we sailed?

9. All the men to whom we spoke were greatly pleased.

10. All the girls whom I have invited have accepted, but one girl whose mother is sick may not be able to come.

326. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Vir cuī pecūniam permīsī erat amīcus meus. 2. Cūr nōn sustinētis fortūnam quam Nātūra vōbīs dedit? 3. America bellum suscipere nōn dubitāvit ob iniūriās quās accēperat. 4. Virī quōrum fīliōs doceō ēgregiī agricolae sunt. 5. Cūr pecūniam puerō vīsō ā tē in viā nōn dedistī? 6. Librōs quī ad fāmam et fortūnam pertinent puerī amant. 7. Via quā vēnimus erat pulchra.

(*b*) 1. The boy whom I saw in the woods is approaching. 2. He endured constant dangers on-account-of (his) enemies. 3. I saw the boy whose book I lost. 4. The rewards which were given to the boys had been approved by the teacher. 5. The men who were working maintained the country with money.

327. TEMPLA DEŌRUM

Silvae erant prīma templa deōrum. Prīmō[1] virī in agrīs habitābant et Nātūram colēbant. Posteā virī quī in oppidīs habitābant aedificia pulchra in altīs locīs ad glōriam deōrum pōnēbant. Templa saepe in altīs locīs posita sunt quod haec[2] loca fīnitima caelō erant, in quō deī habitābant.

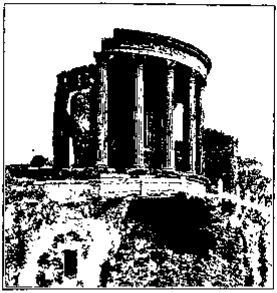


FIG. 109. TEMPLA IN ALTĪS LOCĪS POSITA

This picturesque temple is situated on a high hill at Tivoli, about eighteen miles east of Rome.

"Nātūra est pulchra," hominēs[3] dīxērunt. "Etiam loca sacra ad quae deī veniunt et in quibus verba nostra audiunt esse pulchra dēbent. Deīs grātiam habēmus ob frūmentum quō vītam sustinēmus."

Itaque Graecī et Rōmānī ob beneficia deōrum magna et pulchra templa faciēbant quae erant grāta deīs. Statua deī aut deae semper in templō pōnēbātur.

In Graeciā et Italiā ruīnae[4] templōrum multōrum et pulchrōrum videntur. Templum clārum Athēnae, appellātum Parthenōn, ob fōrmam pulchram semper laudātum est. Nōnne vīdistī multās pictūrās[4] templōrum antīquōrum? Cūr pictūrās templōrum et Grae-

[1] *at first.* [2] *these.* [3] *men.* [4] Use the English derivative.

cōrum et Rōmānōrum, quae in multīs librīs inveniuntur, nōn spectātis?

In templīs virī auxilium deōrum petēbant. Virī malī quōrum vīta in periculō erat saepe ad templa fugiēbant, quod neque ex templīs removēbantur neque ibi poenā afficiēbantur.

Thought Questions. — 1. Where were the first temples? 2. Why? 3. How can we find out what the ancient temples looked like?

Read Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 8–9.

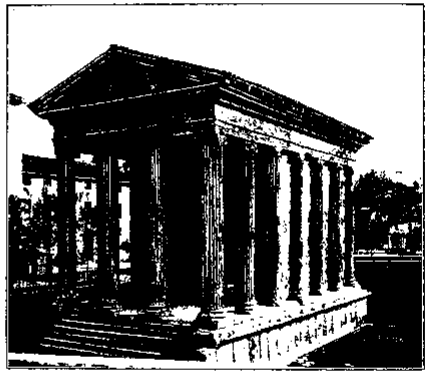


FIG. 110. TEMPLUM RŌMĀNUM

This temple in Rome was used as a church for many centuries. In 1926 it was restored to its original form by the removal of medieval walls and decorations.

328. Vocabulary

cōnser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *save, preserve* [*servō*]
intermit'tō, intermit'tere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, (lit., *let go between*), *suspend, stop, cease* [*mittō*]
obti'neō, obtinē're, -ti'nuī, -ten'tus, *hold, obtain* [*teneō*]
permo'veō, permovē're, -mō'vī, -mō'tus, *move deeply, induce* [*moveō*]
pe'tō, pe'tere, petī'vī, petī'tus, *seek, ask* (petition)
tum, adv., *then*

329. Interesting English Words

Many English words that seem quite dull and ordinary have very interesting stories locked up within them. The key to these stories is Latin. Use this key and do not lose it. Let us try it now.

The "efficient" person is the one who *accomplishes* (**efficiō**) something — remember this when you hear people talk about "efficiency." A "traction" company is engaged in *drawing* or *hauling* vehicles. What is a "tractor"? What sort of person is a "tractable" person? Politicians should remember that a public "office" is a *duty*. An "office" is also a place where one does his *duty* or *daily work*.

Find the stories in *competition, promotion, demōtion, condone, conservative.*

330. Second Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

The following are verbs already studied, but whose principal parts have not been given in full. Memorize their principal parts and give the three stems of each:

dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitus
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitus
mereō	merēre	meruī	meritus
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territus
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitūrus
teneō	tenēre	tenuī	tentus
contineō	continēre	continuī	contentus
retineō	retinēre	retinuī	retentus
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctus
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsūrus
iubeō	iubēre	iussī	iussus
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtus
removeō	removēre	remōvī	remōtus
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsus

Note. — It will be seen that no general rule can be given for forming the perfect and participial stems of verbs of the second conjugation. The most common type, however, is illustrated by dēbeō. Note the other types, which are arranged in groups.

331. Drill. — Give a synopsis of augeō in the 1st sing. and videō in the 3d plur., indic. active.

332. Ablative of Manner

In English, the manner of an action is expressed by an adverb or a phrase (*i.e.* a group of words) answering the question *How?* When a phrase is used, a preposition, such as *with*, introduces it.

In Latin, manner is similarly expressed:

1. **Cum studiō labōrat**, *He labors with eagerness* (*eagerly*).

2. (Cum) magnō studiō labōrat, *He labors with great eagerness (very eagerly)*.

Note that when an adjective is used, cum may be omitted.

Caution. — Be careful to distinguish this latest use of "with" from the "with" studied in section 204 under Caution. Distinguish the three different uses of "with" in these sentences:

(*a*) *I shall go* with him with the greatest pleasure.

(*b*) *We can work* with greater success with this equipment.

(*c*) With my auto *I can cover the distance* with you with ease.

333. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Magnā cūrā silvās nostrās cōnservābimus. 2. Servus accūsātus pecūniam petet quae ab agricolā retenta est. 3. Magnā iniūriā tum populus miser regēbātur. 4. Puer quī prīmum locum obtinuerat cum magnā cūrā et studiō labōrāverat. 5. Multī puerī studia ob bellum intermīsērunt. 6. Amīcus noster litterīs neque permōtus neque territus est sed aequō animō ad oppidum prōcessit. 7. Frūmentō et pecūniā miserōs līberē sustinuimus.

(*b*) 1. He has been deeply-moved by my words. 2. The teacher carefully taught the boys to save money. 3. The bad boy very carefully removed the teacher's books. 4. Why do you not seek the friendship of the girls who live on High Street?

334. COLOSSĒUM

Lūdōs et pompās populus Rōmānus semper amābat. In Italiā, Āfricā, Galliā cōnservantur theātra et amphitheātra Rōmānōrum, in quibus lūdī etiam nunc habentur. Vīdistīne pictūrās Colossēī Rōmānī?

Captīvī et servī in arēnā pugnāre cōgēbantur. Populus Rōmānus studium lūdōrum numquam intermīsit.

Multī captīvī cum magnō animō pugnābant et lībertātem[1] obtinēbant. Multī malī virī etiam prō vītā pugnābant et poenam in arēnā dabant.

Ōlim duo gladiātōrēs[1] in arēnā Rōmānā pugnābant. Tum inter gladiātōrēs vēnit sine gladiō vir bonus aequusque, quī petīvit: "Cūr pugnātis? Nōn dēbētis pugnāre; nam estis amīcī." Gladiātōrēs verbīs nōn permōtī sunt sed virum bonum interfēcērunt.[2] Servī virum ex arēnā trahere incipiēbant. Tum populus īrā magnā incitātus est, quod vir erat Tēlemachus, quī amīcus miserīs semper fuerat. Numquam posteā gladiātōrēs in Colossēō pugnāvērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. To what use are some ancient theaters put today? 2. What two classes of people fought in the amphitheaters?

Read Showerman, pp. 349–351; Davis, pp. 401–406; Mills, pp. 313–316.



FIG. 111. THE INTERIOR OF THE COLOSSEUM AFTER A SNOWFALL

[1] Use the English derivative. [2] *killed.*

LESSON XLIV

335. Vocabulary

cō'gō, -ere, coē'gī, coāc'tus, (*drive together*), *collect, compel* [*agō*]
mo'dus, -ī, m., *measure, limit, manner* (moderate)
mo'neō, -ē're, mo'nuī, mo'nitus, *remind, warn* (monitor)
quis, quid, *who? what?*
rēg'num, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom* [*regō*]

336. English Word Studies

(*a*) What is a *cogent* reason for doing something? What is an *intermission* in a play? What is the relation in meaning of *reign* and **rēgnum**? Explain the meaning of *interregnum, admonition.*

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

Cui bonō? (lit., *to whom for a good?*) *For whose benefit is it? What good is it?*

in absentiā, *in absence.*

in perpetuum, (*to perpetuity*), *forever*

Ilium fuit, *Ilium has been* (i.e. *no longer exists*), said of Troy (Ilium) after its destruction by the Greeks; now applied to anything that is past.

sine quā nōn, *a necessity* (lit., *without which* [*condition it is*] *not* [*possible*]).

337. Interrogatives

Interrogative pronouns and adjectives are used to ask questions.

I. **Pronoun.** — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* refers only to persons, *what* refers only to things.

In Latin, the interrogative pronoun corresponding to *who* and *what* is **quis, quid,** declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural		
	M and F	N.	M	F.	N.
Nom.	quis, *who?*	quid, *what?*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cu'ius, *whose?*	cu'ius, *of what?*	quō'rum	quā'rum	quō'rum
Dat.	cui, *to whom?*	cui, *to what?*	quī'bus	quī'bus	quī'bus
Acc.	quem, *whom?*	quid, *what?*	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō, *by whom?*	quō, *by what?*	quī'bus	quī'bus	quī'bus

Note. — The plural is translated like the singular.

II. Adjective. — In English, the interrogative pronoun *who* cannot be used as an adjective; we cannot say, *Who man?* But *what* may be used as an adjective, referring to persons or things: *What man? What thing?*



Fig. 112. A Bakery in Pompeii

Note the stone mills in which the bakers ground their own flour and the brick oven in which the bread was baked. See Fig. 128.

In Latin, the interrogative adjective is **quī, quae, quod**, declined like the relative pronoun (321). Compare the interrogative **quis** with the relative **quī** and note differences in the singular.

Lapsūs Linguae ("Slips of the Tongue"). — Have you ever said, *Who did you see?* Why is *who* incorrect? Give the correct form and translate the sentence into Latin.

338. Drill. — (*a*) Decline *what ally? what price?*

(*b*) Decide whether the words in italics are pronouns or adjectives, then give the proper Latin form:

1. *Who* were those men? 2. *What* girls came? 3. *What* did he say? 4. *What* towns were destroyed? 5. *Whose* book is that? 6. To *whom* shall I give this? 7. To *whom* shall I go? 8. By *whom* (*sing.*) was he seen? 9. *What* boys do you mean?

339. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Quī puer verbīs bonī virī nōn permōtus est? 2. Quid amīcī tuī fēcērunt et quod praemium accipient? 3. Quō modō socii pecūniam coēgērunt? 4. Quod cōnsilium, puellae, ā magistrō vestrō vōbīs datum est? 5. Gallia tum multa rēgna continēbat quae ā populō Rōmānō occupāta erant. 6. Vōs puerī magnā cūrā dē perīculīs monitī erātis. 7. Quod fuit pretium librī quem ab amīcō tuō accēpistī? 8. Cui puerō, cui puellae, Nātūra nōn vītam grātam dedit?

(*b*) 1. To whom shall we give the money and present the rewards? 2. By what street did you girls come and whom did you seek? 3. In what manner did you obtain the money which you have? 4. Whose words were, "My kingdom for (prō) a horse!"?

340. VĒRUS RŌMĀNUS

Audīvistīne dē Dentātō?[1] "Quis fuit et quid fēcit?" rogās. Dentātus fuit clārus Rōmānus quī multa proelia fēcit et inimīca oppida castraque cēpit. Modus eius[2] vītae et ab amīcīs et ab inimīcīs probābātur et laudābā-

[1] *Dentā'tus.* [2] *hūs.*



FIG. 113. DENTĀTUS EŌS MONUIT: "PRAEMIA MĒ NŌN TEMPTANT"

tur, quod[1] Rōmānus bonus erat. Cum[2] officiīs pūblicīs nōn prohibēbātur,[3] agricola erat et labōrābat in agrīs.

Samnītēs, quōs Dentātus superāverat, magnam pecūniam ad clārum virum mīsērunt. "Pecūnia quam coēgimus est tua. Auxilium tuum et amīcitiam petimus." Dentātus eōs[4] monuit: "Quod aurum mihi datis? Praemia mē nōn temptant. Vērus Rōmānus nōn cupit habēre pecūniam sed superāre eōs[4] quī aurum habent."

Thought Questions. — 1. What did Dentatus do when he was not in public service? 2. What is the point of Dentatus' answer to the Samnites?

[1] *because.* [2] *whenever.* [3] *prevented.* [4] *them*

LESSON XLV

341. Vocabulary

an'te, adv. and prep. with acc., *before* (of time or place)
cognōs'cō, cognōs'cere, cognō'vī, cog'nitus, *learn;* perf. tenses, "have learned" = *know* [*nōscō*]
dō'minus, -ī, m., *master, lord, ruler* (dominate)
iam, adv., *already*
le'gō, le'gere, lē'gī, lēc'tus, *gather, choose, read* (legible)
pli'cō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *fold* (application)
scrī'bō, scrī'bere, scrīp'sī, scrīp'tus, *write* (Scripture)
trāns, prep. with acc., *across*

342. Latin and English Word Formation

Ante- has its regular meaning and form when used as a prefix. **Trāns-** means *through* or *across*, and sometimes has the form **trā-**, as **trā-dūcō**.

Importance of the Verb. — The most important part of speech in Latin for English derivation is the verb, and the most important part of the verb is the *perfect participle*. This form is also the most important for Latin word formation. Therefore *learn carefully* the principal parts of every verb.

By associating Latin word and English derivative, you can make the English help you in your Latin, and *vice versa*. You can often tell the conjugation or the perfect participle of a Latin verb by the help of an English derivative. The English word *mandate* shows that **mandō** has **mandātus** as its perfect participle and is therefore of the first conjugation. Similarly *migrate, donation, spectator*, etc. The word *vision* helps one remember that the perfect participle of **videō** is **vīsus**. Similarly *motion* from **mōtus**, *merit* from **meritus**,

missive from missus, *position* from positus, *active* from āctus. Give derivatives from lēctus, nōtus, ductus.

In compounds short -a- becomes short -e- before two consonants (cf. 183): captus, acceptus. Give two examples each from compounds of capiō and faciō.

343. Third Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of these verbs already studied and give the three stems of each. No rule can be given for the formation of the third and fourth parts, but the commonest type has a perfect ending in -sī. The participle ends in -tus or -sus:

I	cēdō	cēdere	cessī	cessūrus
	(Similarly accēdō, discēdō, excēdō, prōcēdō)			
	gerō	gerere	gessī	gestus
	mittō	mittere	mīsī	missus
	(Similarly āmittō, committō, dīmittō)			
	dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductus
	(Similarly prōdūcō, redūcō)			
	regō	regere	rēxī	rēctus
	trahō	trahere	trāxī	tractus
	dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsus
	agō	agere	ēgī	āctus
	nōscō	nōscere	nōvī	nōtus
II	accipiō	accipere	accēpī	acceptus
	incipiō	incipere	incēpī	inceptus
	cupiō	cupere	cupīvī	cupītus
	faciō	facere	fēcī	factus
	afficiō	afficere	affēcī	affectus
	efficiō	efficere	effēcī	effectus
	fugiō	fugere	fūgī	fugitūrus

Note. — The change or lengthening of the vowel of the perfect and participial stems may be compared with the change of vowel in English *sing, sang, sung*, etc.

Query. — What is the sign of the future which is found in verbs of the third conjugation?

344. Drill. — Give a synopsis of **mittō** in the 3d sing., and **accipiō** in the 1st plur., indic. pass.



FIG. 114. WATCHING THE BULLETIN BOARD

The Romans had no newspapers like ours and depended on bulletin boards for reports of battles and other news. (From "Julius Caesar.")

345. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Bellum trāns Ōceanum cum victōriā gessimus. 2. Vigiliae ante portam positae erant. 3. Litterās quās scripsī plicābō et ad amīcum meum mittam. 4. Bonus est dominus noster, quod populum cum cōnsiliō et concordiā regit. 5. Linguam Latīnam cum studiō legere et scrībere incipimus, quod multa nova verba iam cognōvimus. 6. Litterae ā tē scrīptae cum cūrā plicātae erant.

(*b*) 1. The new words ought always to be learned. 2. I do not know the boy who lives across the street. 3. The wretched prisoners had been dragged across the fields. 4. Marcus, who wrote the letter which you are reading?

346. PŪBLIUS MĀRCŌ SAL.[1]

Sī valēs, bene est; ego valeō. Magnō studiō lēgī tuās litterās quae cum cūrā scrīptae et plicātae erant.

Rogās dē Galliā et dē nōbīs cognōscere cupis. Vīta nostra nōn dūra est. Multī captīvī in castrīs sunt. Caesar multās pugnās iam pugnāvit et multa oppida mūnīta cēpit et mox erit dominus Galliae. Tum cōpiās nostrās trāns Rhēnum dūcet et Germānōs terrēbit. Sententia eius[2] est: "Veniō, videō, vincō." Magnus et clārus vir est. Fortasse in Britanniam prōcēdēmus, quae est magna īnsula dē quā nōn ante audīvī.



FIG. 115. JULIUS CAESAR

Quid Quīntus noster agit? Quae nova officia suscēpit? Cūr nōn scrīpsit? Tuum respōnsum cum studiō exspectābō. Valē.[3]

Thought Questions. — 1. Did Publius have an easy time in Gaul? 2. Has Publius seen Germany yet? Britain?

Read Showerman, pp. 498–499; Davis, pp. 207–209; Johnston, pp. 315–317.

[1] For salūtem dīcit: *Publius pays his respects to Marcus*, the usual form of greeting in a letter.

[2] *his.* [3] *farewell.*

LESSON XLVI

347. Vocabulary

cer'nō, –ere, crē'vī, crē'tus, (*separate*), *discern, see* (discretion)
cer'tus, –a, –um, *fixed, sure* [*cernō*]
commo'veō, –ē're, –mō'vī, –mō'tus, *move away, disturb* [*moveō*]
fac'tum, –ī, n., *deed* [*faciō*]
nam, conj., *for* (in the sense "because," introducing a verb)
nō'tus, –a, –um, *known, familiar* [*nōscō*]
parā'tus, –a, –um, *prepared, ready* [*parō*]
possum, pos'se, po'tuī, ——, *can, be able* (with infinitive) [*sum*]

348. Latin Words and Phrases in English

errātum (plur., errāta), *error.*

dē factō, *from* or *according to fact, actual;* as a **dē factō** government, one which is actually in operation, even if not recognized as legal.

terra incognita, *an unknown land.*

Translate **ante bellum.**

349. Participles Used as Adjectives and Nouns

Perfect participles of many verbs came to be used as simple adjectives, just as in English: **parātus,** "prepared," *ready;* **nōtus,** "known," *familiar;* **certus,** "decided," *sure.* A participle, like any adjective, may be used substantively: **factum,** "having been done," *deed.*

350. Drill. — Decline **via nōta** and **signum certum.**

351. Conjugation of *Possum*

Possum is a compound of **sum** and is therefore **irregular.** It has no passive voice. Review the conjugation of **sum.** **Possum** = pot(e) + **sum.** Pot-

becomes pos- before all forms of sum which begin with s-. The perfect tenses are regular.

PRESENT

pos'sum, *I can, am able*	pos'sumus, *we can, are able*
pot'es, *you can, are able*	potes'tis, *you can, are able*
pot'est, *he can, is able*	pos'sunt, *they can, are able*
Imperfect pot'eram, etc.,	Future pot'erō, etc.,
I could, was able	*I shall be able*

(For full conjugation, see 674.)

352. **Drill.** — (*a*) Tell the form of **potuerās, poterātis, potuērunt, possunt, poterit.**

(*b*) Translate *you could, they had been able, we shall be able, he can, they could.*



FIG. 116. HAND OF GOOD LUCK
From a box found in Caligula's house-boat on Lake Nemi.

353. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. "Semper parātus" est nōta sententia, quam bonī puerī memoriā tenēre possunt. 2. Amīcus certus in malā fortūnā cernitur. 3. Perīcula vītae bonum virum commovēre nōn poterunt. 4. Linguam Latīnam et legere et scrībere possum. 5. Facta virōrum clārōrum semper nōta erunt et laudābuntur. 6. "Facta, nōn verba" sententia nos-

tra esse dēbet. 7. Ante bellum patria nostra nōn parāta erat; nam magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus.



FIG 117 PUER RŌMĀNUS

(b) 1. Few men can neither read nor write. 2. We came across the fields, because the road was not familiar. 3. They had not been able to come on-account-of the bad streets. 4. My motto is: "Always ready." Is it yours?

354. PLĪNIUS ET PUER

Plīnius,[1] cuius facta bona nōta sunt, ad oppidum parvum in quō nātus[2] erat vēnit. Ibi inter multōs virōs amīcum cārum cum fīliō vernit. Plīnius puerō dīxit:[3] "Discipulusne es?" Puer respondit: "Discipulus Mediōlānī[4] sum." Plīnius commōtus rogāvit: "Cūr nōn hīc?"[5] Puer respondit: "Nōn possum hīc studēre, nam magistrōs nōn habēmus." Tum Plīnius amīcō dīxit: "Certē lūdum hīc habēre potestis et dēbētis. Ego nōn līberōs habeō sed tertiam partem[6] pecūniae quam dabitis parātus sum dare."

Thought Questions. — 1. Where did Pliny see his friend? 2. Why did the boy go to school in another town? 3. What was Pliny's offer?

[1] *Pliny* [2] *born.* [3] From dīcō. [4] *at Milan.* [5] *here.* [6] Accusative.

355. Vocabulary

adhi'beō, -ē're, -hi'buī, -hi'bitus, *apply, employ, summon* [*habeō*]
antecē'dō, -ere, -ces'sī, -cessū'rus, *go before, precede* [*cēdō*]
crē'ber, -bra, -brum, *frequent, close together*
relin'quō, -ere, -lī'quī, -lic'tus, *leave (behind), abandon* (relinquish)
stō, -ā're, ste'tī, stātū'rus, *stand* (station)
trādū'cō, -ere, -dū'xī, -duc'tus, *lead across* [*dūcō*]
trānspor'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *carry over, transport* [*portō*]

356. The Latin Influence upon English

Latin words have kept coming into English continuously from the beginning of the language down to the present moment. Julius Caesar twice invaded Britain, but the Romans did not conquer the island until a century later. For four hundred years the Romans ruled Britain, and the language of the towns at least became Latin. When the Angles and Saxons invaded Britain in the fifth century and gave their name (*Angle-land, Eng-land*) and language to the island, they adopted a number of Latin words. Even before that they had come into contact with the Romans in northern Germany and borrowed some Latin words. So you see that one may say that Latin affected English even before English existed as a separate language.

As the Romans in Britain found it necessary to build many military camps, which developed into towns, the word **castra** is to be found in a number of town names, many of which have been used in our country also. So *Chester* (Pa.), *Ro-chester* (N. Y.), *Man-chester* (N. H.), *Wor-cester* (Mass.), *Lan-caster* (Pa.). What other names with these endings can you give?

We have seen a similar evolution in the United States where frontier forts, erected originally as defenses against the Indians, became trading posts, out of which have grown flourishing cities, such as Fort Dodge (Ia.), Fort Scott (Kan.), and Fort Worth (Tex.).

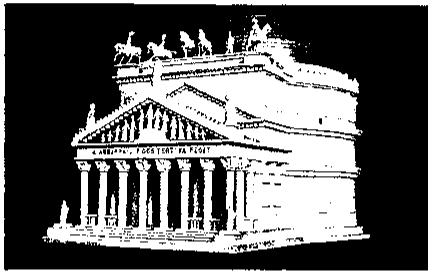


FIG 118. THE PANTHEON

From a model made by pupils of the Edward D. Libbey High School, Toledo, Ohio, under the direction of Mrs P Emerson Burton Cf Fig 73.

367. Fourth Conjugation: Review of Principal Parts

Memorize the principal parts of the following verbs, which have occurred in previous lessons:

audiō	audīre	audīvī	audītus
veniō	venīre	vēnī	ventūrus
conveniō	convenīre	convēnī	conventūrus
inveniō	invenīre	invēnī	inventus

358. Numerals: How Lucius Learned to Count

Ūnus[1] puer et ūnus puer sunt **duo** puerī; duo librī et ūnus liber sunt **trēs** librī; duo equī et duo equī sunt **quattuor** equī; trēs carrī et duo carrī sunt **quīnque** carrī; quattuor oppida et duo oppida sunt **sex** oppida; sex dominī et ūnus dominus sunt **septem** dominī; quīnque nautae et trēs nautae sunt **octō** nautae; septem agrī et duo agrī sunt **novem** agrī; sex puellae et quattuor puellae sunt **decem** puellae.

Summary: **ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octō, novem, decem.**

359. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Multum frūmentum in Eurōpam trānsportātum est. 2. Nūntium mīsimus ad Marium, quī sine auxiliīs antecesserat. 3. Ob equōs et carrōs crēbrōs in viā stāre nōn possumus. 4. Ubi pecūnia quam āmīserās inventa est? 5. Nōnne magnam dīligentiam in amīcōrum perīculīs adhibēre dēbēmus? 6. Servī trāns agrōs in silvam equōs territōs trādūcere nōn potuērunt. 7. Ob quās causās colōnī agrōs relīquērunt?

(*b*) 1. How did you hear about your friend's injury? 2. Marius ordered our forces to be led across. 3. We ought to employ diligence and to labor with eagerness. 4. Why do you stand in the middle (of the) street?

360. COLŌNĪ AMERICĀNĪ

Dē colōnīs quī ē Britanniā ad Americam vēnērunt multa audīvistī. Patriam relīquērunt et terram novam petīvērunt. Multī antecessērunt, reliquī posteā ad

[1] *one*

terram petītam vēnērunt. Etiam puerīs puellīsque Rōmānīs "colōnī" nōtī erant.

Cōpiae ā Rōmānīs in Britanniam trānsportātae sunt et crēbra bella ibi gessērunt. Rōmānī magnam dīligentiam adhibuērunt; vālla fēcērunt et viās mūnīvērunt. Agrōs captōs et oppida occupāta colōnīs dedērunt. Per colōnōs in Britanniam trāductōs lingua Latīna Britannīs data est.

Rōmānī oppida in Britanniā mūnīvērunt — Londīnium, Eborācum, Lindum; nunc appellantur London, York, Lincoln. Multae rūinae[1] Rōmānae etiam nunc in Britanniā stant et vidērī possunt. Quis nōn cupit ad Britanniam nāvigāre et ibi rūinās Rōmānās vidēre?

Thought Questions. — 1. How did the Roman colonists get farms? 2. Are there any traces of Roman buildings in England?



Ewing Galloway

FIG. 119. THE ROMAN WALL AT CHESTER, ENGLAND

[1] Translate by the English derivative.

LESSON XLVIII

361. Vocabulary

addū'cō, –ere, –dū'xī, –duc'tus, *lead to, influence*	[*dūcō*]
cōn'sulō, –ere, –su'luī, –sul'tus, *consult*	(consultation)
fu'ga, –ae, f., *flight;* in fu'gam da're, *to put to flight*	[*fugiō*]
nōn iam, adv., *no longer*	
prōvi'deō, –ē're, –vī'dī, –vī'sus, *foresee, provide*	[*videō*]
ti'midus, –a, –um, *fearful, afraid*	(timidity)

362. The Latin Influence upon English (*Cont.*)

In the preceding lesson we saw that a number of Latin words came into English as a result of the Roman occupation of Britain. Other examples are *wall* (from vāllum), together with place names like *Walton* (*Wall-town*), *port* (from **portus**, *harbor*), together with place names like *Portsmouth*, *street* (from **strāta**), *Lin-coln* (from **colōnia**, *colony*); cf. *Cologne*, the name of a German city, which was an ancient Roman colony.

A century and a half after the Angles and Saxons settled in England, Pope Gregory sent missionaries, including the famous Augustine, to convert the island to Christianity. As the missionaries spoke Latin, they introduced a number of Latin words into English, especially words dealing with the Church, *e.g.*, *temple* (**templum**), *disciple* (**discipulus**), *bishop* (**episcopus**).

Explain *cologne, Stratford, antecedent, relic, providence.*

363. Participles Used as Clauses

The participle, although not much used in English, is exceedingly common in Latin. It often serves as a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause, introduced in English by *who*, etc., *when* or *after*, *since* or *because*,

although, and *if*. At other times it is best translated by a coördinate clause. The meaning of the Latin sentence as a whole will always determine the exact meaning of the participle. Always translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a clause. Note the various translations in the following:

Relative 1. Oppida *capta* vīdī, *I saw the towns which had been captured* (lit., *the captured towns*).

Temporal 2. *Convocātī* ad proelium dūcentur, *After they have been called together, they will be led to battle* (lit., *having been called together*).

Causal 3. *Territī* nōn prōcessērunt, *Because they were terrified, they did not advance* (lit., *having been terrified*).

Coordinate 4. Librum *lēctum* tibi dabō, *I shall read the book and give it to you* (lit., *the book read*).

Observe that the *perfect* participle denotes time *before* that of the leading verb.

364. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Malus puer, ab amīcīs monitus, verbīs addūcī nōn iam potest. 2. Fīlia mea est timida, quod multa perīcula semper prōvidet. 3. Monitī vōs dē perīculō cōnsulere nōn potuerāmus. 4. Captīvī nōn parātī gladiōs cēpērunt et sociōs nostrōs in fugam dedērunt. 5. Rōmānī multa oppida occupāta relīquērunt. 6. Pecūnia, ā mē in viā āmissa, ab amīcō meō inventa est. 7. Perīculum prōvīsum nōs nōn terruit.

(*b*) 1. I saw the girl who had been frightened[1] by you. 2. The boys read the book because they had been influenced by the teacher's words. 3. We have given help to the wretched sailors left behind on the island. 4. I have read the letter written by my son.

[1] Express in two ways.

365. MĀRCUS PŪBLIŌ SAL.[1]

Adductus litterīs ā tē, Pūblī, in Galliā scrīptīs, statim respondēbō, nam multa nova sunt. Quid putās? Quīntus noster fīliam Rūfī in mātrimōnium dūxit! Nōn potuī hoc[2] prōvidēre; Quīntus mē nōn cōnsuluit. Tenēsne memoriā eam?[3] Pulchra puella est, ā multīs amāta.



FIG. 120 VICTŌRIA

Scrīpsistī dē Caesaris[4] victōriīs. Cum magnō studiō lēgī litterās tuās, nam Gallia semper fuit terra nova et nōn nōta mihi. Paucī nūntiī dē Galliā vēnērunt, et paucae victōriae nūntiātae sunt. Caesar victōriīs suīs glōriam et fāmam armōrum Rōmānōrum augēbit. Nōn iam timēbimus Gallōs in fugam datōs. Alpēs nunc Rōmam ā perīculō dēfendunt, nam Gallī timidī nōn prōcēdent trāns Alpēs.

Caesar librum "Dē Bellō Gallicō" scrībere dēbet. Sī liber ab eō[5] scrībētur, ā multīs legētur; etiam post multōs annōs cum cūrā et dīligentiā legētur.

Litterae tuae nōn longae erant. Cūr longās litterās nōn scrībis? Multa nova vīdistī et vidēbis. Valē.[6]

Thought Questions. — 1. What girl was pretty? 2. Where did Caesar win victories?

[1] See 346. [2] *this* [3] *her.* [4] Genitive singular. [5] *him.* [6] *farewell.*

FIFTH REVIEW (LESSONS XLI–XLVIII)

366. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. dīligentia
2. dominus
3. factum
4. fuga
5. modus
6. nātūra
7. rēgnum

Adjectives

8. certus
9. crēber
10. nōtus
11. parātus
12. pulcher
13. timidus

Pronouns

14. quī
15. quis

Numerals

16. ūnus
17. duo
18. trēs
19. quattuor
20. quīnque
21. sex
22. septem
23. octō
24. novem
25. decem

Verbs

26. addūcō
27. adhibeō
28. antecēdō
29. cernō
30. cognōscō
31. cōgō
32. commoveō
33. cōnservō
34. cōnsulō
35. dō
36. intermittō
37. legō
38. moneō
39. obtineō
40. permoveō
41. pertineō
42. petō
43. plicō
44. possum
45. prōvideō
46. relinquō
47. scrībō
48. stō
49. submittō
50. sustineō
51. trādūcō
52. trānsportō

Adverbs

53. cūr
54. iam
55. nōn iam
56. tum

Prepositions

57. ante
58. inter
59. ob
60. trāns

Conjunction

61. nam

367. Vocabulary Review

NOUNS

1. *carefulness*
2. *master*
3. *deed*
4. *flight*
5. *measure, manner*
6. *nature*
7. *kingdom*

ADJECTIVES

8. *sure*
9. *frequent*
10. *known*
11. *prepared*
12. *beautiful*
13. *fearful*

PRONOUNS

14. *who*
15. *who?*

NUMERALS

16. *one*
17. *two*
18. *three*
19. *four*
20. *five*
21. *six*
22. *seven*
23. *eight*
24. *nine*
25. *ten*

VERBS

26. *influence*
27. *employ*
28. *go before*
29. *discern*
30. *learn*
31. *collect, compel*
32. *disturb*
33. *save*
34. *consult*
35. *give*
36. *suspend*
37. *gather, read*
38. *remind, warn*
39. *hold, obtain*
40. *move deeply*
41 *extend to*
42. *seek*
43. *fold*
44 *can*
45. *foresee*
46. *leave behind*
47. *write*
48. *stand*
49. *dispatch*
50. *maintain*
51. *lead across*
52. *carry over*

ADVERBS

53. *why*
54. *already*
55. *no longer*
56. *then*

PREPOSITIONS

57. *before*
58. *between, among*
59. *on account of*
60. *across*

CONJUNCTION

61. *for*

368. English Word Study

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from vocō, videō, mittō, and faciō.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

369. General Review of Principal Parts

1. Give the four parts of the following verbs: **mittō, cēdō, dūcō.**

(*a*) Form three compounds from each of the above verbs and give their principal parts.

2. Give the four parts of the following: **agō, capiō, veniō, faciō, pōnō.**

(*a*) Form one compound from each of the above verbs and give its principal parts.

3. Give in Latin the principal parts of the following verbs: *defend, flee, have, be, see, remain, teach, increase, frighten, learn.*

370. 1. Give in English the principal parts and a synopsis of *be* and *have* in the 1st plur.

2. Give a synopsis of **audiō** in the act. 3d plur.; **capiō** in the pass. 1st plur.; **moveō** in the act. 2d sing.; **agō** in the pass. 3d sing.

371. Decline **quae nātūra, modus vester, quod rēgnum, signum parātum, dominus monitus.**

372. Participle Review

Substitute a Latin participle in the right gender, number, and case for the words in italics:

1. Puerī (*although they were called*) nōn vēnērunt. 2. Fīliōs virī (*who has been accused*) nōvimus. 3. Perīcula (*if foreseen*) mē nōn terrent. 4. Librum (*after I had read it*) ēmī. 5. Puellae (*because they had been frightened*) fūgērunt.

373. Conversation: Counting

(The teacher assigns a number — "Ūnus," "Duo," "Trēs," etc., to each of ten pupils. The following questions and others like them should be answered by the pupil whose number furnishes the correct answer.)

Magister. Quot (*how many*) sunt duo et quattuor? **Discipulus "Sex."** Duo et quattuor sunt sex.

M. Quot sunt quattuor et quīnque? **D. "Novem."** Quattuor et quīnque sunt novem.

Note. — A competitive game can be made by having two sets of ten (or less) and scoring one for the side whose representative answers first.



FIG. 121. A STREET IN POMPEII

This street is in one of the newly excavated parts of the city, buried by the eruption of Vesuvius in 79 A D

LESSON XLIX

374. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Circus

Dē "lūdō" in quō magister docēbat lēgistis. Sed erat etiam "lūdus"[1] in quō ōtium agēbātur; nam puerī Rōmānī nōn semper labōrābant sed etiam lūdēbant. Dictum est: "Puerī puerī erunt."

"The Parade's Coming"

Fēriae erant. Lūcius, amīcus noster parvus, ad lūdōs pūblicōs in Circō factōs ā servō ductus est. Multī ad Circum conveniēbant; nam populus lūdōs amābat. Nōn paucī ante aurōram vēnerant. Lūcius et servus loca commoda beneficiō amīcī invēnērunt et exspectāvērunt. Sed quid audiunt? "Pompa venit! Pompa venit!" Pompa per Forum et Sacram Viam ad Circum prōcesserat et nunc per portam in Circum prōcēdēbat. In pompā fuērunt deōrum fōrmae, virī, puerī, equī, quadrīgae,[2] aurīgae.[3]

The Chariot Race: "They're Off!"

Pompa per Circum ducta est; Lūcius cum studiō exspectāvit. Tum sex quadrīgae, ad portam redāctae, signum exspectāvērunt. Signum datum est et equī ā portā missī sunt.

Inter aurīgās fuit Pūblius, quī magnam fāmam ob multās victōriās habuit. Erat amīcus familiae Lūcī

[1] See Vocabulary.

[2] Quattuor equī quī carrum trahunt "quadrīgae" appellantur.

[3] "Aurīgae" sunt virī quī quadrīgās agunt.

nostrī, et Lūcius multa dē Circō ā Pūbliō cognōverat. Nunc Lūcius cum reliquīs Pūblium magnō studiō spectābat.

Publius Handicapped at the Start

Sed Fortūna misera fuit. Pūblius habuit ūnum equum quī erat novus et tardus; reliquae quadrīgae antecessērunt. Lūcius magnā cūrā ob malam fortūnam amīcī affectus est. Sed victōria nōn āmissa erat; nam septem spatia erant.

Two Chariots Out of the Race

In mediō Circō erat longa spīna. Terminī spīnae "mētae" appellātī sunt. Magnum erat perīculum aurīgārum ad mētās. Itaque in prīmō spatiō nec prīmus nec secundus aurīga quadrīgās ā mētīs regere potuit. Ēiectī[1] per[2] terram equīs trāctī sunt et iniūriās accēpērunt. Servī virōs ad spīnam portāvērunt et auxilium dedērunt.

Publius Still Last

Nunc erant quattuor quadrīgae. Sex spatia restābant, sed Pūblius antecēdere nōn poterat. Quīnque, quattuor spatia restābant. Pūblius ultimus erat. Duo spatia restābant; populus cōnsilium multum Pūbliō dabat sed nōn audiēbātur. Pūblius magnā cūrā equōs regēbat et etiam retinēbat, sed populus nōn cognōverat. Ūnum spatium restābat; Lūcius lacrimās retinēre nōn potuit. Fortūna inimīca erat.

[1] From ēiciō. [2] *over*



Fig. 122 Magnum Erat Periculum Adhibēnum ad Mētās

"And the Last Shall Be First!"

Sed quid vidēmus? Pūblius antecēdit! Nōn iam equōs retinet sed incitat. Ūnus equus, "Parātus" appellātus (nam semper parātus erat), integer fuit et properāre incipit. Nōn iam Pūblius erat ultimus; iam secundum locum tenet. Ūnus aurīga ante Pūblium restat. Aequī sunt — deī sunt bonī! — prīmus ad mētam ultimam Pūblius venit et praemia victōriae accipit! Et Lūcius — quid faciēbat? "Iō! Iō! Pūblius! Parātus! Clāra victōria!" erant Lūcī verba.

Nōnne grāta erat vīta puerōrum Rōmānōrum? Sed etiam nunc in circō quadrīgās vidēre potestis; nam circum pompamque ā Rōmānīs accēpimus.



Kaptione View Co

Fig. 123. Modern Chariot Race at Pomona, California

375. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

Amusements

The chief amusements for the people as a whole were the circus, the gladiatorial shows, and the theater. The oldest and most popular was the circus with its races, fully described in the "Story of Lucius" (cf. Figs. 122, 123). The races were the main thing; grad-

ually various side shows and acrobatic exhibitions were added to fill in the time between races. The modern circus is descended from the ancient, but the chariot races no longer have the same prominence.

The circus games were held at public expense on holidays. They were held in the valley between the Palatine and Aventine. Originally the people sat on the hillsides; later magnificent stands seating 200,000 people were built. Other circuses were built in Rome and elsewhere, but the original Circus Maximus remained the chief one.

For the interest these games created we may compare our baseball and football games. There were various racing clubs, distinguished by their colors, like our schools and colleges; we are reminded also of the "Red Sox" and "White Sox" of baseball. Drivers were popular heroes and often became rich. Their records and those of the horses were carefully kept. One man is said to have won 3559 races. This reminds us of the attention given to the number of home runs made by famous baseball players.

The theater was another important place for amusement. In imitation of Greek custom, Roman theaters were semicircular and open to the sky. The actors usually wore masks which indicated what kind of part the actor was playing. Women's parts were played by men. Both comedies and tragedies were given. The most famous writers of comedies were Plautus and Terence. Their plays are still in existence.

The gladiatorial contests were rather late importations from Etruria, the country to the north of Rome. At first they consisted of sword fights between two

men — fencing matches with swords instead of foils. Curiously enough, these fights took place at funerals. Later on they became very popular. Fights between men and animals (like the Spanish bullfights) were added, as well as fights between animals. Sometimes very elaborate shows were put on. They were held in open-air amphitheaters. Many Roman towns all over the world had their theaters and amphitheaters. The famous Colosseum at Rome (Fig. 32) was not built until 80 A.D. It had room for 50,000 people.

Read Showerman, pp. 308–351; Davis, pp. 374–406; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 142–145; Johnston, chap. IX.

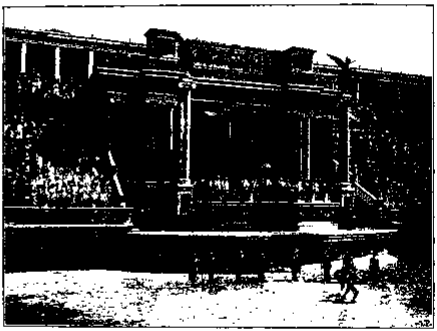


FIG. 124. GLADIATORS IN THE ARENA

The scene is in front of the emperor's box. At the left are the Vestal Virgins.

LESSON L

376. Vocabulary

dux, du'cis, m., *leader, general*	[*dūcō*]
ho'mō, ho'minis, m., *man, human being*	(homicide)
lēx, lē'gis, f., *law*	(legal)
mi'les, mī'litis, m., *soldier*	(military)
pāx, pā'cis, f., *peace*	(pacifist)
pre'mō, -ere, pres'sī, pres'sus, *press, press hard, oppress*	(pressure)
sa'lūs, salū'tis, f., *health, safety*	(salutary)

377. Latin Phrases in English

pāx in bellō, *peace in (the midst of) war.*

Dux fēmina factī, *A woman (was) leader in (of) the deed.*

novus homō, *a new man* (in politics); hence, *an upstart.*

lēx scrīpta, *the written law.*

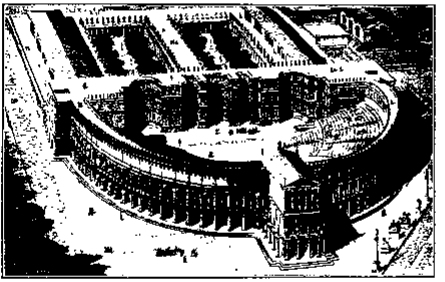


FIG 125. THEATER OF POMPEY, ROME

As some of the Romans had a prejudice against theaters, Pompey built a temple of Venus and a theater together, so arranged that the seats of the theater served as steps leading to the temple. Both have now disappeared.

378. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns

The genitive singular of nouns of the **third declension** ends in **-is**; the base is obtained by dropping this ending. All three genders are found among nouns of the third declension, and no general rule can be given. The gender, as well as the nominative and genitive singular, must therefore be learned from the vocabulary. Masculine and feminine nouns are declined alike, as follows:

Endings			mīles, *soldier* (base, mīlit-)		lēx, *law* (base, lēg-)	
	Sing.	Plur	Sing.	Plur	Sing.	Plur
Nom.	—[1]	-ēs	mī'les	mī'litēs	lēx	lē'gēs
Gen.	-is	-um	mī'litis	mī'litum	lē'gis	lē'gum
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	mī'litī	mīli'tibus	lē'gī	lē'gibus
Acc.	-em	-ēs	mī'litem	mī'litēs	lē'gem	lē'gēs
Abl.	-e	-ibus	mī'lite	mīli'tibus	lē'ge	lē'gibus

(*a*) Observe that the dative and ablative plural are alike; this is true of all declensions. The nominative and accusative plural also are alike in the third declension.

379. Drill. — Decline dux bonus, homō magnus, pāx aequa, salūs nostra.

380. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Hominem nunc exspectō cui quattuor librōs mandāvī. 2. Dux mīlitēs ēvocātōs ad pugnam prōdūxit. 3. Ob vigiliam praesidī, equī nōn removērī poterant. 4. Magna est glōria mīlitum quī bellō

[1] The ending of the nominative singular varies. When not omitted, it is usually **-s** or **-x**.

pressī nōn cessērunt sed firmō animō prō causā sacrā pugnāvērunt. 5. Salūs patriae nostrae in armīs mīlitum nostrōrum nōn iam pōnētur, sī pācem aequam efficiēmus. 6. Sine bellō pācem et ōtium et salūtem obtinēre cupimus. 7. Ibi potest valēre populus, ubi lēgēs valent.

(*b*) 1. Many books sent by boys and girls were received by the soldiers in the camps. 2. "Safety first!" is a good motto. 3. The general ordered the soldiers to be called-together. 4. Why is he absent? He ought to set an example and be present.

381. ULIXĒS

Ulixēs, dux Graecus quī in bellō Troiānō pugnāverat, post pācem ad Ithacam, in quā īnsulā habitāverat, properāvit. Sed multa mala miser sustinuit. Cūrīs dūrīs pressus decem annōs in multīs terrīs ēgit.

Post bellum ā Troiā cum multīs sociīs Ulixēs nāvigāverat. Ad terrās Lōtophagōrum[1] accessit. Paucī mīlitēs Graecī lōtum ēdērunt[2] et amāvērunt; patriam sociōsque nōn iam memoriā tenuērunt. Sed Ulixēs mīlitēs ad nāvēs redūxit.

Tum ad Siciliam ventīs āctus est. In Siciliā habitāvērunt Cyclōpēs,[3] hominēs altī et dūrī quī singulōs oculōs[4] habuērunt. Neque deōrum neque hominum lēgēs timuērunt. Ulixēs cum paucīs hominibus in bōc[5] locō frūmentum petīvit. Magna spēlunca inventa est in quā multum frūmentum fuit. Tum vēnit Cyclōps[6] is quī appellātus est Polyphēmus. Ovēs in spēluncam

[1] *Lotus-eaters.* [2] *ate.* [3] *Cȳclō'pēs.*
[4] *one eye apiece.* [5] *this.* [6] *Cȳclōps.*

ēgit. Polyphēmus Graecōs vīdit et dīxit: "Ā quō locō venītis? Quī estis? Quid petītis?" Ulixēs respondit: "Nōs Graecī sumus. Ego Nēmō[1] appellor. Auxilium tuum petimus."

Polyphēmus duōs hominēs cēpit et ēdit; tum somnum cēpit. Graecī sude[2] oculum Polyphēmī perfōdērunt, quī clāmāvit et sociōs convocāvit. "Quid est?" rogant. "Quis tē vulnerāvit?" Polyphēmus respondet: "Nēmō mē vulnerāvit." Itaque reliquī Cyclōpēs discessērunt. Polyphēmus Graecōs petīvit sed nōn invēnit quod sub ovibus[3] ligātī ex spēluncā excessērunt. Ad nāvēs properāvērunt et salūtem invēnērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. How long did it take Ulysses to reach home? 2. Why did not the other Cyclopes help Polyphemus?

Read Sabin, pp. 307–312; Gayley, pp. 318–323; Bulfinch, pp. 241–244; Guerber, pp. 337–345; Colum, pp. 156–167; Harding (*Greek Gods*), pp. 119–124.



FIG. 128. THE ROCKS OF POLYPHEMUS

According to tradition, these rocks, near Catania, Sicily, were thrown by Polyphemus at Ulysses as the latter rowed away from the island. Here are the rocks, therefore the story must be true!

[1] *No-man.* [2] *with a stake.* [3] Ablative plural.

382. Vocabulary

pēs, pe'dis, *m., foot,* pe'dibus, *on foot, afoot* (pedal)
expe'diō, –ī're, –pedī'vī, –pedī'tus, (lit., *make the foot free*), *set free*
impedimen'tum, –ī, *n., hindrance;* plur., *baggage*
impe'diō, –ī're, –pedī'vī, –pedī'tus, (lit., *entangle the feet*), *hinder*
rēx, rē'gis, *m., king* (regal)
ver'tō, –ere, ver'tī, ver'sus, *turn* (version)

383. Latin and English Word Studies

Latin words should not be memorized individually but in groups — by *families*, so to speak. This is much easier, much more useful, and much more interesting. For example, there is the word **pēs**, the father of its family. From it are derived many other words in Latin and in English. **Im-pediō** means to *entangle the feet.* An "impediment" is a *tangle,* something in the way. Transportation is still a big problem with an army; it is no wonder that the Romans, without railroads or motor trucks, called the baggage train of the army **impedīmenta.** **Ex-pediō** means to get the *foot out* of the tangle; therefore in English an "expedient" is a means of solving a difficulty. To "expedite" matters is to hurry them along by removing obstacles.

You have already become acquainted with several other "families" of words (**232**). Other words which should be grouped together are **regō, rēgnum,** and **rēx; dō** and **dōnō; dūcō** and **dux; ager** and **agricola; cōnsulō** and **cōnsilium.** Show how the members of these families are related.

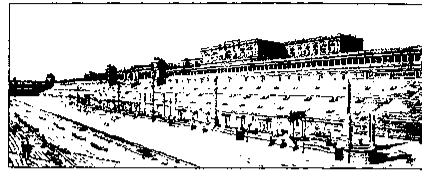


FIG 127 RESTORATION OF THE CIRCUS MAXIMUS AT ROME

384. Ablative Absolute: The Participle Used Independently with a Noun

(*a*) In English, we sometimes say, *This meeting with your approval, I shall act accordingly.* Because such phrases as "This meeting with your approval" are used loosely and have no direct connection with either the subject or the predicate of the sentence, they are said to be in the **nominative absolute**, *i.e.* they are *absolutely free* in a grammatical sense from the rest of the sentence. The phrase quoted above is equivalent to an adverbial clause: *Since this meets with your approval.*

In Latin, this loose construction is very common, with this difference: the *ablative* is used instead of the nominative. This independent use of the participial phrase is therefore known as the **ablative absolute.** The perfect participle is most frequently used in this construction.[1] Translate the participle *literally* before attempting to expand it into a subordinate clause of *time, cause, condition,* etc. (see **363**).

1. *Servō accūsātō* (lit., *the slave having been accused*), **dominus discessit,** *After accusing the slave, the master departed.*

[1] Occasionally a noun, adjective, or present participle is used.

2. *Litterīs nōn missīs* (lit., *a letter not having been sent*), **puer pecūniam nōn accēpit**, *Because he did not send a letter, the boy did not receive the money.*

3. *Oppidīs nostrīs captīs* (lit., *our towns captured*), **bellum gerēmus**, *If our towns are captured, we shall wage war.*

(*b*) In English, there is an active and a passive past participle: *having sent* (act.), *sent* or *having been sent* (pass.). *In Latin, there is only a passive perfect participle.* In Latin, therefore, the ablative absolute with the passive participle is often used where the active participle is employed in English:

Latin.	**signō datō**
English	*the signal having been given* (passive)
	having given the signal (active)

Caution. — The ablative absolute cannot be used when the noun or pronoun with which the participle agrees forms any part of the main sentence (subject or predicate). Compare the following sentence with those above (**384**, *a*) and note that the ablative absolute construction cannot be used because the participle in this case must agree with the subject:

Servus accūsātus territus est, *The slave, having been accused, was terrified.*

385. Rule. — *A noun in the ablative case used with a participle, adjective, or other noun in the same case and having no grammatical connection with the subject or the predicate is called an ablative absolute.*

386. Drill. — Translate the words in italics by participles:

1. *After* the money *was given*, the boy was returned to his parents. 2. The boy *having been freed*, everyone was happy. 3. This boy, *sent* to visit his aunt, lost his way. 4. *Having read* the books, we returned

them to the library. 5. *After putting* the prisoner in jail, the policeman went home. 6. The boys *having been warned* to stop fighting, the principal went back to his office.

387. Exercises[1]

(*a*) 1. Dux servōrum, signō datō, equōs ēdūcī iussit. 2. Captīvī miserī, trāctī ad pedēs rēgis, pācem timidē petēbant. 3. Librō āmissō, puella legere nōn potuit. 4. Impedīmentīs in oppidō relictīs, mīlitēs salūtem fugā iam petīverant. 5. Hominēs, praedā armīsque impeditī, properāre nōn poterant. 6. Rōmānī, castrīs mūnītīs, Gallōs in fugam vertērunt. 7. Librīs lēctīs, puerī magistrum aequō animō exspectāvērunt. 8. Expeditī ex perīculō Deō grātiam habēre dēbēmus.



FIG 128. IN A ROMAN BAKERY

Loaves of bread just like these were found, thoroughly charred, in Pompeii.

[1] Be careful to distinguish the ablative absolute from other uses of the participle.

(*b*) 1. The advice of the teacher having been heard, we shall read the book. 2. Having written good letters, the boys will receive rewards. 3. Hindered by bad roads, we have not been able to come on foot. 4. After sending a messenger, the king came to the town with a few friends.

388. CIRCĒ

Tum Ulixēs ad Aeolum, rēgem ventōrum, nāvigāvit, quī Ulixī[1] ventōs malōs in saccō ligātōs dedit et dīxit: "Malīs ventīs ligātīs, nōn iam impediēris et ad patriam tuam veniēs."

Itaque multōs diēs[2] Graecī nāvigāvērunt, ūnō bonō ventō āctī, reliquīs ligātīs. Iam Ithacam clārē cernunt. Sed nautae dē saccō cūrā affectī sunt quod dē ventīs quī in saccō erant nihil audīverant. "Praemia et pecūnia in saccō sunt," nauta dīxit. "Ulixēs nautīs quī mala sustinuērunt pecūniam dare dēbet." Itaque, saccō apertō, ventī expeditī tempestātem incitāvērunt quā Graecī ad rēgnum Aeolī redāctī sunt. Sed nōn iam Aeolus auxilium dat. Ūnam nāvem Graecī nunc habent, reliquīs āmissīs.

Nunc, impedīmentīs[4] relictīs, ad īnsulam veniunt quam Circē[3] pulchra regēbat. XX hominēs, ab Ulixe[4] ad rēgīnam missī, pācem auxiliumque petīvērunt. Ab Eurylochō duce per silvam ad rēgīnam pedibus ductī sunt, quae eōs[5] in animālia[6] vertit. Eurylochus sōlus in animal nōn versus ad nāvem fūgit et Ulixī omnia[7] nūntiāvit. Ulixēs commōtus cum reliquīs auxilium

[1] Dative. [2] Accusative plural. [3] *Circe (Sirsē).* [4] Ablative. [5] *them.* [6] Accusative plural: *animals.* [7] *everything*



FIG. 129. CIRCĒ HOMINĒS IN ANIMĀLIA VERTIT
From a painting by Burne-Jones

sociīs dare mātūrāvit. In viā Mercurium deum vīsum cōnsuluit. Mercurius eum[1] monuit et herbam eī[2] dedit. "Hāc[3] herbā," inquit, "vītam tuam servāre et sociōs tuōs expedīre poteris." Ulixēs rēgīnam iussit sociōs in hominēs vertere. Circē Ulixis[4] verbīs et factīs territa animālia in hominēs vertit. Rēgīna, quae nōn iam inimīca fuit, magnam et bonam cēnam parāvit. Annum ibi Ulixēs mānsit et vītam grātam ēgit. Tum ā sociīs adductus discessit.

Thought Questions. — 1. What caused the storm which prevented Ulysses from reaching Ithaca? 2. How did Ulysses find out what Circe had done to his men?

Read Sabin, pp. 313–315; Gayley, pp. 324–327; Guerber, pp. 347–349; Colum, pp. 169–173; Bulfinch, pp. 245–247.

[1] *him.* [2] *to him.* [3] (*with*) *this.* [4] Genitive

LESSON LII

389. Vocabulary

ca'put, ca'pitis, n., *head*	(capital)
cor'pus, cor'poris, n., *body*	(corporation)
flū'men, flū'minis, n., *river*	(fluid)
iūs, iū'ris, n., *right, justice*	(jury)
nō'men, nō'minis, n., *name*	(nominate)

390. English Word Studies

Many English words preserve the original Latin forms of the third declension, either in the singular or in the singular and plural. Examples of the masculine and feminine types are:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
apex	apexes or apices	index	indexes or indices
appendix	appendixes or appendices	vertex	vertexes or vertices

Nouns with their plurals in **–s** are **consul, ratio,** and a large number of nouns in **–or: actor, doctor, factor, labor, victor,** etc.

Examples of neuter nouns are:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	PLURAL
genus	genera	viscera (singular rare)
stamen	stamens or stamina[1]	

Nouns with plurals in **–s** are: **omen, specimen, animal,** etc.

The genitive case is preserved in *jurisdiction, jurisprudence, legislator.*

[1] Look in the dictionary for the difference in meaning.

391. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns

	Endings		corpus, *body* (base, corpŏr-)	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	—	-a	cor'pus	cor'pora
Gen.	-is	-um	cor'poris	cor'porum
Dat.	-ī	-ibus	cor'porī	corpo'ribus
Acc.	—	-a	cor'pus	cor'pora
Abl.	-e	-ibus	cor'pore	corpo'ribus

Observe that the nominative and accusative singular of neuter nouns are alike, and that the nominative and accusative plural both end in -a.

392. Drill. — (*a*) Decline **nōmen clārum, homō bonus.**

(*b*) Tell the form of **flūmina, capitum, lēgēs, iūs, flūminī.**

393. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Dominō vīsō, servus malus fūgit. 2. Ob impedīmenta multōs mīlitēs ad flūmen relīquimus. 3. Litterae quās fīlia mea scrīpsit nec caput nec pedem habent. 4. Iūs et lēgēs bonōs hominēs certē nōn impediunt sed malōs terrent. 5. Quae nōmina flūminum Galliae cognōvistis? 6. Iūra līberōrum populōrum corporibus nostrīs dēfendēmus. 7. Corpore hominis inventō, puer magistrum vocāvit.

(*b*) 1. The river which you see is deep. 2. The men were deeply-moved by the distinguished leader's words. 3. Horses have large bodies but small heads. 4. The body of a man was found in the river by soldiers.



Courtesy of Willy Pogany

FIG. 130. ULIXÊS ET SIRÊNÊS

394. SĪRĒNĒS ET CALYPSŌ

Tum ad Sīrēnēs[1] Ulixēs cum sociīs vēnit. Sīrēnēs corpora avium[2] et capita puellārum habuērunt. Sīrēnēs carmina pulchra canēbant quibus nautae affectī nāvēs ad saxa vertēbant. Hōc[3] modō vītam āmittēbant.

Sed Ulixēs dē Sīrēnibus ā Circē[4] monitus erat. Perīculō prōvīsō, in auribus[5] sociōrum cēram posuit, sed nōn in suīs. Iussit manūs[6] pedēsque suōs ad nāvem ligārī. Hōc modō carmina Sīrēnum clārē audīvit neque vītam āmīsit.

Ubi ad Siciliam vēnērunt, vaccās sacrās Sōlis, quae trāns flūmen fuērunt, vīdērunt. Sociī vaccās gladiīs occīdere parant, sed Ulixēs eōs[7] monet: "Vaccās sacrās occīdere nōn iūs est. Quī vaccās occīdit ā deō Sōle occīdētur." Sed sociī, quī multa mala sustinuerant, vaccās occīdērunt et ēdērunt.[8] Sōlus Ulixēs nōn ēdit. Tum reliquī Graecī occīsī sunt et Ulixēs sōlus ad īnsulam āctus est in quā habitābat rēgīna pulchra cui[9] nōmen erat Calypsō. Ulixī[10] auxilium dedit, quī magnam grātiam ob beneficium habuit. Calypsō Ulixem amāre incipit neque dīmittit. Ulixēs discēdere nōn potuit quod nāvem nōn habuit. Itaque ibi octō annōs remānsit. Sed tum Iuppiter, Mercuriō ad rēgīnam missō, eam[11] iussit Ulixī nāvem parāre et auxilium dare. Hōc[5] factō, Ulixēs īnsulam relīquit.

Thought Questions. — 1. How did Ulysses manage to hear the Sirens without danger? 2. Where did Ulysses stay eight years?

Read Sabin, pp. 316–318; Gayley, pp. 328–331; Guerber, pp. 350–353; Colum, pp. 174–181.

[1] *the Sirens.* [2] *of birds.* [3] *thus* (ablative). [4] Ablative. [5] *ears.* [6] *hands.* [7] *them.* [8] *ate.* [9] *whose name.* [10] Dative. [11] *her.*

LESSON LIII

395. Vocabulary

auc'tor, auctō'ris, m., *maker, author*	(authorize)
clau'dō, -ere, clau'si, clau'sus, *close*	(clause)
ōr'dō, ōr'dinis, m., *order, rank*	(ordinary)
tem'pus, tem'poris, n., *time*	(temporal)
vul'nus, vul'neris, n., *wound*	(vulnerable)

396. English Word Studies

(*a*) Explain *temporary, contemporary, invulnerable, corporal, decapitate.*

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

Tempus fugit, *Time flies.*
per capita, *by heads* or *individuals.*
prō tem. (**prō tempore**), *for the time, temporarily.*
Fāta viam invenient, *The Fates will find a way.*
dē jūre, *according to right,* as a **dē jūre** government; cf. **dē factō** (**348**).
mē iūdice, *in my judgment* (lit., *me being judge*).

397. Summary of Ablative Uses

The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

I. The **true** or **"from" ablative** (**ab,** *from,* and **lātus,** *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab, dē,** or **ex** — if any preposition is used. The ablative of agent (with **ab**) belongs here.

II. The **associative** or **"with" ablative,** used with the preposition **cum** — if any preposition is used. The ablatives of means, accompaniment, and manner belong here.

III. The **place or "in" ablative**, used with the prepositions **in** or **sub** — if any preposition is used.

Every ablative construction may be put into one of these groups. Sometimes the use is literal, as, *I am going with you.* Sometimes it is figurative, as, *I shall buy a book with the money.*



FIG 131. THE TIBER RIVER AT ROME

398. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Auctōris nōmen fāmam oppidī augēbit in quō habitat. 2. Studiō et dīligentiā prīmum locum certē obtinēbis. 3. Nōn iam impedītī vulneribus properāre poterimus. 4. Pāce factā, ōrdō in Eurōpā nōn reductus est. 5. Ob tempus annī frūmentum trānsportāre nōn poterāmus. 6. Rēx, victōriā barbarōrum territus, cōpiās trāns flūmen trādūxit. 7. Librō etiam clausō, auctōris verba memoriā tenēre possum.

(*b*) 1. (There) were many wounds made with a sword on the sailor's body. 2. The boys, having been warned by the teacher, will depart one at a time in order. 3. Since the river is closed, grain can no longer be transported. 4. The author had earned fame by (his) many books.

399. PHAEÀCIA

Neptūnī, rēgis undārum, magna fuit īra ob iniūriam fīlī Polyphēmī. Itaque tempestās magna ā Neptūnō incitāta est quā nāvis Ulixis frācta est. Sed auxiliō deae Leucotheae[1] Ulixēs ad īnsulam Phaeāciam[2] vēnit. Vulneribus impedītus homō miser vix potuit sē[3] in silvam fīnitimam trahere, ubi somnum cēpit.

Interim Minerva ad Nausicaam,[4] rēgis Phaeāciae fīliam, vēnit et iussit eam[5] in flūmine vestēs lavāre; nam tempus mātrimōnī aderat. Itaque Nausicaa cum aliīs puellīs carrō ad flūmen prōcessit. Ubi vestēs in flūmine lāvērunt, labōre intermissō, Nausicaa pilam[6] ad reliquās puellās in ōrdine iaciēbat. Clāmōribus puellārum ab Ulixe audītīs, Ulixēs pilam ex aquā servāvit. Puellae timidae fugere incipiunt, quod Ulixēs ob mala quae sustinuerat nōn pulcher erat. Sed Nausicaa nōn territa ante Ulixem stat et eī[7] grātiās agit. Ulixēs vestem petīvit. Nausicaa permōta eum[8] iussit ad oppidum prōcēdere. Nausicaa cum puellīs antecessit et Ulixī viam mōnstrāvit. Ulixēs ab rēge Alcinoō[9] acceptus est, cui factīs clārīs nōtus fuit. Paucōs diēs Ulixēs in Phaeāciā mānsit. Tum Alcinous Ulixem ad patriam

[1] *Leucōth'ea.* [2] *Phaewia (Fēā'shia).* [3] *himself.* [4] *Nausic'ăă.* [5] *her.* [6] *ball.* [7] *(to) him.* [8] *him.* [9] *Alcin'o-us.*

Ithacam mīsit. Itaque post XX annōs Ulixēs sōlus sine sociīs ad patriam vēnit.

Ulixe in Ithacā vīsō, Neptūnus, auctor malōrum Ulixis, īram continēre nōn potuit. Nāvem in quā Ulixēs trānsportātus erat ante portum Phaeāciae in saxum vertit. Hōc[1] modō portus īnsulae clausus est neque posteā Alcinous et hominēs īnsulae nāvigāre potuērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did Nausicaa go to the river? 2. Why did the girls run away? 3 What was the name of Nausicaa's father?

Read Sabin, pp. 319–320; Guerber, pp 355–357. Colum, pp. 135–142; Bulfinch, pp. 251–257



FIG. 132 THE SHIP OF THE PHAEACIANS

According to tradition, this rocky island near Corfu in the Adriatic Sea was once the ship in which Ulysses was brought back to Ithaca

[1] *this.*

400. Vocabulary

* **cī'vis, cī'vis,**[1] **cī'vium,** m., *citizen*	(civic)
* **fī'nis, fī'nis, fī'nium,** m., *end, limit;* plur., *borders, territory*	(final)
* **hos'tis, hos'tis, hos'tium,** m., *enemy,*[2] usually plur.	(hostile)
i'ter, iti'neris, n., *journey, road, march*	(itinerary)
* **ma're, ma'ris, ma'rium,** n., *sea*	(marine)
* **mōns, mon'tis, mon'tium,** m., *mountain*	(mount)
* **nā'vis, nā'vis,**[3] **nā'vium,** f., *ship*	(navy)



FIG. 133. ULYSSES MEETS NAUSICAA
From a painting by Rubens.

401. English Word Studies

Many Latin i-stem nouns ending in **-is** are preserved in their original form in English. The original plural in **-es** is pronounced like "ease":

[1] Nouns marked with an asterisk (*) are i-stem nouns. The genitive plural of such nouns is always given in these vocabularies.
[2] *National enemy,* differing from **inimicus,** *personal enemy.*
[3] The ablative singular ends in **-ī.**

axis	axes
basis	bases
finis	——

Distinguish **axes** from *axes* (plural of *ax*), **bases** from *bases* (plural of *base*). **Finis** has no plural in English.

Neuter i–stems in English (with plurals in –s) are **animal, exemplar, tribunal.**

402. Third Declension: *I*–Stem Nouns

The important group of nouns which have **–ium** instead of **–um** in the genitive plural are called *i*–stem nouns. In addition to this difference, neuters ending in **–e, –al,** and **–ar** have **–ī** instead of **–e** in the ablative singular, and **–ia** in the nominative and accusative plural. The classes of i–stem nouns are:

I. *Masculines and Feminines*

1. Nouns ending in **–is** having no more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative: **cīvis.**
2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: **pars** (gen. part–is), **nox** (gen. noct–is).

II. *Neuters*

1. Nouns ending in **–e, –al, –ar**: **mare, animal, calcar.**

cīvis, *citizen* (base, cīv–)			mare, *sea* (base, mar–)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	cī'vis	cī'vēs	ma're	ma'ria
Gen.	cī'vis	cī'vium	ma'ris	ma'rium
Dat.	cī'vī	cī'vibus	ma'rī	ma'ribus
Acc.	cī'vem	cī'vēs[1]	ma're	ma'ria
Abl.	cī've	cī'vibus	ma'rī	ma'ribus

403. Drill. — Decline **nāvis bona, mōns altus, mare pulchrum.**

[1] Occasionally **–īs** is used in the accusative plural.

404. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Parvā nāvī colōnī trāns mare lātum ad Americam sine pecūniā migrāvērunt. 2. Ad fīnem itineris longī vēnērunt. 3. Ob numerum hostium quī in montibus erant Gallī in castrīs remānsērunt. 4. Bonī cīvēs officia pūblica suscipere nōn dubitant. 5. Altōs montēs et flūmina alta in Eurōpā vīdī. 6. Multōs librōs, scrīptōs ā clārīs auctōribus, līberī legere cupiunt. 7. Lūcī, iubē cīvēs frūmentum comparāre.

(*b*) 1. We have made a long journey but can now see the end. 2. If[1] the sea is closed, the enemy's ships will not be able to transport reinforcements. 3. I have ordered the citizens to close the gates of the town. 4. By whom was a ship seen on a mountain?

405. PĒNELOPĒ

Ulixēs, nāvī et sociīs āmissīs, in patriam pervēnerat. Ad fīnem itineris sed nōn labōrum vēnerat. Et cīvēs et hostēs crēdidērunt Ulixem nōn iam vīvum esse.

Prīmus Eumaeus pāstor Ulixem vīdit sed nōn cognōvit. Ab Eumaeō Ulixēs multa dē uxōre Pēnelopē et fīliō Tēlemachō audīvit. Tēlemachus ab īnsulā tum aberat, quod Pēnelopē eum[2] trāns mare ad rēgna cīvitātēsque Graeciae mīserat, in quibus locīs Ulixem petēbat. Per multōs annōs nūllam fāmam dē Ulixe Pēnelopē acceperat. Interim multī ducēs rēgēsque cupiditāte rēgnī Ulixis adductī dē montibus Ithacae et ē fīnitimīs īnsulīs convēnerant et rēgīnam in mātrimōnium petēbant. Pēnelopē eōs[3] ē fīnibus Ithacae sine

[1] Use ablative absolute. [2] *him*. [3] *them*.

auxiliō expellere nōn poterat. Itaque eōs verbīs dēcēpit:

"Ubi vestem quam faciō cōnfēcerō, nōn iam dubitābō in mātrimōnium darī."



FIG. 134. PĒNELOPĒ

Itaque exspectāvērunt. Sed cōnsilium Pēnelopae fuit tempus trahere. Itaque nocte retexēbat[1] vestem quam multā dīligentiā texuerat. Post trēs annōs hominēs cōnsilium Pēnelopae cognōvērunt, et Pēnelopē accūsāta vestem cōnficere coācta est.

Hōc[2] tempore Ulixēs ad Īnsulam vēnit. Eōdem[3] tempore Tēlemachus ā Minervā monitus ad Ithacam properāvit. Ibi ad mare ab Ulixe vīsus et cognitus est. Ulixēs Tēlemachum ad oppidum antecēdere iussit. Ab Ulixe monitus Tēlemachus neque mātrī neque aliīs adventum patris nūntiāvit.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who was Telemachus' father? 2. Why was Telemachus away when Ulysses arrived in Ithaca? 3. How did Penelope deceive the suitors?

Read Sabin, pp. 320–322; Guerber, pp. 357–359; Colum, pp. 186–187; Bulfinch, p. 189.

[1] *unwove.* [2] *this.* [3] *same.*

406. Vocabulary

fa'cilis, fa'cile, (lit., "do-able"), *easy*	[*faciō*]
for'tis, for'te, *strong, brave*	(fort)
līber'tās, lībertā'tis, f., *freedom*	[*līber*]
om'nis, om'ne, *all, every*	(omniscient)
pār, gen. pa'ris, *equal* (with dat.)	(parity)
ten'dō, –ere, teten'dī, ten'tus, *stretch*	(tendon)

407. English Word Studies

A number of English nouns and adjectives preserve the nominative singular, and a few the nominative plural of Latin adjectives of the third declension: **par, pauper, simplex, duplex,** etc.; **September,** etc.; **amanuensis.** Neuter forms occur in **simile, facsimile, insignia** (singular rare), **regalia** (singular rare), **forte** (singular only). The dative plural is preserved in **omnibus** (a vehicle *for all*) and the ablative singular in **velocipede** (a vehicle *with swift foot*). Note that this word shows that in the third declension most *adjectives* have *–ī* in the ablative, while most *nouns* have *–e*.

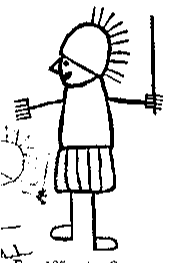


FIG. 135. AN OFFICER
Caricature made with chalk by a Roman soldier on a barracks wall

408. Adjectives of the Third Declension

The adjectives thus far studied, such as **magnus, –a, –um** and **sacer, –cra, –crum,** have been declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. Many

adjectives, however, belong to the third declension. With the exception of one important class, which will be studied later, almost all adjectives of the third declension are i-stems. They are divided into classes according to the number of forms which are used in the nominative singular to show gender, as follows:

1. Two endings[1] — masculine and feminine in -is, neuter in -e: fortis, forte.
2. One ending — one form for all genders: pār.

Adjectives of the third declension have -ī in the ablative singular, -ium in the genitive plural, and -ia in the neuter nominative and accusative plural. Note particularly that the ablative singular, unlike that of most i-stem *nouns*, ends in -ī.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	for'tis	for'te	for'tēs	for'tia
Gen.	for'tis	for'tis	for'tium	for'tium
Dat.	for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus
Acc.	for'tem	for'te	for'tēs[2]	for'tia
Abl.	for'tī	for'tī	for'tibus	for'tibus
Nom.	pār	pār	pa'rēs	pa'ria
Gen.	pa'ris	pa'ris	pa'rium	pa'rium
Dat.	pa'rī	pa'rī	pa'ribus	pa'ribus
Acc.	pa'rem	pār	pa'rēs[2]	pa'ria
Abl.	pa'rī	pa'rī	pa'ribus	pa'ribus

409. Drill. — Decline lībertās pār, puer fortis, iter facile, oppidum omne.

[1] A few adjectives in -er have *three endings* in the nominative singular, one for each gender: celer, celeris, celere.

[2] Occasionally -is is preferred to -ēs (402, footnote 1).

410. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Servus fortibus factīs lībertātem obtinuit. 2. Lībertās omnibus captīvīs aequē data est. 3. Nōvistīne, amīce bone, nōmen hominis quem in nāvī vīdimus? 4. Agrī nostrī ad viam longam et pulchram tendunt. 5. In nostrā patriā omnēs cīvēs sunt līberī et parēs. 6. Facilī itinere inventō, dux fortis omnēs cōpiās dē montibus dūcere mātūrāvit.

(*b*) 1. All free men love peace. 2. Nature has given us many beautiful (things). 3. Citizens, we shall defend the freedom of our country on the sea. 4. We ought not to undertake a long journey now, because the time of the year is not suitable.

411. FĪNIS LABŌRUM

Ulixēs, rēx fortis Ithacae, ad portās oppidī quod rēxerat stābat, ā multīs hominibus vīsus, sed nōn cognitus, quod vestēs sordidās gerēbat. In oppidum prōcessit. Multōs servōs vīdit ā quibus nōn cognitus est. Canis tamen Ulixis dominum cognōvit et gaudiō[1] affectus statim ē vītā excessit. Adventū[2] Ulixis nūntiātō, Pēnelopē iussit eum[3] ad sē[4] addūcī. Ubi Ulixēs accessit, omnēs procī eum hostem appellāvērunt et discēdere iussērunt. Sed Pēnelopē, quae eum nōn cognōverat, vestibus sordidīs permōta eum manēre iussit et cibum eī[5] dedit.

Pēnelopē vestem cōnfēcerat et nunc tempus aderat quō necessārium erat marītum dēligere. Iussit magnum arcum[6] pōnī ante procōs quem Ulixēs clārus ante XX annōs gesserat. Tum nūntiāvit:

[1] *joy.* [2] Ablative. [3] *him.* [4] *herself.* [5] *to him.* [6] *bow.*

"Homō quī arcum Ulixis fortis tendere poterit marītus meus erit; marītus novus pār Ulixī esse dēbet."



FIG. 136. THE RETURN OF ULYSSES
From a painting by Schutzenberger

Itaque singulī in ōrdine arcum cēpērunt sed tendere nōn potuērunt. Tum Ulixēs arcum petīvit. Omnēs rīsērunt,[1] sed Pēnelopē iussit arcum Ulixī darī. Id[2] quod reliquī nōn facere poterant — arcum tendere — Ulixī facile erat. Tum in procōs arcum tendit, quōs in fugam dedit. Tēlemachus et Eumaeus auxilium dedērunt. Ulixēs omnēs portās oppidī claudī iusserat, ob quam causam[3] procī ex oppidō fugere nōn potuērunt. Salūte petītā, nōn inventā, omnēs interfectī sunt. Hōc[3] modō rēgnum et uxōrem Ulixēs recēpit et in lībertāte pāceque vītam ēgit.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why was Ulysses not recognized? 2. Why did everyone laugh when Ulysses asked for the bow?

Read Sabin, pp. 322-323; Colum, pp. 233-254; Bulfinch, pp. 258-261.

[1] From rīdeō. [2] *that.* [3] *this.*

LESSON LVI

412. Vocabulary

cī'vitās, cīvitā'tis, f., *citizenship, state* [*cīvis*]
pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulī, pul'sus, *drive, defeat* (repulsive)
post, prep. with acc., *behind* (of place); *after* (of time)
post'eā, adv., *afterwards*

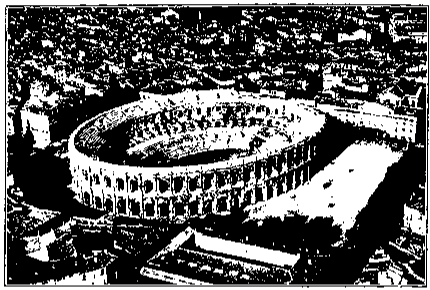


FIG. 137. ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT NÎMES, FRANCE

This amphitheater, in accord with its past, is used today for bullfights. It is one of the best preserved in existence

413. English Word Studies

(*a*) The suffix -tās is usually found in nouns formed from adjectives. Its English form is -ty, which is to be carefully distinguished from -y (264).

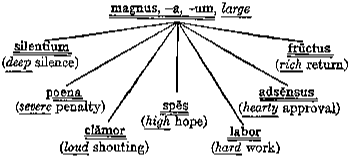
What must be the Latin words from which are derived *commodity, integrity, liberty, publicity, timidity, variety?* Note that the letter preceding the ending is usually -i-.

(*b*) Latin Phrases in English

ad fin. (**ad fīnem**), *near the end* (of the page).
P.S. (post **scriptum**), *written after* (at the end of a letter).

414. The Right Word in the Right Place

We have observed from a study of **agō** (308) that a Latin word may have many shades of meaning, which are suggested by the context. In translating, therefore, do not confine yourself to the "vocabulary" meaning of the word but select the particular meaning demanded by English usage. Observe the varying translation of **magnus, -a, -um** when used with the following nouns:



Exercise. — (*a*) Combine **magnus, -a, -um** with each of the following nouns already studied and translate freely: **perīculum, studium, cōpiae, pretium.**

(*b*) How does **altus, -a, -um** differ when applied to rivers and mountains?

(*c*) Translate **puella pulchra** and **homō pulcher.**

415. Gender of Third Declension Nouns

1. Nouns ending in **-or** are almost all masculine: **auctor, labor.**
2. Nouns ending in **-dō** and **-gō** are feminine: **magnitūdō, imāgō.**
3. Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine: **cīvitās, virtūs.**

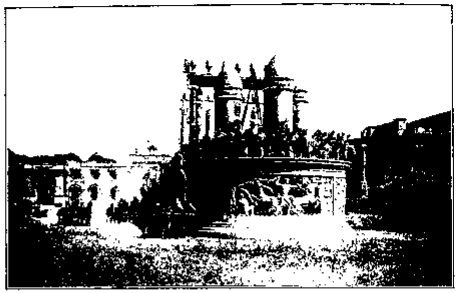


FIG. 138. THE CIRCUS RACE

The chariots are nearing the turn, where many accidents took place.

416. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Post multōs annōs Rōmānī iūra cīvitātis omnibus dedērunt. 2. Flūmina omnia Italiae ex montibus ad mare tendunt. 3. Ego aut viam inveniam aut faciam. 4. Post oppidum nostrum erat mōns altus, in quō multī fortēs mīlitēs hostium pulsī erant. 5. Poteruntne hostēs, montibus occupātīs, posteā iter facere per fīnēs nostrōs? 6. Dēbēmusne, pāce factā, numerum mīlitum et nāvium augēre?

(*b*) 1. Equal rights of citizenship were afterwards given to many brave Gauls. 2. After a long journey my friend is approaching (ad) the end of life. 3. The road stretches through the mountains to our territory. 4. Is it not pleasing to all men to see friends after the end of a journey?

417. RŌMULUS ET REMUS

Silvius Proca.[1] rēx fortis Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī rēgnum relīquit, sed



FIG. 139. FAUSTULUS FINDS THE TWINS

Amūlius, Numitōre ē cīvitāte pulsō, rēxit. Rhēa Silvia, fīlia Numitōris geminōs[2] fīliōs, Rōmulum et Remum, habuit. Amūlius puerōs in Tiberī flūmine pōnī iussit. Sed aqua geminōs in siccō[3] relīquit. Lupa accessit et puerōs aluit. Postea Faustulus, pāstor rēgis, puerōs invēnit et ēducāvit. Post multōs annōs Rōmulō et Remō dīxit: "Numitor est avus vester." Adductī pāstōris verbīs, geminī Amūlium gladiō interfēcērunt et Numitōrī rēgnum dedērunt.

Posteā oppidum mūnīvērunt in locō in quō ēducātī erant, quod dē nōmine Rōmulī Rōmam appellāvērunt.

Rōmulus Remusque parēs erant, sed Rōmulō nōn facile erat Remō cēdere. Remō interfectō, Rōmulus sōlus omnēs rēxit.

Thought Questions. — 1. How was Amulius related to Numitor? 2. To Rhea Silvia? 3. To Remus?

Read Sabin, pp. 100–103; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 22–27.

[1] *Sil'vius Prō'ca, Nū'mitor, Amū'lius.* [2] *twin* [3] *on dry ground.*

418. Vocabulary

auctō'ritās, auctōritā'tis, f., *authority, influence* [*auctor*]
ce'ler, ce'leris, ce'lere, *swift* (celerity)
cele'ritās, celeritā'tis, f., *swiftness*
cōnfir'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *make firm, encourage, establish* [*firmus*]
su'perō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *overcome, excel* (insuperable)



FIG 140 THE CHILDREN OF THE EMPEROR AT PLAY
As a child the Emperor Nero was very fond of playing with toy soldiers
From a painting by Forti

419. Latin Phrases in English

Dominus prōvidēbit, *The Lord will provide.*
extempore, *without preparation* (lit., *according to the time*).
in omnia parātus, *prepared for all things.*
Fortēs Fortūna adiuvat, *Fortune aids the brave.*
Arma nōn servant modum, *Arms* (*war*) *do not preserve restraint.*
Vānitās vānitātum et omnia vānitās, *Vanity of vanities, and all* (*is*) *vanity* (from the Vulgate, or Latin translation of the Bible, *Ecclesiastes, I*, 2).

420. Ablative of Respect

1. Equī et hominēs nōn sunt parēs celeritāte, *Horses and men are not equal in swiftness.*

2. Puer erat vir factīs, *The boy was a man in deeds.*

3. Superāmur numerō, nōn animō, *We are surpassed in number, not in courage.*

Observe the following points:

(*a*) The ablative expresses the respect in which the meaning of an adjective, a noun, or a verb is true.

(*b*) No preposition is used in Latin, though in English we use the preposition *in*.

421. Rule. — *The ablative of respect (or specification) tells in what respect something is true.*

422. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Puer erat celer pede sed studiīs ab omnibus superābātur. 2. Servī malī cum magnā celeritāte sine impedīmentīs ad flūmen fūgērunt. 3. Homō erat magnus auctōritāte. 4. Nōn omnēs puerī dīligentiā et celeritāte parēs sunt. 5. Omnēs hostēs ē nostrīs fīnibus certē pellēmus. 6. Pāx et amīcitia cum fīnitimīs cīvitātibus ā Rōmānīs cōnfirmātae sunt. 7. Colōnī ex patriā migrant et in variīs terrīs cīvitātem petunt.

(*b*) 1. We cannot all be swift of foot. 2. He was king in name, but he had not the authority of a king. 3. Does a horse excel a boy in swiftness? 4. Since we have been carefully taught, we ought to remember new words. 5. (Now that) peace has been established,[1] free citizens will maintain the freedom of the state.

[1] See 384.

423. CĪNEĀS ET PYRRHUS

Pyrrhus erat rēx Ēpīrī. Cīneās,[1] quī erat lēgātus in Pyrrhī castrīs et reliquōs lēgātōs auctōritāte superābat, cōnsilia Pyrrhī nōn semper probābat. Quondam Pyrrhus dīxit: "In Italiam prōcēdere et Rōmam superāre parō."



FIG 141. PYRRHOS

Cīneās, "Superātīs Rōmānīs," inquit, "quid est tibi in animō[2] facere, rēx fortis?"

"Italiae fīnitima est īnsula Sicilia," inquit rēx, "quam facile erit armīs occupāre."

Tum Cīneās, "Occupātā Siciliā," inquit, "quid posteā faciēs?"

Pyrrhus tum respondit: "Posteā trāns mare in Āfricam mīlitēs meōs trānsportābō et hostēs, quī celeritāte mīlitibus meīs nōn parēs sunt, pellam."

Cīneās, "Pulsīs hostibus," inquit, "quid tum faciēs?"

"Tum, Cīneā,"[3] inquit Pyrrhus, "pāce cōnfirmātā, vītam in ōtiō agam."

Celer Cīneās respondit: "Cūr nōn in pāce ōtiōque etiam nunc vītam agis?"

Thought Questions. — 1. What were Pyrrhus' plans? 2. What did Cineas want Pyrrhus to do?

[1] *Pȳr'rhus, Ēpī'rus, Cīneas (Sin'eas).*
[2] **quid . . . animō,** *what do you intend?*
[3] Vocative.

SIXTH REVIEW (LESSONS L–LVII)

424. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. auctor
2. auctōritās
3. caput
4. celeritās
5. cīvis
6. cīvitās
7. corpus
8. dux
9. fīnis
10. flūmen
11. homō
12. hostis
13. impedīmentum
14. iter
15. iūs
16. lēx
17. lībertās
18. mare
19. mīles
20. mōns
21. nāvis
22. nōmen
23. ōrdō
24. pāx
25. pēs
26. rēx
27. salūs
28. tempus
29. vulnus

Adjectives

30. celer
31. facilis
32. fortis
33. omnis
34. pār

Verbs

35. claudō
36. cōnfirmō
37. expediō
38. impediō
39. pellō
40. premō
41. superō
42. tendō
43. vertō

Adverb

44. posteā

Preposition

45. post

425. Vocabulary Review

NOUNS

1 *author*
2. *authority*
3 *head*
4. *swiftness*
5. *citizen*
6. *state*
7. *body*
8. *leader*
9. *end*
10. *river*
11. *man*
12. *enemy*
13. *hindrance*
14. *journey*
15. *right*
16. *law*
17. *freedom*
18 *sea*
19 *soldier*
20. *mountain*
21. *ship*
22. *name*
23 *order*
24. *peace*
25. *foot*
26. *king*
27. *health, safety*
28. *time*
29. *wound*

ADJECTIVES

30. *swift*
31. *easy*
32. *strong, brave*
33. *all*
34. *equal*

VERBS

35. *close*
36. *make firm*
37. *set free*
38. *hinder*
39. *drive*
40. *press*
41. *overcome*
42. *stretch*
43. *turn*

ADVERB

44. *afterwards*

PREPOSITION

45. *behind*

426. English Word Studies

(*a*) Give the Latin noun suggested by each of the following: *civil, finish, submarine, navigate, author, corpulent, legislate, nominal, decapitate.*

(*b*) Give the Latin verb suggested by each of the following: *expedite, press, verse, attention, repellent.*

(*c*) Give the Latin adjective suggested by each of the following: *omnipresent, celerity, facilitate, disparity, fortitude.*

(*d*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **parō**, **teneō**, **agō**, and **scrībō**.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

427. Summary of Third Declension Endings

	Most Nouns		*I*-Stems	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter	Masc and Fem.	Neuter
	Sing	Sing.	Sing	Sing
Nom	— or s (x)	—	-s (x)	—
Gen	-is	-is	-is	-is
Dat.	-ī	-ī	-ī	-ī
Acc.	-em	—	-em	—
Abl.	-e	-e	-e	-ī
	Plur	Plur.	Plur	Plur.
Nom.	-ēs	-a	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	-um	-um	-ium	-ium
Dat.	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-ēs	-a	-ēs (īs)	-ia
Abl.	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus	-ibus

428. Review of the Third Declension

✓ (*a*) Decline **dux fortis, lībertās nostra, omnis mīles, rēx magnus, nāvis pulchra.**

(*b*) Give the following in Latin:

1. *small authority* in the nom., sing. and plur.
2. *an easy journey* in the gen., sing. and plur.
3. *a good citizen* in the dat., sing. and plur.
4. *a brave enemy* in the acc., sing. and plur.
5. *the deep sea* in the abl., sing. and plur.

(*c*) Review the classes of *i*-stem nouns, with one example of each, giving (*a*) genitive singular, (*b*) ablative singular, (*c*) genitive plural, (*d*) accusative plural.

429. Review of Verbs

Give the synopsis of **impediō**, 3d plur., act.; **premō**, 1st plur., pass.; **superō**, 3d sing., act.; **videō**, 2d plur., pass.; **fugiō**, 2d sing., act.

430. How to Learn Words

Repetition is the first law of memory, or, as the Romans said, **Repetītiō est māter studiōrum.** New words must be repeated often enough to fix them in your mind for future use. You will find the following device helpful:

After studying the new vocabulary, noting carefully the genitive singular and gender of every noun, the principal parts of each verb, etc., close the book and write on a narrow slip of paper the English meanings (not the Latin) of as many of the Latin words as you can recall. Then open your book and check up your list, filling in any blanks. Close the book again and, on the other side of the slip, write the full Latin form of each English word, and afterwards check mistakes by referring to the book. Close the book once more. With the slip in your hand, give the English meanings from the Latin list. After mastering the Latin words so that you do not need to turn the slip for the meaning of a single word, take the English side and proceed in the same way until you can give the Latin for every English word, without turning the paper. Another way is to write a Latin word on one side of a slip of paper or a small card and the English meaning on the other side. When you find that you know a word thoroughly, put the slip to one side.

Association is the second law of memory. In order to make use of this important principle in mastering new words, try at once to give an English derivative for every new Latin word. Wherever possible, recall the simple word from which the new word has been formed; *e.g.* **amīcus, inimīcus, amīcitia** — all from **amō**, *I love.*

LESSON LVIII

431. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Deī

Rōmānī multōs deōs habuērunt. Deōs in omnibus locīs vīdērunt — in terrā, in agrīs, in frūmentō, in montibus, in silvīs, in undīs maris, in aquā flūminum, in omnī nātūrā. Erant magnī deī et parvī deī, deī deaeque. Inter magnōs deōs prīmus erat Iuppiter, rēx deōrum hominumque, quī in caelō habitābat et fulmine malōs terrēbat. Iūnō erat uxor Iovis[1] et rēgīna deōrum. Venus erat pulchra dea amōris. Mārs, deus bellī, arma pugnāsque amābat. Mercurius erat celer nūntius deōrum. Neptūnus erat deus maris, quī equōs in undīs regēbat. Reliquī magnī deī erant Cerēs, dea frūmentī, Minerva, dea sapientiae, Diāna, dea silvārum, Vulcānus, deus ignis, Apollō, deus ōrāculōrum, Bacchus, deus vīnī.



FIG. 142. IUPPITER

STRANGE GODS

Lūcius noster nōmina omnium magnōrum et multōrum parvōrum deōrum cognōverat — quod nōn facile erat: nam magnus erat numerus deōrum deārumque.

[1] Genitive singular of Iuppiter.

Etiam "terminus agrōrum" deus erat. Concordiam, Victōriam, Salūtem, Pācem, Fortūnam Rōmānī deās vocāvērunt, quod sacrae erant et ā Rōmānīs amābantur. Etiam pecūnia ā Rōmānīs amābātur, sed tamen (*ut* scrībit auctor Rōmānus, Iuvenālis) nōn dea fuit neque in templō habitāvit.



FIG. 143. IŪNŌ

GODS OF THE HOME

Erant etiam deī familiae, prīmī quōs Lūcius cognōverat. Lār erat deus quī familiam cōnservābat. Penātēs erant deī quī cibum servābant. Vesta erat dea focī, in quō cibus parābātur. Ad focum erant parvae fōrmae deōrum. Ibi, omnibus līberīs convocātīs, pater Lūcī deīs grātiās agēbat et cibum dōnābat. Quondam nōn multus cibus erat, sed tamen pater deīs dōnābat. Lūcius ā patre petit: "Cūr cibus deīs ā tē datur? Nōn multum habēmus." Pater respondit: "Cibō datō, deī hominibus magna beneficia et longam vītam dabunt."

GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

432. Roman Religion

In the oldest form of the Roman religion there was a god or spirit for almost everything — even for the hinges of the door. Essentially this was a religion of

the family. The worship came to center about the household god known as the Lar (*plural*, Lares). Other household gods of importance were Vesta, goddess of the hearth, the Penates, gods of the food supply, and the Genius, or guardian spirit of the head of the house. This family worship remained the most vital part of Roman religion.



FIG. 144. SHRINE
From a house in Pompeii

There were many other gods. In course of time, as Greek influence increased, some of these were identified with the chief Greek gods: Jupiter with Zeus, Mars with Ares, etc. These gods all had their special functions: Neptune was god of the sea, Ceres was the goddess of grain, etc.

The identification of the Greek and Roman gods illustrates a common practice among the Romans, that of borrowing gods from other people. First they borrowed from their neighbors, later from people farther away. So in the course of time various religions were introduced from Egypt, Asia Minor, and Persia.

Among the Romans religion was the business of the state. Temples were built and restored by the government, and the priests, including the **pontifex maximus**, or chief priest, were government officials.

One important phase of the official religion was the

attempt to determine the will of the gods in various ways. The augurs were a group of priests whose business it was to determine whether a certain important act (such as a military expedition) would be successful. This they did by watching the flight of birds. Certain movements were supposed to indicate success; others, failure. Many intelligent Romans lost faith in this practice but kept it up in order to influence the more ignorant classes. Another practice, borrowed from the Etruscans, was to examine the entrails of animals for light as to the will of the gods. These two methods were official and were used before important matters were undertaken. Private persons also resorted to numerous unofficial fortune tellers, such as astrologers.

With so many gods to worship, the Romans naturally had many holidays. Some of these were celebrated with amusements as well as religious observances, as is true of our holidays today. The amusements about which you have read (**375**) developed in this way.

Read Showerman, pp. 280 ff.; McDaniel, pp. 101–105; Tappan, pp. 65–67; Johnston, pp. 395–404; Baker, pp. 193–211.



FIG. 145. ANIMALS FOR SACRIFICE
From a relief in the Forum at Rome.

433. Vocabulary

cur'rō, -ere, cucur'rī, cursū'rus, *run*	(current)
hic, haec, hoc, *this*	
il'le, il'la, il'lud, *that*	
mā'ter, mā'tris, f., *mother*	(maternal)
pa'ter, pa'tris, m., *father*	(paternal)
prae'ceps, gen. **praeci'pitis,**[1] *headlong, steep*	(precipice)

434. English Word Study: Importance of the Third Declension

The third declension is very important in Latin on account of the number of words which belong to it. Hence more English words are derived from nouns and adjectives of this declension than from any other declension. The English word is usually derived from the base, and not from the nominative. It is therefore doubly important to memorize the genitive, from which the base is obtained. It would be difficult to see that *itinerary* is derived from **iter** if one did not know that the genitive is **itineris**. Examine the words of the third declension studied thus far, and see how many have derivatives from the base. Note the help given for English spelling: *tempŏral, corpŏral, mĭlĭtary, marĭtime, nomĭnal,* etc.

On the other hand, the English derivative will help you determine the genitive. In the following list of words, a derivative is placed after each; give the genitive: **religiō** (*religion*), **sermō** (*sermon*), **latus** (*lateral*), **rādīx** (*radical*), **orīgō** (*original*), **ēruptiō** (*eruption*), **custōs** (*custody*), **dēns** (*dental*), **mōs** (*moral*).

[1] Abl. sing. ends in **-e**, gen. plur. in **-um**.

435. The Demonstratives *Hic* and *Ille*

In English, *this* and *that* are used to point out persons or objects and are therefore called **demonstratives**. They may be used as adjectives or pronouns; as, ***This man did not write that.***

In Latin, **hic** means *this* (*near* the speaker in place or thought), while **ille** means *that* (*more distant* from the speaker). From such expressions as *this man, that woman,* etc., the demonstrative adjectives **hic** and **ille** came to be used as substitutes for a third person pronoun *he, she, it.* The personal pronoun, however, is usually not required in Latin.

	Singular			Plural		
	M	F.	N.	M	F	N
Nom.	hĭc	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hu'ius	hu'ius	hu'ius	hō'rum	hā'rum	hō'rum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

	Singular			Plural		
	M	F.	N	M	F	N
Nom.	il'le	il'la	il'lud	il'lī	il'lae	il'la
Gen.	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illō'rum	illā'rum	illō'rum
Dat.	il'lī	il'lī	il'lī	il'līs	il'līs	il'līs
Acc.	il'lum	il'lam	il'lud	il'lōs	il'lās	il'la
Abl.	il'lō	il'lā	il'lō	il'līs	il'līs	il'lis

Observe that both **hic** and **ille** in the plural are declined regularly, like **bonus, -a, -um,** with the exception of the nominative and accusative plural neuter of **hic** (**haec**). Note that **hic** and **ille** resemble **quī** in the genitive singular.

436. Position of Demonstratives

Demonstrative adjectives regularly precede their nouns in Latin and English: *this boy*, hic puer; *that girl*, illa puella. Therefore, when *that* precedes its noun, it is a demonstrative adjective (ille); when it follows, it is a relative pronoun (quī), equivalent to *who* or *which*: *The man that I saw was famous*, Vir *quem* (not illum) vīdī clārus erat.

437. Drill. — Supply the right forms of hic and ille and translate:

1. (*This*) flūmen altum est, (*that*) nōn altum est. 2. (*These*) hominēs laudō, (*those*) accūsō. 3. Vīdī (*this*) puerī patrem et (*that*) puellae mātrem. 4. Pecūnia ab (*this*) puerō āmissa est et ab (*that*) puellā invénta est.

438. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Haec est mea patria; nam ego cīvis Americānus sum. 2. Hī hominēs sunt patris meī amīcī; illī sunt inimīcī. 3. Hunc cognōvī sed illum ante hoc tempus nōn vīdī. 4. Ille erat dux ducum. 5. Praeceps in illum virum cucurrī, quod illum nōn vīdī. 6. Māter mea huic hominī magnam grātiam habet, quod hic patrem meum ex undīs servāvit.

(*b*) 1. My father and mother are expecting me. 2. This is my money; that is yours. 3. This boy excels that (one) in (his) studies. 4. Our soldiers defeated the enemy's forces by capturing that town.[1]

[1] Use ablative absolute.

439. SĀTURNUS ET IUPPITER

Prīmus rēx deōrum Ūranus[1] erat. Hunc fīlius Sāturnus ex rēgnō expulit. Ūranus hīs verbīs Sāturnum monuit: "Tempus auctōritātis tuae nōn longum erit nam tū ā fīliō tuō expellēris." Hīs verbīs territus Sāturnus omnēs fīliōs dēvorābat. Sed māter ūnum quem ante[2] reliquōs amābat callidō cōnsiliō servāvit. Hic fuit Iuppiter. Post paucōs annōs hic patrem expulit et rēgnum illīus occupāvit. Sāturnus reliquōs fīliōs reddere coāctus est. Rēgiam in monte Olympō Iuppiter posuit, ex quō in omnēs partēs spectāre poterat. Frātrēs convocāvit. Neptūnō maris rēgnum, Plūtōnī rēgnum Īnferōrum[3] dedit.

Sed posteā Gigantēs,[4] fīliī Terrae, cum deīs bellum gessērunt. Illī ad Olympum praecipitēs cucurrērunt sed ā deīs superātī poenīs dūrīs affectī sunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who was the father of Saturn? 2. Of Jupiter? 3. Who were the sons of Saturn?

Read Sabin, pp. 90–91; Gayley, p. 59; Guerber, pp. 18–20.



FIG. 146. ATHENA DEFEATS THE GIANTS AS VICTORY APPROACHES

[1] *Ū'rānŭs.* [2] *more than.* [3] *of the shades* (in Hades). [4] *the Giants.*

VICTŌRIA MĀTRIS

Persōnae

Gāia, *Rōmāna* — Pyrrhus, *rēx Graecōrum*
Mārcus, *parvus fīlius Gāiae* — Mīlitēs Graecī

LOCUS in castrīs relictīs in Campāniā. TEMPUS: annō CCLXXV ante Christum.

Gāia. Iuppiter, tē vocāmus! Nōbīs et Rōmae auxilium dā!

Mārcus. Māter! Quid dīcis? Cūr pater nōn venit?

Gāia. Pater longē abest. Nōn veniet.

Mār. Sed cūr nōn cum patre sumus?

Gāia. Cum duce Dentātō pugnat — magnum est perículum Rōmae nostrae. Graecī nunc per Campāniam veniunt.

Mār. Per Campāniam?

Gāia. Sed ad haec castra relicta fūgimus. In hōc locō nōs nōn invenient.

Mār. Nōn timeō. Cum Graecīs pugnābō.

Gāia. Mātrēs et puerī patriae auxilium dare nōn possunt; pugnāre est virōrum officium.

Mār. Vir sum. Possum pugnāre. Nōnne vidēs? (*Gladium relictum capit.*)

Gāia. Āh, meus puer erit fortis mīles — sed quid est? Pedēs equōrum audiō.

Vōx Mīlitis Graecī. Castra relicta sunt; nēmō adest.

Mār. Cūr territa es, māter? Cūr mē tenēs?

Gāia. Graecī sunt! Iuppiter, tē vocāmus! (*Per portam veniunt Pyrrhus et mīlitēs Graecī.*)

Pyrrhus. Ho! Quis adest?

Mīles Graecus. Puer et eius[1] māter.

Gāia. Cūr ad hunc locum vēnistis, Graecī? Haec terra, haec castra sunt Rōmāna.

Mīles. Sunt Rōmāna — sed erunt Graeca.

Mār. Nōn erunt Graeca. Virī Rōmānī sunt fortēs.

Pyr. Oho! Etiam puer fortis esse vidētur. Fortem puerum petō. Potesne litterās ad castra Graecōrum portāre?

Gāia. Nōn portābit; Rōmānus est.

Pyr. Nōnne omnēs viās cognōvistī, puer? Vidēsne hanc pecūniam? Tua erit —

Gāia. Graecī pecūniam capiunt et patriam relinquunt; nōs sumus Rōmānī.

Pyr. Pyrrhus sum, rēx Graecōrum. Hunc puerum interficere possum. Properāre dēbēmus. Puer litterās portābit. (*Mīlitēs ad Gāiam et Mārcum accēdunt. Gāia gladium relictum capit et tenet, sed Pyrrhus eum nōn videt.*)

Gāia. Meus fīlius servus Graecōrum nōn erit.

Mīles. Quid faciētis? Fugere nōn potestis, pugnāre nōn potestis.

Gāia. Sed hoc facere possum — prō patriā meā!

Mār. Māter! (*Gāia gladiō Mārcum interficit, tum sē.*[2])

Mīlitēs. Oh! (*Pyrrhus Gāiam et Mārcum spectat.*)

Pyr. Ita mātrēs Rōmānae pugnant. Quid virī faciunt?

(*Exeunt tardē*)

[1] *his.* [2] *herself.*

LESSON LX

441. Vocabulary

aes'tās, aestā'tis, f., *summer*
cor, cor'dis, n., *heart* (cordial)
hi'ems, hi'emis, f., *winter*
ni'hil (indeclinable), *nothing* (annihilate)
ti'meō, -ē're, ti'muī, ——, *fear, be afraid* (timid)

442. English Word Studies

(*a*) An excursion is a little *run out of* town. What is a *current* of water? *Cursive* writing? A *recurrent* illness? *Discord* is *hearts apart; concord, hearts together.* What is a *cordial* welcome? An apple *core?*

(*b*) **Latin Phrases in English**

Alma Māter, *fostering mother*, applied to a school or college.
A.D. (**annō Dominī**), *in the year of our Lord.*
aut Caesar aut nihil, *either Caesar or nothing.*
iūstitia omnibus, *justice for all* (motto of the District of Columbia).
Pater Noster, *Our Father, i.e.* the Lord's Prayer, which begins with these words.
prīmus inter parēs, *first among his equals.*

443. Ablative of Time When

In English, time is expressed with or without the prepositions *in, on,* etc.: *last summer, in winter.*

In Latin, time when is expressed by the ablative, *usually without a preposition.*

1. **Illō annō in oppidō mānsimus,** *That year we remained in town.*
2. **Aestāte agrī sunt pulchrī,** *In summer the fields are beautiful.*

Note. — Compare with the ablative of place where (**109**). Observe that when *at, in,* or *on* denotes *time* instead of *place,* no preposition is used in Latin.

444. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Prō Deō et patriā! Haec clāra verba corda virōrum semper incitāvērunt. 2. Hōc annō nihil timēmus, quod cōpiam frūmentī habēmus. 3. Cūr cīvitās huic cīvī pecūniam dedit? Quod patriam annō Bellī Magnī servāvit. 4. Prōvinciā occupātā, mīlitēs nostrī, paucī numerō sed corde fortēs, auxilia exspectābant. 5. Hic puer et aestāte et hieme labōrat, quod pater māterque pecūniam nōn habent. 6. Quīntā hōrā omnēs servī, lībertāte obtentā, ad flūmen cum magnā celeritāte fūgērunt. 7. Illā hieme multōs librōs lēgī sed hāc aestāte nihil fēcī.

(*b*) 1. Good citizens fear God and love (their) country. 2. If[1] Marcus is our leader, we shall be able to live in safety this winter. 3. In summer the rivers are not deep. 4. In a few years America will have many ships on every sea.

445. CAEDICIUS FORTIS

Prīmō bellō Pūnicō hostēs locum nātūrā mūnītum occupāverant, et perīculum mīlitum Rōmānōrum magnum erat. Tribūnus mīlitum Rōmānus, cui[2] nōmen Caedicius[3] erat, ad ducem hōc tempore vēnit et dīxit, locō quōdam[4] mōnstrātō:

"Cōpiās tuās servāre poteris sī ad illum locum cccc mīlitēs prōcēdere iubēbis. Hostēs, ubi hōs mīlitēs viderint, proelium committent et hōs omnēs interficient. Dum haec faciunt, facile erit reliquōs mīlitēs ex hōc locō ēdūcere. Haec est sōla via salūtis."

[1] Use ablative absolute, omitting a word for *is*.
[2] *whose name.* [3] *Caedicius (Sēdish'ius).* [4] *certain.*

"Bonum tuum cōnsilium probō," inquit dux, "sed quis illōs in mortem certam dūcet?"

"Cūr mē nōn mittis?" respondit tribūnus.

Itaque dux tribūnō grātiās ēgit et hunc cum cccc mīlitibus contrā hostēs mīsit. Fortēs Rōmānī nihil timuērunt. Neque cessērunt neque fūgērunt sed magnīs cōpiīs hostium superātī sunt. Omnēs aut vītam āmīsērunt aut vulnera accēpērunt. Interim reliquī mīlitēs Rōmānī integrī salūtem petīvērunt.

Deī praemium tribūnō ob ēgregium exemplum dōnāvērunt: nam vītam nōn āmīsit. Vulnera multa accēpit sed neque in capite neque in corde. Illā aestāte hostēs pulsī sunt, et hieme Rōmānī hostēs nōn iam timuērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. What was Caedicius' suggestion? 2. What happened to Caedicius?

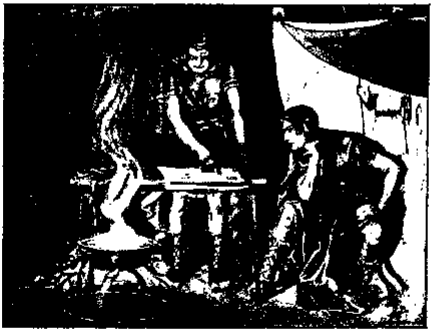


FIG 147 CAEDICIUS DIXIT: "HAEC EST SŌLA VIA SALŪTIS"

446. Vocabulary

commū'nis, –e, *common* (communistic)
dum, conj., *while*
incer'tus, –a, –um, *uncertain* [*cernō*]
is, e'a, id, *this, that; he, she, it*
*pars, par'tis, par'tium, f., *part* (partition)
remit'tō, –ere, remī'sī, remis'sus, (lit., *let back*), *relax, send back* [*mittō*]
spē'rō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *hope (for)* (despair)
spī'rō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *breathe* (inspiration)

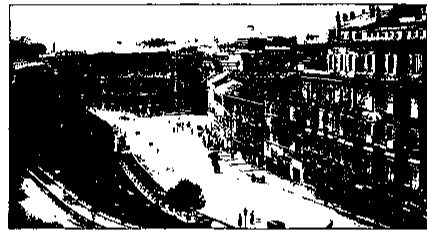


FIG. 148. THE CAPITOLINE HILL AND THE THEATER OF MARCELLUS
A busy street passes and modern buildings surround the ancient theater.

447. English Word Studies: The Names of the Months

In early Roman times the year began March 1, and February was the last month. We still use the ancient Roman names of the months. **March** was named after Mars. **April** was the *opening* month (**aperiō**), when the earth seems to open up. **May** is the month when

things become *bigger* (maior). **June** is Juno's month. **July** was originally called **Quīnctīlis**, the *fifth* month, but was renamed in honor of Julius Caesar after he had the calendar reformed. Similarly **August** was originally **Sextīlis**, the *sixth* month, but was renamed after the Emperor Augustus. **September** was originally the *seventh* month and kept its name even after it later became the ninth; similarly, **October, November, December.** **January** was named after **Janus**, the god of beginnings. **February** was the time of purification (**fēbrua**), like the Christian Lent.

448. The Demonstrative *Is*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is	eʹa	id	eʹī (iʹī)	eʹae	eʹa
Gen.	eʹius	eʹius	eʹius	eōʹrum	eāʹrum	eōʹrum
Dat.	eʹī	eʹī	eʹī	eʹīs (iʹīs)	eʹīs (iʹīs)	eʹīs (iʹīs)
Acc.	eʹum	eʹam	id	eʹōs	eʹās	eʹa
Abl	eʹō	eʹā	eʹō	eʹīs (iʹīs)	eʹīs (iʹīs)	eʹīs (iʹīs)

449. Drill. — Decline **ea pars, id longum iter, is vir.**

450. How *Is* Is Used. — Instead of pointing, in a forceful way, to a definite person or thing, as **hic** and **ille** do, **is** usually refers to somebody or something just mentioned. When used without a noun, it is usually translated as a personal pronoun, *he, she,* or *it;* therefore, the genitive **eius** may be translated *his, her, its,* while **eōrum** (m. and n.) and **eārum** (f.) mean *their.* **Is** often serves as the antecedent of a relative clause; as, **Is quī videt probat,** *He who sees approves.*

451. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Dum spīrō spērō. 2. Commūne perīculum concordiam facit. 3. Certa āmittimus dum incerta petimus. 4. Is cui librōs dedī eōs nōn remīsit. 5. Magna pars eius viae ā Rōmānīs mūnīta est. 6. Puellās et eārum mātrem in oppidō vīdī. 7. Hostibus pulsīs, vigiliam nostram nōn remittēmus. 8. Eī puerī quōs aestāte vīdimus erant eius discipulī.

(*b*) 1. This man is my teacher; that man is her father. 2. We saw him and his mother on the street. 3. Soldiers, to whom have you given a part of the loot? 4. We shall see her and her father this summer.

452. CĪVITĀS RŌMĀNA

Rōma ā Troiānīs et Latīnīs cōnstitūta est. Hae duae partēs cīvitātis Rōmānae contrā perīcula commūnia pugnāvērunt. Ubi cīvitās concordiā aucta est, rēgēs populīque fīnitimī praedae cupiditāte adductī cum Rōmānīs bella gerēbant. Paucī ex amīcīs[1] auxilium Rōmānīs dabant, quod perīculīs territī sunt. Sed Rōmānī properābant, parābant, cum hostibus proelia committēbant, lībertātem patriamque armīs dēfendēbant. Dum pāx incerta est,[2] dum eī nē spērāre quidem[3] sine perīculō possunt, cūram nōn remittēbant.

Dum haec geruntur,[2] eī Rōmānī quōrum corpora ob annōs nōn iam firma erant sed quī bonō cōnsiliō valēbant dē rē pūblicā[4] cōnsulēbantur et ob aetātem patrēs vel senātōrēs appellābantur.

[1] ex amīcīs = amīcōrum.

[2] Use the past tense in translating.

[3] nē . . . quidem, *not even*.

[4] Translate by the English derivative of this compound noun.

Prīmō rēgēs erant, quī lībertātem cōnservābant et rem pūblicam augēbant, sed posteā, quod hī superbī fuērunt, Rōmānī ereāvērunt cōnsulēs.

Eō tempore omnēs Rōmānī glōriam cupīvērunt. Virī fortēs bella amābant, in castrīs labōrābant, nihil timēbant: virtūs eōrum omnia superāverat. Itaque populus Rōmānus magnās hostium cōpiās paucīs mīlitibus in fugam dabat, oppida nātūrā mūnīta pugnīs capiēbat. Hostibus superātīs, Rōmānī aequē regēbant. Iūra bellī pācisque cōnservābant. Hōc modō auctōritātem cōnfirmābant. Post Pūnica bella Rōmānī fuērunt dominī omnium terrārum mariumque.

Sed tum fortūna, semper incerta, eōs superāvit. Hī pecūniam imperiumque, nōn iam glōriam spērāvērunt. Superbī, nōn iam aequī fuērunt. Iūra lēgēsque nōn iam cōnservāvērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. What were the two parts of the Roman state? 2. What did the old men do? 3. What caused the decay of Rome?



FIG. 149. ROMAN CITIZENS GIVE MONEY TO THEIR COUNTRY
During the Second Punic War the Romans patriotically refill the empty treasury. From a painting by Sciuti.

453. Vocabulary

expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, (lit., *fight it out*), *capture by assault* [*pugnō*]
ge'nus, ge'neris, n., *birth, race, kind* (generation)
i'dem, e'ādem, i'dem, *same* (identity)
interci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *intercept* [*capiō*]
nō'bilis, -e, (lit., "know-able"), *distinguished, noble* [*nōscō*]
suppli'cium, suppli'cī, n., *punishment* [*plicō*]

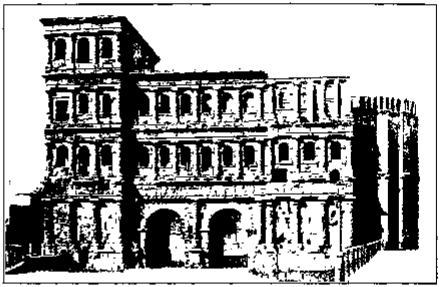


FIG 150 ROMAN CITY GATE IN TRIER, GERMANY

454. Latin Phrases in English

Homō prōpōnit, sed Deus dispōnit, *Man proposes, but God disposes.*

i.e. (**id est**), *that is.*

id. (**idem**), *the same* (i e as mentioned above).

ibid. (**ibidem**), *in the same place.*

quid prō quō, *something for something* ("tit for tat").

Explain **semper īdem, genus homō.**

455. The Demonstrative *Īdem*

The demonstrative **īdem** is a compound of **is** and **-dem**, with slight changes for ease of pronunciation:

	M	F	N.
	SINGULAR		
Nom.	ī'dem	e'ădem	ĭ'dem
Gen.	eius'dem	eius'dem	eius'dem
Dat	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem
Acc.	eun'dem	ean'dem	ĭ'dem
Abl.	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem
	PLURAL		
Nom	eī'dem (ī'dem)	eae'dem	e'ădem
Gen.	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
Dat.	eīs'dem (īs'dem)	eīs'dem (īs'dem)	eīs'dem (īs'dem)
Acc.	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'ădem
Abl.	eīs'dem (īs'dem)	eīs'dem (īs'dem)	eīs'dem (īs'dem)

456. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Eōdem annō lībertās servīs data est. 2. Īdem dux eum ad supplicium trahī iussit. 3. Dum omnia timēmus, glōriam spērāre nōn possumus. 4. Omnēs hominēs līberī parēsque esse dēbent, quod omnēs eundem Deum habent. 5. Hic homō nōbilī genere et auctōritāte sed nōn magnīs factīs antecēdit. 6. Oppidō expugnātō, Caesaris cōpiae impedīmenta hostium intercēpērunt. 7. Temporibus magnī perīculī quem aut quid timēbimus? Dominus prōvidēbit.

(*b*) 1. His punishment terrified the rest. 2. Their towns were taken-by-assault. 3. He will not send

back the same book. 4. When I heard that,[1] I was no longer afraid. 5. I shall not see the same boys this summer.

457. MIDĀS

Midās, rēx Phrygiae,[2] multīs oppidīs expugnātīs, magnam auctōritātem habuit. Ōlim Sīlēnus, magister deī Bacchī, in agrīs Phrygiae intercep-tus, ad eum rēgem ductus est. Quod Sīlēnus ab rēge multa beneficia ac-cēpit, Bacchus parā-tus fuit rēgī dare id quod cupīvit. Midās dīxit: "Sī omnia quae corpore meō tetigerō[3] in au-rum mūtābuntur, mihi grātum erit."



FIG 151. SILENUS HOLDING THE INFANT BACCHUS

Hōc factō, omnia quae rēx tangēbat in aurum mūtā-bantur. Terram tangit: nōn iam terra est sed aurum. Aquam tangit: eōdem modō in aurum mūtātur. Tum grātiās Bacchō prō magnō praemiō ēgit.

Tum cēnam magnam parārī iussit et omnia genera cibōrum in mēnsā pōnī. Haec mēnsa ab eō tācta in aurum mūtāta est. Dum magnā celeritāte servī cēnam parant, Midās amīcōs nōbilēs convocāvit. Grātō animō bonam cēnam quae parāta erat spectāvit.

[1] Use ablative absolute. [2] *Phrygia* (*Frij'ia*). [3] From tangō.

Tum cibum cēpit — et cibus in aurum mūtātus est. Vīnum in mēnsā pōnī iussit. Hoc tangit et nōn iam idem est sed in aurum mūtātur. Omnibus amīcīs ēgregia cēna grāta fuit sed nōn rēgī. Inter multōs cibōs edere[1] nōn potuit.

Tandem ad Bacchum, auctōrem malōrum, rēx miser prōcessit et fīnem supplicī petīvit — nam supplicium, nōn iam praemium erat id quod ā deō accēperat. Bacchus iussit eum in flūmine Pactōlō[2] sē[3] lavāre. Praeceps rēx ad flūmen cucurrit, ubi sē lāvit. Arēna[4] flūminis in aurum mūtāta est, et etiam nunc in hōc eōdem flūmine aurum est.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did Bacchus reward Midas? 2. How? 3. Why did not Midas enjoy his food?

Read Sabin, pp. 19–21; Gayley, pp. 157–158; Guerber, pp. 177–179; Bulfinch, pp. 52–54.

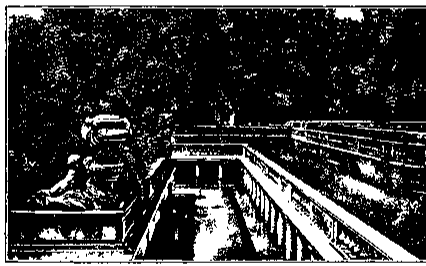


FIG. 152. ROMAN BATHS IN NÎMES, FRANCE

[1] *eat.* [2] *Pactō'lus.* [3] *himself.* [4] *sand.*

LESSON LXIII

458. Vocabulary

co'lō, –ere, co'luī, cul'tus, *till, dwell in, worship* (cultivate)
frā'ter, frā'tris, m., *brother* (fraternal)
ip'se, ip'sa, ip'sum, *self, very*
se'deō, –ē're, sē'dī, sessū'rus, *sit* (session)
so'ror, sorō'ris, *f., sister* (sorority)



FIG. 153. ROMAN EMBROIDERED TOWEL FROM EGYPT, NOW IN TORONTO

459. English Word Studies: The Norman-French Influence

We saw in earlier lessons (**356, 362**) how Latin words were introduced into English at its very beginning. A very important period of influence was after the Norman conquest of England (1066). The language of the Normans was an old form of French, itself descended from Latin. In the course of a few centuries, the English language underwent striking changes and adopted many French (Latin) words. These sometimes show considerable changes in the original spelling. Especially common is the change of one vowel to two (cf. **579**).

Exercise. — Look up the Latin originals of *captain, visor, homage, duke, peer, treason.* See Scott's *Ivanhoe*, Chap. I, for *pork, beef,* etc. Explain *cult, agriculture, degenerate, infinite, sediment.*

460. The Intensive in English and Latin

In English, compound pronouns are formed by joining *-self* to *my, your, him, her, it,* and the plural *-selves* to *our, your, them.* These compounds may be used in an intensive or emphatic sense; as, *I saw the man myself.*

In Latin, the pronoun **ipse** is a compound of **is** (448) and the intensive particle **-pse,** and therefore has purely intensive force: **Ipse** hominem vīdī, *I saw the man myself.* Note that **ipse** may be used alone in the nominative to emphasize an omitted subject. It is declined like **ille,** except in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ip'se	ip'sa	ip'sum	ip'sī	ip'sae	ip'sa
Gen.	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsī'us	ipsō'rum	ipsā'rum	ipsō'rum
Dat	ip'sī	ip'sī	ip'sī	ip'sīs	ip'sīs	ip'sīs
Acc	ip'sum	ip'sam	ip'sum	ip'sōs	ip'sās	ip'sa
Abl	ip'sō	ip'sā	ip'sō	ip'sīs	ip'sīs	ip'sīs

461. Drill. — Decline **īdem frāter, soror mea ipsa, id supplicium.**

462. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nōnne idem ipsī vīdistis, puerī? 2. Frātrēs et sorōrēs eiusdem familiae paria iūra habēre dēbent. 3. Quis est puer ille quī cum sorōre meā sedet? 4. Illum ipsum tēcum in viā vīdī. 5. Quae officia soror

tua ipsa suscipiet? 6. Colōnī agrōs in prōvinciā novā colunt et ibi remanent. 7. Ille homō agricola appellātur quod agrōs colit. 8. Deī quōs Rōmānī colēbant multī erant.

(*b*) 1. These (men) are standing; those are sitting. 2. The same winter they saw and heard him themselves. 3. These letters were written by the king himself. 4. We ourselves shall get much money together in a few years. 5. My brother was on that same ship.

463. HORĀTIUS

Nunc legēmus dē Horātiō,[1] virō fortī nōbilīque. Sī haec fābula tē dēlectābit,[2] tū ipse narrā eam sorōribus frātribusque tuīs parvīs, quī circum tē sedēbunt et cum magnō studiō audient.

Tarquiniī,[3] ā Rōmānīs pulsī, ā Porsenā, rēge Etrūscōrum, auxilium petīvērunt. Itaque Porsena ipse cum magnīs cōpiīs Rōmam[4] vēnit. Rōmānī territī sunt, quod magna erat potestās Etrūscōrum magnumque Porsenae nōmen. Rōmānī quī agrōs colēbant in oppidum migrāvērunt; oppidum ipsum praesidiīs dēfendērunt. Pars urbis mūrīs, pars Tiberī[5] flūmine mūnīta est. Pōns sublicius[6] iter hostibus dabat, sed ēgregius vir prohibuit, Horātius Coclēs,[7] illō cognōmine appellātus quod in proeliō oculum āmīserat. Is, extrēmā pontis parte occupātā, cōpiās hostium sōlus sine auxiliō sustinuit et Rōmānōs quī fugiēbant pontem rumpere

[1] *Horatius* (*Horā'shius*). [2] Translate by the present: *pleases*.
[3] *the Tarquins*, Etruscan rulers of Rome in the sixth century B.C.
[4] Supply *to*. [5] *Ti'ber*. [6] *made of piles*. [7] *Cō'clēs* ("One-Eye").

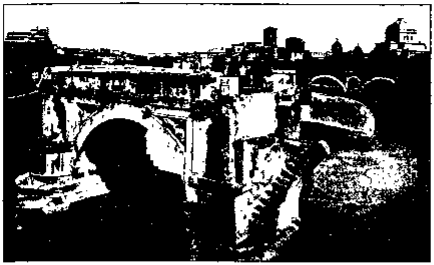


FIG. 154 PŌNS RUPTUS

Ruins of an ancient bridge at Rome, though not of course the one which Horatius defended.

iussit. Ipsa audācia hostēs terruit. Ponte ruptō,[1] armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et per multa tēla incolumis[2] ad Rōmānōs trānāvit. Grāta ob factum clārum eius cīvitās fuit. Multī agrī eī pūblicē datī sunt et statua eius in Comitiō posita est.

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did Porsena come to Rome? 2. How was he prevented from entering the city? 3. How did Cocles get his name?

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 58–60; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 73–74; Harding, pp. 35–39; Mills, pp. 67–68; Macaulay's *Lays of Ancient Rome*, "Horatius," 26–67.

A Latin Pun

Equus in stabulō est sed nōn ēst, The horse *is* in the stable but does not *eat* (est means *is;* ēst means *eat*).

[1] Cf. rumpō. [2] *unharmed.*

464. Vocabulary

a'lius, a'lia, a'liud,[1] *other, another* (alias)
(a'lius . . . a'lius, *one . . . another;* a'lii . . . a'lii, *some . . . others*)
al'ter, al'tera, al'terum,[2] *the other* (of two) (alternate)
(al'ter . . . al'ter, *the one . . . the other*)
neu'ter, neu'tra, neu'trum, *neither* (of two) (neutral)
nūl'lus, nūl'la, nūl'lum, *no, none* (nullify)
sō'lus, sō'la, sō'lum, *alone, sole, only* (solitary)
tō'tus, tō'ta, tō'tum, *whole* (total)
ūl'lus, ūl'la, ūl'lum, *any*
ū'nus, ū'na, ū'num,[3] *one* (unit)

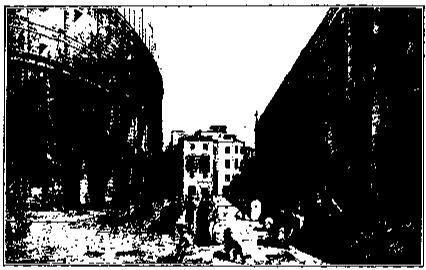


FIG. 155. THE THEATER OF MARCELLUS
A restored view, at the left, of one of the finest theaters of Rome in ancient times. Its imposing ruins are still visible (Fig. 148)

[1] Note that the neuter nominative and accusative singular end in -d, not -m (cf. ille).

[2] The genitive singular of alter ends in -ius.

[3] **Uter,** *which* (of two), and **uterque,** *each, both,* are likewise irregular and belong to this group but are comparatively unimportant.

465. English Word Studies: Spelling

Latin words are often very helpful in fixing the spelling of English words. In this lesson we shall consider words in which a double consonant occurs.

If the Latin word has a double consonant, it is usually preserved in English, except at the end of a word: *terrestrial*, but *inter* (from **terra**); *carriage*, but *car* (**carrus**); *rebelled*, but *rebel* (**bellum**); *remitted*, but *remit* (**remittō**). *Letter* has two *t*'s and *literature* only one in the root because the spelling of Latin littera varied.

Many prefixes bring about the doubling of consonants by assimilation. The most important are **ad-**, **con-**, **in-**, **ob-**, **ex-**, and **sub-**. If you will analyze the English word, you can often tell whether the consonant is to be doubled: **con-** and **modus** form **commodus**; prefix **ad-** and you get the English derivative *ac-commodate* with two *c*'s and two *m*'s. Similarly *commend* has two *m*'s; *re-com-mend* has two *m*'s but only one *c* because **re-** is never assimilated. Other examples of doubling through assimilation are *im-material*, *ac-celerate*, *suf-ficient*, *ef-ficient* (but *de-ficient*, for **dē-** is not assimilated).

Exercise. — Find five more examples of doubling of consonants as a result of assimilation.

466. Declension of Ūnus

The numeral **ūnus** and the other words in the vocabulary of this lesson are irregular only in the genitive and dative singular of all genders. In these cases they are declined like **ipse** (460), in all others like **magnus**.

	SINGULAR		
	M	F	N
Nom.	ūˈnus	ūˈna	ūˈnum
Gen.	ūnīˈus	ūnīˈus	ūnīˈus
Dat.	ūˈnī	ūˈnī	ūˈnī
Acc.	ūˈnum	ūˈnam	ūˈnum
Abl.	ūˈnō	ūˈnā	ūˈnō

Note. — Like hic, ille, and is, these adjectives are emphatic and therefore precede their nouns.

467. **Drill.** — Decline in the singular **alius tuus frāter, neutra soror, and tōtum oppidum.**

468. **Words Often Confused**

I

alius = *another*, implying a group of *three or more.*
alter = *the other*, i.e. *of two* and no more.

II

tōtus = *whole, i.e.* no part missing, not capable of being divided.
omnis = in singular *every*, as opposed to the adj. **nūllus**, *no;* in plural, **omnēs** = *all, i.e.* simply a collection of units or parts.

III

nūllus = *not any, no* — always an adjective.
nihil = *not a thing, nothing* — always an indeclinable noun.
nēmō[1] = *no man, no one* — always a noun.

[1] See 519.

469. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Sorōrēs meae agrōs montēsque tōtīus īnsulae vīdērunt. 2. Rēx neutrī fīliō rēgnum committet. 3. Is homō ipse ab aliīs accūsātus est sed ab aliīs dēfēnsus est. 4. Cōnsilia alterius ducis nōn erant grāta alterī. 5. Nihil sine magnō labōre vīta dedit hominibus. 6. Omnēs amīcī eius iam discessērunt et is sōlus nunc manet. 7. Accēpistīne ipse ūlla praemia prō meritīs tuīs? (*See* 226.) Nūlla accēpī neque ūlla exspectō.

(*b*) 1. To one sister I shall give money, to the other this book. 2. My brother and father spent part of that same summer alone in the woods. 3. Have you seen my mother and sister? I have seen neither. 4. In the summer the farmer tills the fields, but what does he do in winter?

470. CICERŌ ET TĪRŌ

Cicerō et Tīrō fuērunt Rōmānī clārī; alter maximus[1] ōrātor tōtīus Italiae, alter fīdus[2] servus. Quod Tīrō dīligentiā sapientiāque Cicerōnī magnum auxilium dabat, Cicerō eum amābat. Neuter sine alterō ūllum iter facere cupiēbat.

Cicerō cum Tīrōne in Graeciā fuerat. Ubi in Italiam revertit, Tīrō sōlus in Graeciā relictus est quod aeger fuit. Cicerō ad eum trēs epistulās in itinere ūnō diē[3] scrīpsit. Inter alia haec ipsa scrīpsit:

"Variē litterīs tuīs affectus sum, prīmā pāginā territus, alterā cōnfirmātus. Hōc tempore tē[4] neque marī

[1] *greatest.* [2] *faithful.* [3] Ablative. [4] *yourself.*

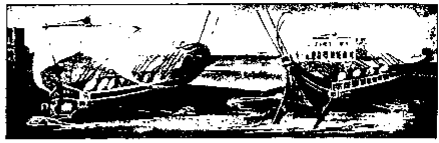


FIG 156 ROMAN SHIPS

Sailing across the Adriatic was unsafe and unpleasant, as Cicero knew.

neque itinerī committere dēbēs. Medicus tuus bonus est, ut[1] scrībis et ego audiō; sed cūrātiōnēs eius nōn probō; nam iūs[2] nōn dēbet stomachō[3] aegrō darī. Ad illum et ad Lysōnem[4] scrīpsī. Lysōnis nostrī neglegentiam nōn probō, quī, litterīs ā mē acceptīs, ipse nūllās remīsit. Sed Lysō Graecus est et omnium Graecōrum magna est neglegentia. In nūllā rē[5] properāre dēbēs.

Curium[6] iussī omnem pecūniam tibi dare quam cupis. Sī medicō pecūniam dabis, dīligentia eius augēbitur. Magna sunt tua in mē officia;[7] omnia superāveris, sī, ut[1] spērō, salūtem tuam cōnfirmātam vīderō. Anteā, dum magnā dīligentiā mihi auxilium dās,[8] nōn salūtem tuam cōnfirmāre potuistī; nunc tē nihil impedit. Omnia dēpōne; salūs in animō tuō esse dēbet."

Nōnne dominī bonī illīs temporibus erant? Etiam malī erant. Omnī aetāte bonī et malī hominēs fuērunt et sunt et semper erunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. What was Tiro's relation to Cicero? 2. To whom did Cicero write about Tiro's illness?

[1] *as.* [2] *soup.* [3] Use the English derivative.
[4] Tiro was staying at Lyso's house.
[5] *thing.* [6] A banker. [7] *services.* [8] With **dum** = **dabās.**

LESSON LXV

471. Vocabulary

aliē'nus, –a, –um, *another's, unfavorable*	[*alius*]
conten'dō, –ere, –ten'dī, –tentū'rus, *struggle, hasten*	[*tendō*]
expel'lō, –ere, **ex'pulī**, –pul'sus, *drive out*	[*pellō*]
gra'vis, –e, *heavy, serious, severe*	(gravitation)
op'primō, –ere, –pres'sī, –pres'sus, *overwhelm, surprise*	[*premō*]
ro'gō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *ask*	(interrogative)
vōx, **vō'cis**, *f., voice, remark*	[*vocō*]

472. Latin Phrases in English

in locō parentis, *in place of a parent.*

inter alia, *among other things.*

ipsō factō, *by the fact itself, thereby.*

obiter dictum, (*something*) *said by the way* (**ob iter**), *incidentally.*

Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs, *I fear the Greeks even when they bring gifts* (Virgil).

ūnā vōce, *with one voice, unanimously.*

Vōx populī vōx Deī, *The voice of the people* (*is*) *the voice of God.*

Explain **in tūtō**, **vōx hūmāna**.

473. Present Participle

In English, the present participle has both an active and a passive form: (*a*) *I saw your brother* ***reading*** *a book;* (*b*) *The book now* ***being read*** *by your brother is a good one.* In both examples the present participle *modifies a noun.* It is likewise used in making the progressive verb form: *Your brother is* ***reading.*** Here "reading" does not modify the noun but is a part of the verb and shows a progressive action (*see* **37**, *b*).

In Latin, the present participle has only the active form. It is used to modify nouns or pronouns and never combines with the verb **sum** to form verb phrases.

Your brother is reading becomes in Latin simply **frāter tuus legit**. The present participle, like the present infinitive, represents an act *as taking place at the time indicated by the main verb.*

474. Formation and Declension. — The present participle of the four conjugations is formed by adding **–ns** to the present stem. It is declined like a third declension adjective of one ending (408), with the base ending in **–nt–**, as follows:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	por'tāns	por'tāns	portan'tēs	portan'tia
Gen.	portan'tis		portan'tium	
Dat.	portan'tī		portan'tibus	
Acc.	portan'tem	por'tāns	portan'tēs (–īs)	portan'tia
Abl.	portan'te (–ī)		portan'tibus	

Note. — (*a*) The ablative singular ending is regularly **–e**, but **–ī** is used instead whenever the participle is used simply as an adjective. (*b*) In verbs of the fourth conjugation, and **–iō** verbs of the third, **–ie–** appears throughout, forming the base **–ient–**, as **audiēns, audientis; capiēns, capientis.** (*c*) **Sum** has no present participle; that of **possum** is **potēns.**

475. Future Active Participle

Latin, unlike English, has a **future active participle.** This is formed by dropping the **–us** of the perfect participle and adding **–ūrus, –a, –um: portātūrus, –a, –um,** *going to carry;* **futūrus, –a, –um,** *going to be.* It is declined like **magnus, –a, –um.**

476. Drill. — Form and translate the participles of **rogō, opprimō,** and **expellō** in the present and future.

477. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Cūr in hōc locō sine patre tuō mānsūrus es? 2. Vōcēs amīcōrum rogantium auxilium ā nōbīs audītae sunt. 3. Hieme nūllōs agricolās in agrīs labōrantēs vidēmus. 4. Rōmānīs prōcēdentibus, barbarī fūgērunt. 5. Duo puerī pugnantēs ā magistrō captī sunt. 6. Hī puerī, suppliciō gravī affectī, ā magistrō expulsī sunt. 7. Oppressī in aliēnō locō, hostēs cum equīs impedīmentīsque ad montēs contentūrī sunt.

(*Instead of clauses, use participles wherever possible.*)

(*b*) 1. The number of (those) approaching is not large. 2. The swords given to the other soldiers are heavy but not long. 3. He was accused by you (while he was) defending the public cause. 4. He was going to fold the letter which he had written.

478. QUĪNTUS CICERŌ ET POMPŌNIA

Pompōnius Atticus erat firmus amīcus M. Cicerōnis. Pompōnia, soror Atticī, erat uxor Quīntī, frātris M. Cicerōnis. Inter Pompōniam Quīntumque nōn semper concordia erat. Ūna causa erat haec, quod apud[1] Quīntum auctōritās Stātī[2] valēbat, quem domō[3] expellere nōn potuit. Pompōnia aliēnae auctōritātī cēdere nōn cupīvit. Cicerō Pompōniam accūsāvit, Atticus Quīntum. Cicerō ad Atticum hōc modō scrīpsit:

"Frātrem meum vidī. Multus sermō inter nōs dē tē et sorōre tuā fuit. Verba eius nōn inimīca fuērunt. Tum ad Pompōniam contendimus. Quīntus eī dīxit: 'Pompōnia, tū rogā mulierēs ad cēnam, ego puerōs (fīlium Cicerōnis et frātris eius) vocātūrus sum.' Sed

[1] *with.* [2] A freedman of Quintus. [3] *from the house.*

illa, audientibus nōbīs, 'Ego ipsa sum,' inquit, 'in hōc locō hospita.' Hoc dīxit quod Īdem Stātius antecesserat et cēnam parārī iusserat. Tum Quīntus, 'Audīsne?' inquit mihi, 'haec semper sustinēre cōgor.' Dīcēs: 'Haec vōx nihil est.' Sed magnum[1] est; verbīs dūrīs eius oppressus et commōtus sum. Ad cēnam illa nōn adfuit; Quīntus ad eam cibum mīsit; illa remīsit. Grave vulnus Quīntus accēpit neque ipse ūllam iniūriam fēcit. Cupiēns eam plācāre nōn potuit. Gravibus cūrīs afficior. Officium nostrum est inter sorōrem tuam et frātrem meum pācem efficere."

Thought Questions. — 1. Who was Atticus' brother-in-law? 2. Of whom was Pomponia jealous?



FIG. 157. CĒNA

A dining room in Pompeii, with built-in table and couches (see 611, *b*)

[1] *it is a serious thing.*

LESSON LXVI

479. Vocabulary

cōnscrī'bō, -ere, -scrīp'sī, -scrīp'tus, *enlist, enroll*	[*scrībō*]
cōnsis'tō, -ere, cōn'stitī, cōnstitū'rus, *stand still, stop*	[*stō*]
dī'cō, -ere, dī'xī, dic'tus,[1] *say, tell*	(diction)
ia'ciō, -ere, iē'cī, iac'tus, *throw, cast, hurl*	(projectile)
levis, -e, *light* (in weight)	(levity)
osten'dō, -ere, -ten'dī, -ten'tus, (*stretch out*), *show, display*	[*tendō*]
prohi'beō, -ē're, -hi'buī, -hi'bitus, *prevent, keep from*	[*habeō*]
* vīs, —[2], *f., force, violence;* plur , vī'rēs, vī'rium, *strength*	(vim)

480. Latin and English Word Studies

The suffix **-or**, when added to the participial stem, indicates the doer of an action: **monitor** (*one who warns*), **scriptor** (*one who writes*), **inventor** (*one who finds*). It is used in English in the same way.

When the suffix **-or** is added to the present base of a verb, it usually indicates a state of being or condition: **timor, amor, terror.** It is used in English.

Exercise. — Find five English words which are formed by adding the suffix **-or** to the stems of verbs that you have studied. Explain *eject, injection, reject, ostentation, prohibition.*

481. Perfect Active Infinitive

The **perfect active infinitive** is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem: **portāvisse,** *to have carried:* **docuisse,** etc.

Review infinitive used as subject and object, see **152, 153**; infinitive with subject in the accusative as in English, see **280.**

[1] The imperative singular is dīc.

[2] Genitive and dative singular rarely found (see 654).

482. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Rōmānī paucās nāvēs ad Britanniam mīsisse dīcuntur. 2. Rēgis fīlia librum scrīpsisse sine auxiliō dīcitur. 3. Prohibēre vim et pācem cōnservāre est nōbile. 4. Ostendite omnibus bonum exemplum. 5. Mīlitēs cōnsistentēs arma levia cum magnā vī iēcisse dīcuntur. 6. Homō malus mē cōnsistere iussit et omnem meam pecūniam dare. 7. Dux iussit mīlitēs cōnscrībī et cum magnā celeritāte ad oppidum prīmā hōrā prōcēdere.

(*b*) 1. That king is said to have tilled the fields himself. 2. We cannot breathe under water. 3. Are you preparing to come with your father and mother? 4. Those men are said to have sailed to a strange land.

483. CINCINNĀTUS

Hostēs Minucium,[1] ducem Rōmānum, et cōpiās eius premēbant. Ubi id nūntiātum est, Rōmānī timentēs vim hostium cupīvērunt Cincinnātum[2] dictātōrem facere‖ quod is sōlus Rōmam ā perīculō prohibēre et cīvitātem servāre poterat. Ille trāns Tiberim eō tempore agrum parvum colēbat. Nūntiī missī eum in agrō labōrantem invēnērunt. Salūte[3] datā acceptāque, Cincinnātus uxōrem parāre togam iussisse dīcitur; nam nōn oportēbat[4] sine togā nūntiōs audīre.

Nūntiī eum dictātōrem appellant et dīcunt: "Mīlitēs nostrī ab hostibus premuntur et cīvēs terrentur. Perīculum nostrum nōn leve est. Hostēs nōn cōnsistent sed mox ad portās nostrās ipsās venient." Itaque Cin-

[1] *Minucius* (*Mĭnū'shĭus*). [2] *Cincinnatus* (*Sĭnsĭnā'tus*).
[3] *greeting*. [4] *it was not proper*.

cinnātus, cōpiīs integrīs cōnscrīptīs, contrā hostēs celeriter prōcessit. Rōmānī, tēlīs iactīs, hostēs opprimunt et castra expugnant. Minuciō servātō, Cincinnātus dīcitur hostēs sub iugum[1] mīsisse. Tum cōpiās ad urbem reduxit et triumphāvit. Ductī sunt ante eum ducēs hostium, capta arma ostenta sunt; post eum mīlitēs vēnērunt praedam portantēs. Et haec omnia Cincinnātus magnā celeritāte gessit: dictātūrā in[2] sex mēnsēs acceptā, sextō decimō diē[3] ad agrōs discessit, nōn iam dictātor sed triumphāns agricola.

Thought Questions. — 1. Where was Cincinnatus' farm? 2. Who was with him when the messengers came? 3. How long did he stay away from his farm?

Read Harding, pp 65–70; Haaren and Poland, pp. 76–81; Mills, pp 77–79.

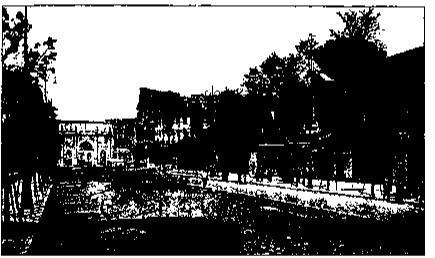


FIG. 158. VIA DEI TRIONFI — STREET OF TRIUMPHS — ROME

Along this street triumphal processions passed in ancient times. In the distance, the Arch of Constantine and the Colosseum (cf. Fig. 88).

[1] *under the yoke, i.e.* an arch of spears. This act signified surrender.
[2] *for.* [3] *day.*

484. Vocabulary

iūs'tus, -a, -um, *just*	[*iūs*]
la'bor, labō'ris, m., *work, trouble*	[*labōrō*]
mū'nus, mū'neris, n., *duty, service, gift*	(munificent)
pu'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think*	(reputation)
sci'ō, sci're, sci'vī, sci'tus, *know*	(science)
secun'dus, -a, -um, *second*	(secondary)
sol'vō, -ere, sol'vī, solū'tus, *loose, pay*	(solution)
spa'tium, spa'tī, n., *space, time, distance*	(spacious)

485. English Word Study: Spelling

The base of the Latin present participle is **-ant**, **-ent**, or **-ient**, according to the conjugation (**474**). This is used as a suffix in English, with the same meaning as the participial ending *-ing*.



FIG. 159. JULIA
Daughter of the Emperor Titus.

A common mistake in the spelling of English words is due to the confusion of **-ant** and **-ent**. Reference to the Latin partly solves the difficulty:

(*a*) All English words derived from the first conjugation follow the Latin spelling with an **-a-**: *expectant, emigrant.*

(*b*) All adjectives and most nouns derived from the other conjugations follow the Latin spelling with an **-e-**: *regent, agent, efficient.*

(*c*) But some *nouns* have an **-a-**: *tenant, defendant.*

Exercise. — Give eight English words with suffix **-ant** or **-ent** derived from Latin words previously studied. Explain *laboratory, omniscient, solvent, absolve, remunerate.*

486. Perfect Passive and Future Active Infinitive

(*a*) The **perfect passive infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the perfect participle with the present infinitive **esse**: **portātus, -a, -um esse,** *to have been carried;* **doctus, -a, -um esse,** etc. (cf. perfect passive indicative: **portātus sum**).

(*b*) The **future active infinitive** is a compound tense, formed by using the future active participle with the present infinitive **esse**: **portātūrus, -a, -um esse,** *to be going to carry;* **doctūrus, -a, -um esse,** etc.

There was no future passive infinitive in common use in Latin.

(*c*) **Learn the infinitives,** active and passive, of the model verbs (**668–672**) and **sum** (**673**).

487. Drill. — Form and translate the infinitives, active and passive, of **iaciō, ostendō,** and **prohibeō.**

488. Infinitive with Verbs of Saying, etc.

In English, we use a "that" clause after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, hearing,* and the like: *He says (that*[1]*) the boys are coming.* But sometimes we use the infinitive: *The boys are said to be coming; I know him to be a good man; I heard him say this; I believe this to be true.*

[1] *That* is occasionally omitted.

In Latin, the infinitive is *always* used after such words: **Dīcit puerōs venīre.** Note that **puerōs** is in the accusative because it is the subject of an infinitive (281). The word *that* is not translated.

489. Direct and Indirect Statement

1. **Dīcit, "Puerī veniunt,"** *He says, "The boys are coming."*
2. **Dīcit puerōs venīre,** *He says that the boys are coming.*

In the first sentence the exact words of the speaker are given, as shown by the use of quotation marks. Such a sentence is called a **direct statement.** In the second sentence the exact words are not given. Such a sentence is called an **indirect statement.**

490. Rule. — *Statements that convey indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of* ***saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving,*** *or the like, require subjects in the accusative and verbs in the infinitive.*

491. Who or Whom? — Explain how a knowledge of indirect statement in Latin will enable one to use *who* and *whom* correctly, as follows: (*a*) *Mr. Smith is a man* ***who,*** *I believe, is honest;* (*b*) *Mr. Smith is a man* ***whom*** *I believe to be honest.*

492. Drill. — Translate the words in italics:

1. I know *him to be* wise. 2. I know the *girl lost* money. 3. I believe the *man to be* trustworthy. 4. They say the *book was read* by few. 5. I hear that your *sister will live* in Detroit.

493. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Dīcunt, "Cīvis iūstus lībertātem amat." 2. Cīvis iūstus lībertātem amāre dīcitur. 3. Dīcunt

cīvem iūstum lībertātem amāre. 4. Putāmus nostra mūnera futūra esse levia. 5. Nōs omnēs scīmus in spatiō vītae esse cūrās et labōrēs. 6. Putō illum hominem futūrum esse prīmum aut secundum ōrdine. 7. Putāsne, Mārce, hunc hominem pecūniam dēbitam solvisse aut solūtūrum esse? 8. Putō pecūniam ab illō nōn solūtam esse.

(*b*) 1. Galba said, "My father is a soldier." 2. We all know that his father is brave. 3. I hear that Galba's brother was a sailor and was not terrified by the sea. 4. I think that Galba himself will be a soldier. 5. He himself said, "I am going to be a soldier, for my father is a soldier."

494. BELLA

Quae sunt causae bellī? Scīmus multās esse causās. Vidēmus multa bella ob iniūriās gesta esse. Haec bella iūsta fuērunt. Multī populī pugnant quod putant imperium auctōritātemque vī bellōque augērī posse. Hī cupiunt patriam esse nūllī secundam. Hī sī superantur omnia saepe āmittunt; sī superant, aliēnās terrās occupant. Putāsne bella huius generis iūsta esse?|| Multī dīcunt omnia bella iūsta esse, alī putant nūlla esse iūsta. Quid dē hōc putās? Nōvimus aliōs prō lībertāte, aliōs prō glōriā bella gessisse. Quae fuērunt causae bellōrum Americānōrum?

Horātius,[1] poēta Rōmānus, scrībit dulce esse prō patriā vītam āmittere. Sī patria in perīculō est, nōnne putās officium nostrum esse eam dēfendere? Scīmus

[1] *Horace.* The exact words of his famous phrase are: Dulce et decōrum est prō patriā morī.

gravēs esse labōrēs mīlitum, gravia eōs accipere vulnera, multōs eōrum vītam āmittere; etiam scīmus eōs nōn dubitāre omnia haec prō patriā grātō animō suscipere et sustinēre. Prō hīs mūneribus praemia aequa eīs solvere nōn possumus. Sed praemia nōn exspectant; spērant cīvēs facta sua memoriā tentūrōs esse et aliōs semper parātōs futūrōs esse patriam dēfendere.

Sed spērāmus brevī spatiō temporis nōn iam bella futūra esse; spērāmus omnēs hominēs aliōrum jūra cōnservātūrōs esse. Tum bella nōn iam necessāria erunt, et sine bellīs pāx perpetua erit.

Thought Questions. — 1. Which wars were just? 2. What do soldiers hope for?



Ewing Galloway

FIG. 160. INSCRIPTION AT ARLINGTON CEMETERY

Horace's immortal line is a prominent feature of the fine entrance gate to Arlington National Cemetery at Arlington, Va., near Washington, D. C., where many of the nation's famous military and naval heroes are buried.

495. Vocabulary

ā'cer, ācris, ā'cre,[1] *sharp, keen*	(acid)
clā'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *cry out, shout*	(clamor)
hae're ō, -ē're, hae'sī, hae'sus, *stick*	(adhesive)
in'stō, -ā're, in'stitī, ——, *press on, threaten*	[*stō*]
perve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ventū'rus, (*come through*), *arrive*	[*veniō*]
sen'tiō, -ī're, sēn'sī, sēn'sus, *feel, realize*	(sense)
sī, conj., *if*	
tan'gō, -ere, te'tigī, tāc'tus, *touch*	(tangent)

496. English Word Studies

By addition of the suffix **-ia** (264) to the base of the present participle, a suffix **-antia** or **-entia** is formed which becomes **-ance, -ence, -ancy,** or **-ency** in English (cf. the change of **-tia** to **-ce** (278): **scientia,** *science*). The difficulty in spelling is again removed by reference to the Latin (cf. **485**).

Exercise. — Give eight English nouns with this suffix derived from Latin words previously studied. Explain *coherence, sensitive, intangible, dissension, inherent.*

497. How Indicative and Infinitive Differ in Tense

1. *It was thought that he was present.*
2. *He was thought to be present.*

In the first sentence, the verb in the subordinate clause is in the past indicative. In the second sentence, the infinitive *to be* refers to the same time but is in the present tense. The tenses of the indicative are determined by their *relation to present time,* but the

[1] Cf. **408**, footnote 1.

tenses of the infinitive are determined by their *relation to the verbs on which they depend.* This is true in Latin as in English and should be remembered in translating a Latin infinitive into an English "that" clause.

498. How the Tenses of the Infinitive Differ

1. The present infinitive represents time or action as *going on,* from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit eōs vocāre, *He* { *says* / *said* } *(that) they* { *are* / *were* } *calling.*

(Change vocāre to vocārī and translate.)

2. The future infinitive represents an act that will occur *later,* from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit eōs vocātūrōs esse, *He* { *says* / *said* } *(that) they* { *will* / *would* } *call.*

3. The perfect infinitive represents time or action as *completed before* that of the introductory verb:

Dīcit / Dīxit eōs vocāvisse, *He* { *says* / *said* } *(that) they* { *have* / *had* } *called.*

(Change vocāvisse to vocātōs esse and translate.)

Note that the participle in the compound forms of the infinitive must agree with its subject (see 2 above).

499. Drill. — Translate the words in italics:

1. He knew *me to be* his friend. 2. He knew that *I was working* hard. 3. We saw that *we would* not *arrive* in time. 4. We hear that your *father has been sent* to Europe. 5. He said that his *son was being taught* by new methods.

500. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. (*a*) Omnēs scīmus puerōs Americānōs esse ācrēs et fortēs. (*b*) *Substitute* scīvimus *for* scīmus *in* (*a*) *and translate.* 2. Rōmānī dīcēbant Caesarem esse fortem ducem nec superātum esse. 3. Sī meum frātrem tangēs, eum dēfendam. 4. Servī spērāvērunt labōrem futūrum esse facilem. 5. Omnēs sēnsimus perīculum īnstāre. ǰ 6. Omnēs puerī certē sciunt Columbum ab Eurōpā nāvēs solvisse[1] et ad Americam pervēnisse. 7. Puer, perīculō īnstantī territus, nōn clāmāre potuit, quod vōx haesit. 8. Quis dīxit amīcum meum sine frātre pervēnisse?

(*b*) 1. Who said that we would not come? 2. The boy thought that (his) father had been saved by a sailor. 3. My mother wrote that the islands were beautiful. 4. We can prove that our cause is just. 5. The general says that the soldiers of the provinces were brave and keen.

501. **CORIOLĀNUS**

Cn. Mārcius, nōbilis Rōmānus, Coriolōs, oppidum Volscōrum,[2] expugnāverat. Ob hanc victōriam "Coriolānus" appellātus est.

Post bellum ob variās causās plēbs īrā ācrī permōta Coriolānum accūsāvit, clāmāns eum esse hostem. Coriolānus expulsus fūgit ad Volscōs quōs ipse superāverat. Volscī dīcuntur eum benignē[3] accēpisse, nam sēnsērunt eum esse ducem fortem et Rōmam nōn iam amāre. Etiam spērāvērunt eum contrā Rōmānōs pugnātūrum esse.

[1] *set sail.* What literally? [2] *Volsci* (*Vol'sī*). [3] *kindly.*

Mox Coriolānus, dux ā Volscīs lēctus, ad urbem Rōmam prōcessit, omnia in itinere vāstāns. Rōmānī castrīs eius ad urbem positīs, bellō īnstantī territī sunt. Lēgātī dē pāce ad Coriolānum missī sunt sed ubi pervēnērunt ab eō remissī sunt. "Mātrem eius ad eum mittēmus," putāvērunt Rōmānī; "sī cūra urbis cor eius nōn tanget, amōre mātris ille certē tangētur." Itaque māter et uxor Coriolānī cum duōbus parvīs fīliīs ad castra hostium prōcessērunt.

Coriolānus, verbīs mātris permōtus et lacrimīs omnium tāctus, dīcitur clāmāvisse: "Quid fēcistī, māter? Tū sōla Rōmam servāvistī sed mē vicistī." Tum iussit Volscōs discēdere. Rōma lacrimīs, nōn armīs servāta erat. Coriolānī facta semper in memoriā omnium haerēbunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. How did Coriolanus get his name? 2. Where did he go when exiled? 3. How was he persuaded to spare Rome?

Read Mills, pp 74–77; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 87–91; Haaren and Poland, pp. 64–71.



FIG. 161. RŌMA SERVĀTA EST

SEVENTH REVIEW (LESSONS LIX–LXVIII)

502. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. aestās
2. cor
3. frāter
4. genus
5. hiems
6. labor
7. māter
8. mūnus
9. nihil
10. pars
11. pater
12. soror
13. spatium
14. supplicium
15. vīs
16. vōx

Adjectives

17. ācer
18. aliēnus
19. alius
20. alter
21. commūnis
22. gravis
23. iūstus
24. incertus
25. levis
26. neuter
27. nōbilis
28. nūllus
29. praeceps
30. secundus
31. sōlus
32. tōtus
33. ūllus
34. ūnus

Pronouns

35. hic
36. idem
37. ille
38. ipse

Verbs

39. clāmō
40. colō
41. cōnscrībō
42. cōnsistō
43. contendō
44. currō
45. dīcō
46. expellō
47. expugnō
48. haereō
49. iaciō
50. īnstō
51. intercipiō
52. opprimō
53. ostendō
54. perveniō
55. prohibeō
56. putō
57. remittō
58. rogō
59. sciō
60. sedeō
61. sentiō
62. solvō
63. spērō
64. spīrō
65. tangō
66. timeō

Conjunctions

67. dum
68. sī

503. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *summer*
2. *heart*
3. *brother*
4. *birth, kind*
5. *winter*
6. *work*
7. *mother*
8. *duty, service*
9. *nothing*
10. *part*
11. *father*
12. *sister*
13. *space*
14. *punishment*
15. *force*
16. *voice*

Adjectives

17. *sharp, keen*
18. *unfavorable*
19. *other, another*
20. *the other*
21. *common*
22. *heavy, serious*
23. *just*
24. *uncertain*
25. *light*
26. *neither*
27. *noble*
28. *no, none*
29. *steep*
30. *second*
31. *alone*
32. *whole*
33. *any*
34. *one*

Pronouns

35. *this*
36. *the same*
37. *that*
38. *-self*

Verbs

39. *cry out*
40. *till, worship*
41. *enlist*
42. *stop*
43. *struggle. hasten*
44. *run*
45. *say, tell*
46. *drive out*
47. *capture by assault*
48. *stick*
49. *throw*
50. *press on, threaten*
51. *intercept*
52. *overwhelm*
53. *show*
54. *arrive*
55. *prevent*
56. *think*
57. *relax, send back*
58. *ask*
59. *know*
60. *sit*
61. *feel, realize*
62. *loose, pay*
63. *hope*
64. *breathe*
65. *touch*
66. *fear*

Conjunctions

67. *while*
68. *if*

504. English Word Studies: A Review

(*a*) Give the Latin nouns suggested by the derivatives: *cordial, partial, generation, fraternity, sorority, vocal, maternal.*

(*b*) Give the Latin verbs suggested by the derivatives: *sedentary, cursive, remiss, inspiration, cult, expulsive, oppressive, diction, ostensible, prohibit.*

(*c*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **dīcō, putō, trahō, audiō,** and **premō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

505. Noun and Adjective Review

(*a*) Decline **haec pars, idem supplicium, pater ipse, ea aestās, hoc genus, nūlla vōx, sōlus frāter.**

(*b*) Give the genitive and dative singular of **nūllus pater, ūlla māter, altera soror, sōlum flūmen, neutrum iter.**

506. Verb Review

(*a*) Give a synopsis of **timeō** in the 3d plural active; of **remittō** in the 3d singular passive.

(*b*) Form the participles, active and passive, of **dīcō, iaciō, sciō,** and **rogō.**

(*c*) Form the infinitives, active and passive, of **sentiō, intercipiō, currō,** and **expugnō.**

(*d*) Conjugate **sum** and **possum.**

507. Review of Participles

Translate the words in italics. Be careful to make the participle agree with its noun in gender, number, and case.

1. *Running* water is usually fresh. 2. We saw the boys *running* a race. 3. They heard the sound of men *approaching*. 4. Are they *going to remain?*

5. She was *going to say* something. 6. He forgot to mail the letter *after he had written* it. 7. *When he had heard these words*, he felt encouraged.

508. Indirect Statement: Tense Review

Translate the words in italics:

1. **Sciō** (*the boys read*) **librōs.**
2. **Spērō** (*the boys will read*) **librōs.**
3. **Putō** (*the boys have read*) **librōs.**
4. **Dīxit** (*the books were read*) **ā puerīs.**
5. **Dīxit** (*the books had been read*) **ā puerīs.**

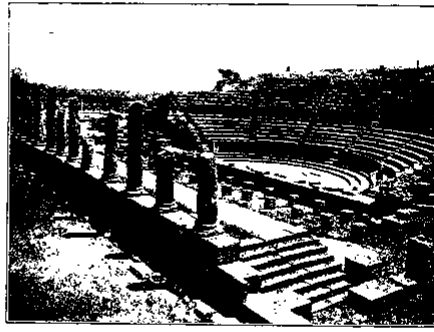


FIG. 162. ROMAN THEATER IN TIMGAD, ALGERIA

The stage buildings are in the foreground. Important people had chairs in the semicircular orchestra (on the ground level); the rest sat in the tiers of stone seats at the right

LESSON LXIX

509. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Virginēs Vestālēs

Etiam cīvitās focum Vestae habuit. Templum Vestae in Forō Rōmānō stābat. Ibi sex puellae, Virginēs Vestālēs appellātae, ignem sacrum Vestae semper ser-



FIG. 163. THE CHIEF VESTAL PASSES
Omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt

vābant. Magna erat glōria Vestālium, et maximē ā populō Rōmānō amābantur. Eīs in vīīs vīsīs, omnēs dē viā dēcessērunt. Facile erat eās cognōscere, quod omnēs semper candidās vestēs gessērunt, neque ūlla alia fēmina vestem eiusdem generis gessit. In Circō locа ēgregia eīs dabantur. Sed dūrum fuit supplicium Vestālis quae mala fuit: ea vīva sub terrā posita est.

Exacting Duties

Iūlia, soror Lūcī, Vestālis erat et multa dē vītā Vestālium nārrābat. Cum reliquīs Vestālibus in Ātriō Vestae ad templum habitāvit sed saepe patrem et mātrem et frātrēs vidēbat. Dīxit vītam Vestālium fēlīcem esse sed labōrem nōn facilem esse: eās omnia magnā cūrā dīligentiāque facere cōgī. Dīxit Vestālēs ligna in focō eōdem modō semper pōnere et omnia certīs hōrīs facere. Itaque spatium disciplīnae longum erat. Puellae sex annōrum, ā patribus mātribusque Vestae datae, prīmōs decem annōs discipulae ēgērunt, tum decem annōs in officiīs ēgērunt et posteā parvās puellās docuērunt. Post trīgintā annōs lībertās eīs data est et eae ad amīcōs familiāsque redīre[1] potuērunt, sed multae in Ātriō Vestae mānsērunt. Sex sōlae Vestālēs in Ātriō ūnō tempore habitāvērunt.



Fig 164. Statue of a Vestal Virgin

The costume suggests one reason why the Vestals have been called the first nuns. Statues of some of the chief Vestal Virgins are still in place in the old home of the Vestals near the temple of Vesta in the Forum (Fig 104).

[1] Infinitive of red-eō, *go back*.

Misfortune

Quondam Iūlia, aquam sacram dē fonte portāns, vīdit aliam Vestālem ante portam sedentem flentemque et ad eam cucurrit. Causā dolōris petītā, audīvit alteram sīvisse[1] ignem sacrum exstinguī; vigiliā cōnfecta, somnō oppressa erat. Iūlia, malā fortūnā amīcae permōta, tamen illī nūllum cōnsilium dare potuit. Itaque illa pontificī omnia nārrāvit, et hic eam verberāvit — nihil aliud facere potuit, quod ita lēgēs iussērunt.



Fig 165 Vestālis Somnō Oppressa Est

Right or Wrong

Hōc audītō, Lūcius dīxit illam miseram nōn merēre ob lassitūdinem poenā afficī et ōtium habēre dēbēre, sed eius soror, Iūlia, aliam sententiam habuit: "Etiam amīca mea ipsa quae verberāta est sentit supplicium aequum fuisse. Mūnera nostra gravia sunt. Sī dīligentiam nōn adhibēbimus, salūs cīvitātis in perīculō erit. Itaque poena neglegentiae gravis esse dēbet. Sī ego ignem exstinguī sinam (quod spērō numquam futūrum esse) gravī poenā afficī dēbēbō."

[1] From sinō.



FIG 166. INTERIOR OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII
Looking from the atrium, with its cistern, through the tablinum into the peristyle

510. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

The House and Its Furniture

The Roman town house was different from ours and more like that of southern Europe today. As glass was expensive, there were few windows on the street. The typical house, as found in numerous examples at Pompeii, consisted of two parts, front and rear. The front consisted of a large room, called the atrium, surrounded by small bedrooms. The atrium had an opening in the roof for light and air. The roof sloped down to the opening. Below the opening there was a basin into which the rain fell. This cistern, as we may call

it, furnished the soft water for washing, so necessary in a country where most of the water is hard. At the corners of the basin there were often columns extending to the roof (Fig. 168).

As the house was built directly on the street, it had no front yard. The heavy front door opened into a hall leading into the atrium. On one side of the hall there might be a small shop, usually rented out to people who did not live in the house. On the other side there was the room of the doorkeeper (iānitor). Very often there was a place for a watchdog. Sometimes a fierce dog was painted on the wall or depicted in mosaic on the floor of the hall.

Opposite the entrance was the study or office (tablīnum) of the master of the house, placed so that he could keep an eye on what was going on. Here he kept his safe. Often there were also upstairs rooms (Fig. 175).

The rear of the house surrounded a garden. Because of the columns which ran all around the garden this part was called the peristyle. It was often very pretty. Charming fountains and statuary were usually to be seen in the garden. Kitchen, bathroom, dining rooms, were in this part of the house. There were often two dining rooms, one on the shady side for summer, the other on the sunny side for winter.

The walls were covered with elaborate paintings (Fig. 168). Rugs and draperies were in common use. The floors were usually covered with stone flags or mosaic, as in Italy today, instead of wood. There was not much furniture. Chairs were few, and many of them were without backs. On the other hand, there

were many couches, used like easy-chairs, not only for reading and resting but also at the dinner table. There were many kinds of tables and stands, often very beautiful. Many small lamps of bronze or clay (Fig. 65) were placed everywhere, some on stands, some on large, elaborate candelabra. These burned olive oil. Glass chimneys were unknown. The light was so poor that people went to bed early and got up early. Candles were also used.



FIG. 167. A KITCHEN IN POMPEII
Pots and pans are still in place on the stove

Kitchen utensils and dishes were made of bronze, silver, or earthenware. Those made of earthenware were chiefly red in color and were decorated with engraved lines.

Besides the town houses just described, there were country homes (**villae**) which were more elaborate. In Rome there were also apartment houses, called **insulae** because they were "islands" surrounded by streets. Most Romans lived in such houses, which were often five or six stories high. Many were flimsily built for speculation and were an easy prey for fires.

Read Showerman, pp. 76–88; Mills, pp. 301–309; McDaniel, pp. 5–13; Johnston, Chap. VI.



Fig. 168. Interior of a House in Pompeii, Restored

LESSON LXX

511. Vocabulary

condi'ciō, condiciō'nis, *f., condition, terms*	(conditional)
lī'gō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *tie, bind*	(ligament)
quam, conj., *than*	
ra'piō, -ere, ra'puī, rap'tus, *seize, carry off*	(rapture)
respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī, respōn'sus, *answer*	(response)
sta'tuō, -ere, sta'tuī, statū'tus, *(make stand), place, establish, determine*	[stō]
ū'tilis, -e, *useful*	(utility)
vin'cō, -ere, vī'cī, vic'tus, *conquer*	(invincible)

512. English Word Studies

It is important to distinguish different words from the same stem. "Plain" and "plane" both come from plānus, *level*. A "plain" is a *level* field; a "plain" person is not above the average *level* in appearance, etc. A "plane" is a *level* surface (hence "plane" geometry); it is also a tool which makes surfaces *level*. "Plane" is therefore used in a more literal, "plain," in a less literal, sense.

A "corpse" is a dead *body* (from corpus); a "corps" (pronounced "core") is a *body* of men forming part of an army. The former is literal, the latter, figurative. A "corporation" is a *body* of men united for commercial or other purposes. A "corpuscle" is a little *body* in the blood. "Corporal" punishment is punishment inflicted upon the *body*, *i.e.* a whipping. Anything "corporeal" has a *body*, *i.e.* it is not imaginary. Similarly, a "principal" is the *leading* person in a school; a "principle" is a *leading* rule.

Explain *obligation, convince, responsible, invisible, convention.*

513. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives are inflected to show degree. This is called **comparison.** There are three degrees: **positive, comparative, superlative.** The positive is the simple form of the adjective; the others indicate a greater degree.

In English, the comparative is formed by adding *-er* (*-r*) to the positive: *high–er, brave–r.* The superlative is formed by adding *-est* (*-st*) to the positive: *high–est, brave–st.* But adjectives of more than one syllable are often compared by the use of *more* and *most: more skillful, most skillful.*

In Latin, the endings **-ior** (m. and f.), **-ius** (n.) are regularly added to the base of the positive to form the comparative, and **-issimus, -a, -um** to form the superlative:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, -a, -um, *high* (base, **alt-**)	**altior, altius,** *higher*	**altissimus, -a, -um,** *highest*
fortis, -e, *brave* (base, **fort-**)	**fortior, fortius,** *braver*	**fortissimus, -a, -um,** *bravest*

Hints for Translating. — The comparative may often be translated *more, too, rather;* the superlative, *most, very, exceedingly.*

514. Declension of the Comparative

Adjectives are declined as follows in the comparative:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
Nom.	al'tior	al'tius	altiō'rēs	altiō'ra
Gen.	altiō'ris	altiō'ris	altiō'rum	altiō'rum
Dat.	altiō'rī	altiō'rī	altiō'ribus	altiō'ribus
Acc.	altiō'rem	al'tius	altiō'rēs	altiō'ra
Abl.	altiō're	altiō're	altiō'ribus	altiō'ribus

Observe that, while comparatives are declined like adjectives of the third declension, they do not have **-ī** in the abl. sing., **-ium** in the gen. plur., or **-ia** in the nom. and acc. plur. neuter.

515. Drill. — (*a*) Compare **grātus, -a, -um; nōbilis, -e; clārus, -a, -um; levis, -e; longus, -a, -um.** (*b*) Decline **tardus, -a, -um** in the comparative. (*c*) Decline **vir fortior, supplicium iūstius.**

516. Remember that in Latin when **quam** is used, the two things compared are in the same case, but in English *than* is followed by the nominative: **Fortiōrem virum quam illum nōn vīdī,** *A braver man than he I have not seen.*

517. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Captīvus, nōn ligātus, gladium rapuit et fūgit. 2. Quid est ūtilius et grātius quam librōs bonōs legere? 3. Novissimum librum, ab eōdem auctōre scrīptum, ad frātrem meum mittere statuī. 4. Gallī vīribus corporis Rōmānōs superābant sed nōn erant fortiōrēs virī. 5. Homō dē vīīs mē rogāvit; ego respondī hanc esse plāniōrem quam illam. 6. Eī ostendimus duo itinera per montēs — alterum facile, alterum longius et incertius. 7. Condiciōnēs pācis dūrissimae et gravissimae ab hostibus victīs semper esse habentur.

(*b*) 1. Why are not the rivers of Italy very long? 2. Even more severe terms of peace than these will be determined (upon). 3. I know that that river is swift but not very wide. 4. Nothing is more useful than water. 5. Peace has nobler victories than war.

518. QUATTUOR AETĀTĒS

Prīma aetās erat aurea. Sāturnus erat rēx deōrum hominumque. Illō tempore poenae lēgēsque aberant, quod omnēs hominēs iūstī erant. Nāvēs in marī nōn erant, nec trāns mare lātum hominēs nāvigābant. Bellum nōn erat nec mīlitēs et arma. In ōtiō vītam hominēs agēbant, nam omnēs terrae concordiā et pāce ligātae sunt. Hominēs in agrīs nōn labōrābant; terra nōn culta ipsa frūmentum et omnia ūtilia dabat. Neque hiems neque aestās erat: semper erat vēr. Flūmina lactis[1] et vīnī erant. Quod omnēs agrī commūnēs erant, terminī agrōrum nōn erant.

Sāturnō expulsō, Iuppiter rēx erat. Nunc incipit secunda aetās, quae ex argentō est, dūrior quam prīma, grātior quam tertia. Tum aestās et hiems esse incipiunt; quattuor sunt spatia annī. Tum prīmum in agrīs labōrāre hominēs incipiunt.

Tertia aetās ex aere[2] erat. Dūrior erat quam secunda.

Quārta aetās, quae ex ferrō est, dūrissima omnium est. Poenae gravissimae statuuntur, sed hominēs interficiunt et rapiunt. Nautae in omnī marī nāvigant et ūtilia petunt. Hominēs semper bella gerunt. Hominēs in agrīs labōrant; nam labor omnia vincit.

[1] *of milk.* [2] *of bronze.*



FIG. 169 LABOR OMNIA VINCIT

Haec dīcunt auctōrēs clārissimī Rōmānī dē quattuor aetātibus. Vergilius[1] putābat iterum aetātem aurēam futūram esse. Etiam nunc putāmus vītam semper grātiōrem futūram esse. Putātisne condiciōnem fortūnamque populī Rōmānī meliōrem[2] fuisse quam fortūnam nostram? Cūr haec sententia vestra est? Quae erit condiciō hominum post mīlle annōs? Alīī dīcunt: "Tempora mūtantur, et nōs mūtāmur in illīs." Alīī respondent hominēs semper eōsdem fuisse et futūrōs esse. Quae est sententia vestra? Possuntne ambae sententiae vērae esse?

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did not men work in the Golden Age? 2. When did they begin? 3. When did crime begin?

[1] *Vergil.* [2] *better.*

519. Vocabulary

ap'tus, -a, -um, *fit, suitable*	(adapt)
* **gēns, gen'tis, gen'tium,** f., *tribe, people, nation*	[*genus*]
in'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *arrange, provide*	[*struō*, arrange]
iū'dicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *judge, decide*	(judicial)
nē'mō, dat. **nē'minī,** acc. **nē'minem** (no other forms), *no one*	[*homō*]
ōrā'tiō, ōrātiō'nis, f., *speech*	(orator)
re'giō, regiō'nis, ī., *district, region*	[*regō*]
repel'lō, -ere, rep'pulī, repul'sus, *drive back, repulse*	[*pellō*]

520. English Word Studies: The Suffix *-iō*

In Latin, the suffix **-iō** is added to verb stems, usually to the participial stem. As this generally ends in **-t** or **-s**, words of this origin generally end in **-tiō** or **-siō**. The suffix indicates an act or the state which results from an act: **ōrātiō** is the act of speaking, or the result, *i.e.* a speech. Nouns with this suffix have **-iōnis** in the genitive. Therefore the base ends in **-n.** The English form of the suffix, which is very common, is **-ion** (**-tion, -sion**): *region, oration, session.* It often has the force of the suffix *-ing.*

Exercise. — Give and define ten English words with the suffix **-ion** derived from Latin verbs which you have studied. Look up the origin and meaning of *gentile* and *gentile.*

521. Formation of Adverbs

(*a*) For adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions, see **202.**

(*b*) Adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension, as a rule, by adding **-iter** to the base; as, adj., **fortis,** adv., **fortiter**; adj., **ācer,** adv., **ācriter.**

522. The **comparison of adverbs** is similar to that of adjectives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
al'tē	al'tius	altis'simē
for'titer	for'tius	fortis'simē

Note that in the comparative degree the adverb always has the same form as the neuter accusative singular of the comparative adjective.

523. Drill. — Form and compare adverbs from the following adjectives already studied:

longus, ūtilis, levis, clārus, firmus, gravis, vērus

524. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Sciō hoc flūmen esse longius quam illud. 2. In silvam tardius pervēnimus quod reliquī puerī celerius cucurrērunt. 3. Nostrī fortissimē pugnāvērunt sed ab hostibus victī et repulsī sunt. 4. Pater meus omnia iūstē et celeriter iūdicat; nam nēmō est iūstior quam ille. 5. Hī mīlitēs, ē castrīs ēductī, ad proelium ā duce īnstruuntur. 6. Cūr haec gēns aliās regiōnēs partēsque Asiae petit? 7. Puerī magistrō librum dedērunt, et ille ōrātiōne aptā respondit.

(*b*) 1. We certainly hope that peace has been established among all nations. 2. We shall drive the enemy back, because our men fight more bravely. 3. No one approves a very long speech. 4. The battle was sharply fought, but few men received severe wounds.

525. BAUCIS ET PHILĒMŌN

Iuppiter et Mercurius per Phrygiam, quae in Asiā est, iter fēcērunt, sed nēmō eōs cognōvit. Omnēs eōs iūdicāvērunt esse humilēs hominēs. Ad mīlle domōs accessērunt; nam locum somnō aptum petīvērunt. Sed omnēs, hīs vīsīs, domōs celeriter clausērunt. In tōtā regiōne repulsī sunt. Tamen ūna domus eōs recēpit, parva et humilis. Ibi Baucis et Philēmōn[1] multōs annōs longae vītae fēlīcissimē ēgerant. Magnam pecūniam nōn habuērunt sed paupertātem leviter et fortiter tulērunt. Duo tōta domus[2] fuērunt, et dominī et servī ipsī; nam servōs nōn habuērunt.



FIG. 170. MERCURIUS

Cēnam humilem Baucis magnā dīligentiā et celeritāte parāvit; numquam celerius labōrāverat. Tum deōs ad cēnam vocāvit. Mēnsa nōn multīs cibīs sed bonīs īnstrūcta erat. Vīnum bibērunt, sed semper crātēr plēnus erat. Tum Philēmōn et Baucis clārē sēnsērunt deōs adesse. Tum Iuppiter, "Deī sumus," inquit, "tōtam gentem poenā afficiēmus, quod nēmō nōbīs auxilium dedit, sed vestra vīta servābitur. Ad montem prōcēdēmus." Itaque Baucis et Philēmōn, hāc ōrātiōne permōtī, ad montem tardē prōcessērunt. Ibi cōnstitērunt et vīdērunt tōtam regiōnem aquā tēctam

[1] *Baucis* (*Bau'sis*), *Philē'mon*. [2] *household* (predicate nominative).

esse, domum suam sōlam manēre. Dum spectant, domus eōrum in pulchrum templum vertitur.

Tum Iuppiter, "Quid cupitis?" inquit; "id quod petitis dōnābō." Philēmōn, uxōre cōnsultā, respondit: "Cupimus esse sacerdōtēs[1] illīus templī et ē vītā eōdem tempore excēdere, quod in concordiā multōs annōs ēgimus." Hoc mūnus accēpērunt.

Post multōs annōs, aetāte gravēs ante sacrum templum stābant. Corpora eōrum in arborēs tardē vertuntur. Multōs annōs hae duae arborēs ante templum stābant.

Thought Questions. — 1. What was Jupiter looking for? 2. Why did it take so long to find it? 3. How did Philemon find out that his guests were gods?

Read Sabin, pp. 83–84; Gayley, pp. 77–80; Guerber, pp. 43–44; Bulfinch, pp. 54–57.



FIG. 171. AN ANCIENT ROMAN AND HIS WIFE

[1] *priests.*

526. Vocabulary

ca'dō, -ere, ce'cidī, cāsū'rus, *fall* (casualty)
ac'cidō, -ere, ac'cidī, ——, *fall to, befall, happen* (with dat.)
diffi'cilis, -e, *difficult* [*facilis*]
ex'plicō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *unfold, spread out, explain* [*plicō*]
hu'milis, -e, *low, humble* (humility)
pro'prius, -a, -um, (*one's*) *own* (propriety)
si'milis, -e, *like* (similarity)
dissi'milis, -e, *unlike*

527. English Word Studies

(*a*) Explain *accident, coincidence, proprietor, humiliate, decadent.*

(*b*) **Legal Phrases in English**

Lawyers use so many Latin phrases daily that they must be familiar with Latin. A few such phrases are:

subpoenā, a summons to court *under penalty* for failure to attend.

ex post factō, *resulting after the fact; e.g.* a law which makes punishable acts committed before its passage.

in fōrmā pauperis, *in the form* (or *manner*) *of a poor man;* to sue as a poor man and so avoid the costs of the suit.

in propriā persōnā, *in one's own person* (not through some one else).



FIG. 172. ARCH OF TITUS, ROME

Exercise. — Look through the court records and legal items in the newspapers for other Latin phrases.

528. Comparison of *-er* Adjectives and the Corresponding Adverbs

All adjectives ending in -er form the superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the nominative singular masculine of the positive:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
crē'ber, crē'bra, crē'brum	crē'brior, crē'brius	crēber'rimus, -a, -um
lī'ber, lī'bera, lī'berum	lībe'rior, lībe'rius	līber'rimus, -a, -um
ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre	ā'crior, ā'crius	ācer'rimus, -a, -um

The corresponding adverbs are formed as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
crē'brē	crē'brius	crēber'rimē
lī'berē	lībe'rius	līber'rimē
ā'criter	ā'crius	ācer'rimē

529. **Drill.** — Compare **celer, miser, pulcher, altus.** Form and compare the corresponding adverbs. Decline **illa līberior patria.**

530. Adjectives with Superlative in *-limus*

The superlative of five adjectives ending in -lis is formed by adding **-limus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive:

fa'cilis, -e	faci'lior, faci'lius	facil'limus, -a, -um
diffi'cilis, -e	diffici'lior, diffici'lius	difficil'limus, -a, -um
si'milis, -e	simi'lior, simi'lius	simil'limus, -a, -um
dissi'milis, -e	dissimi'lior, dissimi'lius	dissimil'limus, -a, -um
hu'milis, -e	humi'lior, humi'lius	humil'limus, -a, -um

Note. — Other -lis adjectives, such as **nōbilis, -e, ūtilis, -e**, etc., form the superlative regularly — *i.e.* by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base of the positive: **nōbil-is'simus, -a, -um.**

The adverb of **facilis** is **facile.** The adverbs formed from the other adjectives in the preceding list are formed regularly.

In the superlative the corresponding adverbs end in **-ē: facillimē.**

531. Dative with Adjectives

1. **Hic liber est similis illī,** *This book is similar to that.*
2. **Ille homō est frātrī meō inimīcus,** *That man is unfriendly to my brother.*

Observe that the dative is often used with Latin adjectives whose English equivalents are followed by *to*. The following have already been studied: **amīcus, inimīcus, similis, dissimilis, aptus, grātus.**

532. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nihil est nōbīs ūtilius quam bonus liber; nam est nōbilissimus amīcōrum, semper firmus et vērus. 2. Humilis homō nec altē cadere nec graviter potest. 3. Rōmānōrum deī dissimillimī nostrō Deō erant. 4. Hic equus similior meō est quam ille. 5. Frāter, cūr capis id quod nōn tuum proprium est? 6. Ille

liber difficillimus est, nam pauca clārē explicat. 7. Cornēlī, quid sorōrī tuae accidit? Cūr nōn vēnit cum reliquīs?

(*b*) 1. Not all the neighboring nations were friendly to the Romans. 2. The teacher in a very beautiful speech unfolded the life of Caesar. 3. As the bad men approached, the boys ran more quickly. 4. The places in which our soldiers fell are the most sacred in Gaul. 5. This region is fit for (to) some men, but not for others.

533. DAEDALUS ET ĪCARUS

In īnsulā Crētā Mīnōs fuit rēx. Daedalus[1] cum fīliō parvō Īcarō ibi captīvus fuit. Fugere nōn potuit quod mare prohibuit. "Neque per terram," inquit, "neque per mare fugere possum, sed caelum certē nōn clausum est. Illā viā difficillimā prōcēdēmus." Itaque ālās parāvit, simillimās ālīs vērīs avium.[2] Partēs ālārum cērā ligāvit. Īcarus ad patrem stābat, ālās levissimās tangēbat, opus patris impediēbat. Tandem fīnis labōris aderat; ālae parātae erant. Tum Daedalus fīlium hīs verbīs monuit:

"In mediō caelō prōcēdēmus; nam, sī humilius volābimus,[3] undae ālās graviōrēs facient; sī altius volābimus, ignis ālās ūret."

Tum omnēs partēs ālārum fīliō ostendit et omnia in ōrdine explicāvit. Perīculum esse sēnsit et fīliō timuit, quī patrī dissimillimus erat. Antecessit et fīlium iussit post volāre.

Agricolae territī ex agrīs eōs vīdērunt; multī putā-

[1] *Daedalus (Ded'alus), Ī'carus.* [2] *of birds.* [3] *fly.*

vērunt eōs deōs esse. Celerrimē pater fīliusque āera[1] ālīs pepulērunt.[2] Multās terrās relīquērunt. Tum puer nōn iam timidus patrem ducem relīquit. Verba patris memoriā nōn tenuit et altius volāvit. Tum multa accidērunt: celeriter sōl cēram solvit; nōn iam ālae haesērunt. Praeceps puer miser in mare cecidit; frūstrā nōmen patris clāmāvit. Ab illō posteā hoc mare nōmen[3] accēpit.



FIG 173. DAEDALUS ET ICARUS

Interim pater, nōn iam pater, in omnibus regiōnibus fīlium petīvit, nōmen fīlī clāmāvit. Tandem ālās propriās Īcarī in undīs vīdit.

Tum ipse ad Siciliam pervēnit et ibi multōs annōs ēgit. Sed alī scrībunt eum in Italiam volāvisse et ibi in templō ālās posuisse. Hōc modō deīs prō sālūte grātiās ēgit.

Prīmus omnium hominum Daedalus per caelum lātum volāvit, sī auctōrēs Graecī et Rōmānī vērum dīxērunt. Nunc multī hominēs volant, sed nōn ālīs.

Thought Questions. — 1. In what way did Icarus disobey his father? 2. Where did Daedalus land?

Read Sabin, pp. 260–261; Gayley, pp. 246–248; Guerber, pp. 253–255; Bulfinch, pp. 161–163.

[1] Accusative singular: *aër*. [2] From pellō: *beat*. [3] The Icarian Sea.

LESSON LXXIII

534. Vocabulary

extrē'mus, –a, –um, *farthest, last, end of*	(extremist)
infe'rior, infe'rius, *lower*	(inferiority)
pro'ximus, –a, –um, *nearest, next* (with dat.)	(proximity)
sum'mus, –a, –um, *highest, top of*	(summit)
ulte'rior, ulte'rius, *farther;* ul'timus, –a, –um, *farthest*	(ultimate)



FIG. 174. TEMPLE OF VESTA AND PALATINE HILL, ROME

535. English Word Studies

(*a*) A number of English words preserve the forms of the comparative and superlative of Latin irregular adjectives: *major* (cf. *mayor*), *maximum, minor, minus, minimum, plus, nonplus, inferior, superior, ulterior, prior, anterior, posterior, interior, exterior, junior, senior.*

(*b*) ē plūribus ūnum, *one from many* (found on U. S. coins).

536. Irregular Adjectives Compared

In English, certain adjectives in common use are compared irregularly, such as *good, better, best; bad, worse, worst.*

In Latin, the following adjectives, among others, are compared irregularly and should be memorized:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um (*good*)	melior, melius (*better*)	optimus, -a, -um (*best*)
malus, -a, -um (*bad*)	peior, peius (*worse*)	pessimus, -a, -um (*worst*)
magnus, -a, -um (*large*)	maior, maius (*larger*)	maximus, -a, -um (*largest*)
parvus, -a, -um (*small*)	minor, minus (*smaller*)	minimus, -a, -um (*smallest*)
multus, -a, -um (*much*)	plūs[1] (*more*)	plūrimus, -a, -um (*most*)

Exercise. — Find English derivatives of the above words.

537. Irregular Adverbs Compared

Adverbs formed from the above adjectives are compared, in general, according to the rule (522); irregularities not explained by reference to the corresponding adjective forms are underlined and should be noted carefully:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bĕnĕ (*well*)	melius (*better*)	optimē (*best*)
malĕ (*badly*)	peius (*worse*)	pessimē (*worst*)
——	magis (*more*)	maximē (*most*)
——	minus (*less*)	minimē (*least*)
multum (*much*)	plūs (*more*)	plūrimum (*most*)

[1] Gen. plūris; there is no masculine and feminine singular, and no dative in any gender; the plural is plūrēs, plūra, gen. plūrium, etc. See 660.

Note. — Certain other irregular adjectives and adverbs occur less frequently in the comparative and superlative forms and have therefore been omitted from the list to be memorized. A few will be introduced as vocabulary words in the form in which they most frequently occur.

538. ***Extrēmus* and *Summus.*** — In English, it is necessary to employ nouns to translate adjectives like **extrēmus** and **summus**: **in extrēmā ōrātiōne,** *at the end of the speech;* **summus mōns,** *top of the mountain* (cf. **reliquī mīlitēs,** *rest of the soldiers;* **in mediō flūmine,** *in the middle of the river*). When thus used, the adjective usually precedes its noun.

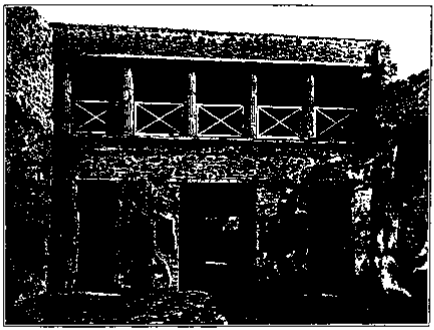


FIG. 175. A HOUSE IN POMPEII

The interesting thing in this picture is the upper story. In most Pompeian houses the upper portions have disappeared. Most of the separate houses had two stories; the apartment houses, which were especially numerous in Rome, had several more.

539. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nōnne spērās proximam hiemem nōn futūram esse dūriōrem quam hanc? 2. Optimī cīvēs patriam semper fortissimē dēfendent. 3. Pessimī hominēs in ultimās regiōnēs mittī dēbent. 4. Summus mōns ā nōbīs facillimē occupātus est. 5. Puerī ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis ab extrēmīs fīnibus prōvinciae iter facient. 6. Hī puerī magis territī sunt quam illī quod perīculum maximum esse sēnsērunt. 7. Agricolae Americānī maiōrem cōpiam frūmentī habēbunt quam alīī quod plūrimī eōrum meliōrēs agrōs habent.

(*b*) 1. He said that boys and girls ought to read the best books. 2. Can a horse run more swiftly than a man? 3. We shall do this very quickly and well without your help. 4. Our men fought more bravely than the enemy. 5. The smallest boy is not the worst.

540. PYRRHUS ET EIUS VICTŌRIA

Rōmānī gentēs quae proximae urbī erant vīcerant et in ulteriōrēs partēs Italiae prōcesserant; summā virtūte contrā maiōrēs cōpiās hostium in extrēmīs regiōnibus Italiae pugnāverant. Posteā bellum novī generis cum Pyrrhō, rēge optimō Ēpīrī, gessērunt.

Pyrrhus in Italiam īnferiōrem ā Tarentīnīs vocātus est, quī eō tempore cum Rōmānīs pugnābant. Is ad Italiam vēnit et elephantōrum auxiliō vīcit, quod Rōmānī elephantōs nōn anteā vīsōs timuērunt. Sed nōn minus fortiter ob eam causam pugnāvērunt. Peius[1] Pyrrhō victōrī quam victīs Rōmānīs accidit. Plūrimī

[1] *a worse thing.*

Pyrrhī mīlitēs interfectī sunt. Pyrrhus, ubi plūrima corpora Rōmānōrum interfectōrum vulnera in fronte habēre vīdit, haec verba fēcit: "Cum tālibus[1] mīlitibus tōtum orbem[2] facillimē vincere possum!" Amīcīs dē victōriā agentibus dīxit: "Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcerō, nūllōs mīlitēs in Ēpīrum redūcam." [3]

Thought Questions. — 1. What was the cause of Pyrrhus' victories? 2 What is a "Pyrrhic victory"?

Read Harding, pp 115–119; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 115–118; Mills, pp. 102–105.



FIG. 176. ELEPHANTI

This picture is on a plate which was made in the third century B C., about the time when Pyrrhus was fighting the Romans.

[1] *such.* [2] *earth.*

[3] Hence the phrase "a Pyrrhic victory," used of a victory which is really a defeat.

LESSON LXXIV

541. Vocabulary

cōnspi'ciō, –ere, –spe'xī, –spec'tus, *catch sight of, see* [*speciō*, *look*]
con'trā, adv. and prep. with acc., *against*
crē'dō, –ere, **crē'didī**, **crē'ditus**, *believe, entrust* (with dat.) (credit)
fal'lō, –ere, **fefel'lī**, **fal'sus**, *deceive* (fallacy)
interfi'ciō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, *kill* (cf. "done for") [*faciō*]
num'quam, adv., *never*
sū'mō, –ere, **sūmp'sī**, **sūmp'tus**, *take, assume* (assumption)
trī'buō, –ere, **trī'buī**, **tribū'tus**, *bestow, grant* (contribute)

542. English Word Studies

In the fourteenth century there began a great revival of interest in the ancient Latin and Greek authors. This revival is known as the **Renaissance** (re-nāscor). Beginning in Italy, it spread over western Europe and reached England in the sixteenth century. Ever since then many new words have been added to English from Latin and Greek. As a result, over ninety per cent of the words in Caesar and Cicero have English derivatives. Words of this last period are easily distinguished by their similarity to the Latin originals.

One result of the introduction of new words directly from the Latin was the formation of a number of **doublets**, words derived at different periods from the same Latin word and having different meanings. Note the following (the earlier form precedes): *sample, example* (**exemplum**); *feat, fact* (**factum**); *Mr., master* (**magister**); *loyal, legal* (lēx); *mayor, major* (**maior**); *chance, cadence* (**cadō**).

Exercise. — Show how the above doublets got their meanings from the original Latin meaning.

543. Reflexive Pronouns

In English, the pronouns *myself, ourselves*, etc., may be used in apposition with a noun or pronoun for emphasis, like Latin **ipse** (460): *I saw him myself, Ipse* **eum vīdī.** They are also used alone as objects of verbs or of prepositions to refer to the subject of the verb; they are then called **reflexive pronouns**: *I saw myself.*

In Latin, the personal pronouns of the first and second persons may be used reflexively, but in the third person Latin has a special reflexive pronoun, **suī**, declined alike in the singular and plural:

Gen. suī,	*of himself, herself, itself, themselves*			
Dat sibi,	*to* "	"	"	"
Acc. sē (sēsē),	"	"	"	"
Abl. sē (sēsē), *with* (*from*, etc.)	"	"	"	"

Query. — Why is **suī** without a nominative?

544. How Reflexive Pronouns Are Used

(ego) **mē rogō,** *I ask myself*		(nōs) **nōs rogāmus,** *we ask ourselves*	
(tū) **tē rogās,** *you ask yourself*		(vōs) **vōs rogātis,** *you ask yourselves*	
(is) **sē rogat,** *he asks himself*	(eī) **sē rogant,** *they ask themselves*		

545. Drill. — Give a synopsis of **līberō**, 1st sing.; **fallō**, 2d plur.; **interficiō**, 3d sing., using the proper reflexive pronoun with each.

546. Reflexive Adjectives

Corresponding to **meus, tuus,** etc., derived from **ego, tū,** etc., there is the reflexive adjective **suus, -a, -um,** *his own*, etc., derived from **suī.**

Caution. — Remember that **suus, -a, -um** *always refers to the subject of the verb.* When *his, her,* etc., do not refer to the subject, **eius,** etc., must be used (**450**).

547. Drill. — Translate the words in italics:

1. We saw *his* brother. 2. The girl loved *her* mother. 3. They will defend *themselves* and *us.* 4. You will see *their* friends. 5. He wasted *his* money and *theirs.*

548. **Exercises**

(*a*) 1. Captīvus sē suāque omnia mihi crēdidit. 2. Crēditisne Deum mare terramque prō sē aut prō nōbīs fēcisse? 3. Frāter eius mātrem suam fefellit et posteā sē interfēcit. 4. Arma sūmēmus et nōs fortiter dēfendēmus contrā pessimōs nostrōs hostēs. 5. Puerum pessimum currentem vīdī, sed ille crēdidit sē ā mē nōn vīsum esse. 6. Tū tē ipsum fallere semper potuistī sed mē numquam fefellistī. 7. Mūnera pūblica optimīs, nōn pessimīs, hominibus tribuī dēbent.

(*b*) 1. We always praise ourselves and accuse others. 2. Do you believe that either he or I took your money? 3. He says that he (himself) has four brothers, but he cannot deceive me. 4. Entrust yourselves and all your (possessions) to us. 5. The leader of the enemy, having caught sight of us, killed himself.

549. **PYRRHUS ET FABRICIUS**

Fabricius[1] ab omnibus Rōmānīs plūrimum amātus est quod optimus fortissimusque mīles erat. Neque amīcōs neque inimīcōs suōs fallēbat. Itaque Rōmānī

[1] *Fabricius* (*Fabrish'ius*).

cīvitātis suae salūtem eī crēdidērunt et eum inter aliōs lēgātōs ad Pyrrhum mīsērunt.

Dē Fabriciō et eius honestāte Pyrrhus multa audīverat. Itaque Fabricium in castrīs suīs cōnspectum bene accēpit. Posteā eī sēcrētō dīxit: "Cūr nōn in Ēpīrum mēcum venīs et ibi manēs? Quārtam rēgnī meī partem tibi tribuam." Sed Fabricius dīxit sē numquam partem rēgnī eius sūmptūrum esse.



FIG. 177. FORTISSIMĪ MĪLITĒS
A modern idea of the Roman spirit

Proximō annō Fabricius contrā Pyrrhum pugnāvit. Medicus rēgis nocte ad eum vēnit et prōmīsit sē prō praemiō Pyrrhum interfectūrum esse. Fabricius iussit hunc ligātum redūcī ad dominum et Pyrrhō omnia dīcī. Tum rēx maximē mōtus dīxit: "Ille est Fabricius quī nōn facilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā cursū[1] suō āvertī potest!"

Thought Questions. — 1. Why did the Romans have so much confidence in Fabricius? 2. What offer did Pyrrhus make to Fabricius? 3. What reason did Pyrrhus have for being grateful to Fabricius?

Read Harding, pp. 121–122; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 119–121.

[1] Ablative.



FIG 178. THE FOUNTAIN NEAR THE COLOSSEUM AS IT WAS

The remains of this fountain were removed recently to make room for automobile traffic

LESSON LXXV

550. Vocabulary

cen'tum, indecl. adj., *hundred* {centennial}
cōnfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, (*do thoroughly*), *complete, exhaust* (cf "do up") [*faciō*]
e'mō, -ere, ē'mī, ēmp'tus, *take, buy* {redemption}
fran'gō, -ere, frē'gī, frāc'tus, *break* {fraction}
o'pus, o'peris, n., *work* {operate}
perfi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *finish* [*faciō*]
trā'dō, -ere, trā'didī, trā'ditus, *give* or *hand over, deliver* [*dō*]

551. English Word Studies

Much difficulty is caused in English spelling by silent or weakly sounded letters. This difficulty is often solved by referring to the Latin original: *laboratory, repetition, library, separate, auxiliary, comparative, debt, reign, receipt.* The Latin original often helps in other difficulties: *consensus, annuity, deficit, accelerate.*

Exercise. — Define the above words and give their Latin originals.

Much confusion is caused in English by the combinations *ei* and *ie.* Remember that the derivatives of compounds of **capiō** have *ei*, as *receive.*

Why is a *fraction* so called? Explain *fracture, exemption.* Explain *treason* and *tradition,* which are doublets derived from **trādō.**

552. Ordinal Numerals

You have already learned the **cardinal** numbers used in counting from 1–10 (**358**). To show order or succession, other numbers, called **ordinals** (*first, second,* etc.),

are used. The Latin ordinals are declined like **magnus, -a, -um.** Memorize the first ten ordinals as follows:[1]

prī'mus, -a, -um, *first*	sex'tus, -a, -um, *sixth*
secun'dus, -a, -um, *second*	sep'timus, -a, -um, *seventh*
ter'tius, -a, -um, *third*	octā'vus, -a, -um, *eighth*
quār'tus, -a, -um, *fourth*	nō'nus, -a, -um, *ninth*
quīn'tus, -a, -um, *fifth*	de'cimus, -a, -um, *tenth*

Exercise. — Suggest and define one English derivative from as many of these ordinals as possible.

553. Declension of *Duo* and *Trēs*

The cardinal numbers from 4 to 100 are indeclinable. You have learned the declension of **ūnus** (**466**). **Duo**, *two*, and **trēs**, *three*, are declined as follows:

	M.	F.	N	M AND F	N.
Nom.	du'o	du'ae	du'o	trēs	tri'a
Gen.	duō'rum	duā'rum	duō'rum	tri'um	tri'um
Dat.	duō'bus	duā'bus	duō'bus	tri'bus	tri'bus
Acc.	du'ōs	du'ās	du'o	trēs	tri'a
Abl.	duō'bus	duā'bus	duō'bus	tri'bus	tri'bus

554. Declension and Use of *Mīlle*

Mīlle, when used of one thousand, is usually an indeclinable adjective (like **centum**): **mīlle hominēs.** When used of two or more thousands, it is a neuter plural i-stem noun (cf. **mare**, **402**). The word used with the plural forms of **mīlle** must be in the genitive:

[1] For complete list of cardinals and ordinals, see **662**.

duo mīlia hominum (lit., *two thousands of men*), *two thousand men*.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	mīl'le	mī'lia
Gen	mīl'le	mī'lium
Dat	mīl'le	mī'libus
Acc.	mīl'le	mī'lia
Abl.	mīl'le	mī'libus

555. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Nāvī frāctā, omnēs certē interficientur. 2. Duōs optimōs librōs ēmī quōs hāc aestāte legam. 3. Sī plūrimī puerī aut absunt aut tardī sunt, disciplīnam accipere nōn possunt; certō tempore adesse dēbent. 4. Mīlle nautās et trēs firmās nāvēs cum tribus ducibus in maria ultima mīsimus. 5. Post septimam pugnam nōn iam vim nostram hostēs cōnfectī sustinēre poterant et nōbīs sē trādidērunt. 6. Centum mīlia agricolārum, agrīs suīs relictīs, ad oppida contendērunt. 7. Hoc opus quārtā hōrā inceptum octāvā aut nōnā hōrā perficiēmus.



FIG. 179 ROMAN BATHROOM MOSAIC
The bather is advised to "wash well" (bene lavā)

(*b*) 1. Anna was third in rank, but her brother was tenth. 2. The boundaries of two nations extend to the lower part of this river. 3. Three men were killed, and two received wounds in that battle. 4. All the boys easily completed the work in three hours.

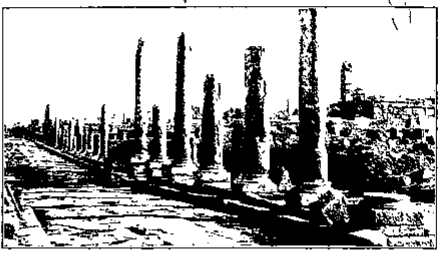


FIG. 180 ROMAN STREET IN TIMGAD, NORTHERN AFRICA

556. RĒGULUS

Contrā Carthāginiēnsēs bellum[1] ā Rōmānīs susceptum erat. Nōnō annō bellī Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, ad Āfricam nāvigāvit et decimō annō hostēs superāvit. Multa mīlia captīvōrum in Italiam mīsit sed ipse in Āfricā remānsit. Contrā trēs Carthāginiēnsium ducēs pugnāns victor fuit. Victī hostēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petīvērunt. Quam[2] Rēgulus dīxit sē nōn datūrum esse nisi dūrissimīs condiciōnibus. Itaque Carthāginiēnsēs

[1] First Punic or Carthaginian War, 264–241 B.C. These wars were for the supremacy of the world Carthage was in northern Africa.

[2] In Latin, a relative is often used at the beginning of a sentence to connect with the preceding sentence. In English, a demonstrative is used instead.

auxilium ā Lacedaemoniīs[1] petīvērunt. Xanthippus[2] dux, quī ā Lacedaemoniīs missus erat, cum quattuor mīlibus equitum et centum elephantīs contrā Rōmānōs prōcessit. Rōmānīs victīs, Rēgulus captus est.

Diū Rēgulus in Āfricā mānsit sed quīntō annō Carthāginiēnsēs superātī eum Rōmam[3] mīsērunt. Eum iussērunt pācem ā Rōmānīs obtinēre et permūtātiōnem captīvōrum facere. Ille prōmīsit, pāce nōn factā, sē ad eōs reversūrum esse.

Itaque Rēgulus ad Italiam nāvigāvit. Ductus in senātum Rōmānum dīxit sē esse captīvum, nōn iam Rōmānum. Itaque etiam uxōrem ā sē remōvit. Dīxit hostēs, frāctōs multīs proeliīs, spem[4] nūllam nisi in pāce habēre; nōn esse ūtile multa mīlia captīvōrum propter sē ūnum, aetāte cōnfectum, hostibus reddī. "Captīvōs Rōmānōs aurō emere nōn dēbēmus," inquit: "nam virtūs eōrum āmissa est, nec vēra virtūs aurō emī potest." Senātus hōc cōnsiliō numquam ante datō permōtus pācem cum hostibus nōn fēcit. Itaque Rēgulus, opere perfectō, in Āfricam revertit et sē Carthāginiēnsibus trādidit, ā quibus omnibus suppliciīs interfectus est.

Haec prīmō bellō Pūnicō accidērunt. Posteā Rōmānī secundum et tertium bellum cum eīsdem hostibus gessērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. How long was Regulus in Africa before he won his first victory? 2. What caused his later defeat? 3. Why did he urge the Romans not to make peace?

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 114–121; Mills, pp. 140–142; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 124–128.

[1] *the Spartans.*
[2] *Xanthippus* (*Zanthip'pus*).
[3] *to Rome.*
[4] *hope.*

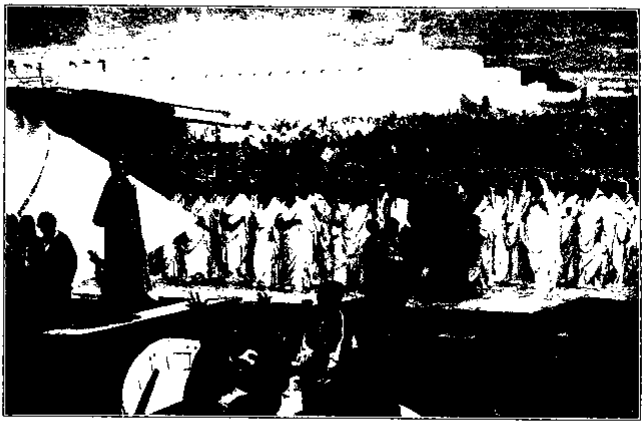


FIG 181. REGULUS LEAVES ROME TO RETURN TO CARTHAGE
From a painting by Maccari in the modern senate house of Rome

EIGHTH REVIEW (LESSONS LXX–LXXV)

557. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. condiciō
2. gēns
3. nēmō
4. opus
5. ōrātiō
6. regiō

Adjectives

7. aptus
8. centum
9. decimus
10. difficilis
11. dissimilis
12. extrēmus
13. humilis
14. inferior
15. nōnus
16. octāvus
17. quārtus
18. quīntus
19. prīmus
20. proprius
21. proximus
22. secundus
23. septimus
24. sextus
25. similis
26. summus
27. suus
28. tertius
29. ulterior
30. ūtilis

Pronoun

31. suī

Numerals

32. centum
33. duo
34. mille
35. trēs

Verbs

36. accidō
37. cadō
38. cōnficiō
39. cōnspiciō
40. crēdō
41. emō
42. explicō
43. fallō
44. frangō
45. instruō
46. interficiō
47. iūdicō
48. ligō
49. perficiō
50. rapiō
51. repellō
52. respondeō
53. statuō
54. sūmō
55. trādō
56. tribuō
57. vincō

Adverbs

58. bene
59. male
60. magis
61. minus
62. multum
63. numquam

Preposition

64. contrā

Conjunction

65. quam

558. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *condition*
2. *tribe, nation*
3. *no one*
4. *work*
5. *speech*
6. *region*

Adjectives

7. *suitable*
8. *hundred*
9. *tenth*
10. *difficult*
11. *unlike*
12. *farthest, end of*
13. *low, humble*
14. *lower*
15. *ninth*
16. *eighth*
17. *fourth*
18. *fifth*
19. *first*
20. *one's own*
21. *next*
22. *second*
23. *seventh*
24. *sixth*
25. *like*
26. *highest, top of*
27. *his own*
28. *third*
29. *farther*
30. *useful*

Pronoun

31. *himself*

Numerals

32. *hundred*
33. *two*
34. *thousand*
35. *three*

Verbs

36. *happen*
37. *fall*
38. *complete, exhaust*
39. *catch sight of*
40. *believe*
41. *buy*
42. *unfold*
43. *deceive*
44. *break*
45. *arrange, provide*
46. *kill*
47. *judge*
48. *tie*
49. *finish*
50. *seize, carry off*
51. *drive back*
52. *answer*
53. *place, determine*
54. *take*
55. *give over, deliver*
56. *bestow*
57. *conquer*

Adverbs

58. *well*
59. *badly*
60. *more*
61. *less*
62. *much*
63. *never*

Preposition

64. *against*

Conjunction

65. *than*

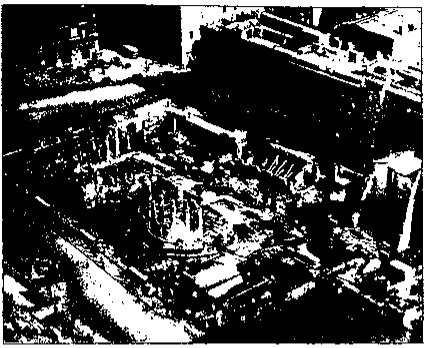


FIG 182 ANCIENT TEMPLES IN MODERN ROME

In 1926 the widening of the narrow street at the left was begun in this busy section When stores and other buildings were torn down, remains of four ancient temples (one round) were found, and the street could be widened only a little. The crowd is waiting for a bus

559. Word Studies

(*a*) Give the Latin words suggested by the following English derivatives:

accident, appropriate, conditional, conspicuous, credible, fallacious, implicate, instructive, ligature, opera, proximity, rapture, regional, redemptive, repulsive, tribute, victor

(*b*) From the following French numerals obtain the Latin cardinal numbers from which they are derived and rearrange in the proper sequence:

trois, sept, un, cinq, quatre, dix, huit, neuf, deux, six

(*c*) From the following English words derive the Latin ordinal numerals and arrange them in the proper sequence:

tertiary, quintuplet, quartet, secondary, octavo, primary, decimate

What three ordinal numbers are not represented? Add these to complete the series 1–10.

(*d*) Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **nāvigō, doceō, vincō, sūmō.**

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

560. Indirect Statement: General Review

1. The following verbs, already studied, are used to introduce indirect statements. Review their meanings and quote the rule (see **490**).

iūdicō, nūntiō, putō, spērō; memoriā teneō, respondeō, videō; cognōscō, crēdō, dīcō, scrībō; audiō, inveniō, sciō, sentiō.

Summary

In Latin	*In English*
(*a*) No conjunction is used.	(*a*) "That" is regularly used.
(*b*) The subject is in the accusative.	(*b*) The subject is in the nominative.
(*c*) The verb is in the infinitive.	(*c*) The verb is in the indicative.

561. Noun and Adjective Review

Decline **ūtilior liber, certior condiciō, melior regiō, aptissima ōrātiō, maxima gēns, optimum opus.**

Remember that most third declension adjectives are i-stems, *i.e.* they have -ī in the ablative singular, -ia in the neuter nominative and accusative plural, and -ium in the genitive plural. *The chief exceptions are comparatives, none of which are* i-*stems.* Present participles are i-stems but have -e in the ablative singular when used as verbs, not adjectives.

562. Rapid-Fire Drill

Give in Latin:

(*a*) *more difficult* in the nom., sing. and plur.
(*b*) *most beautiful* in the gen., sing. and plur.
(*c*) *rather long* in the dat., sing. and plur.
(*d*) *very useful* in the acc., sing. and plur.
(*e*) *too easy* in the abl., sing. and plur.

563. Verb Review

(*a*) Give the principal parts of **cōnficiō, īnstruō, cadō, crēdō, repellō, sūmō, frangō, perficiō, possum.**

(*b*) Give a synopsis of the following verbs in the third plural, indicative active, doing all the verbs in one tense before proceeding to the next tense (*e.g.* **iūdicant, respondent,** etc.): **iūdicō, respondeō, emō, rapiō,** and **audiō.**

564. Rapid-Fire Drill

(*a*) ~~State tense, mood, and voice~~: cōnficiēmus, interficiunt, sūmite, ligāns, respondēre, victus, raptūrus, iūdicāte, repelle, cecidisse, plicābō, tribuēbant, cōnspiceris, perficientur, īnstrue.

(*b*) Give in Latin: to have caught sight of, to be going to drive back, to be broken, to have been finished.

LESSON LXXVI

565. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Cont.*)

Caesaris Triumphus

Quondam pater Lūcī ā Forō revertit et dīxit triumphum Caesaris futūrum esse et posteā magnōs lūdōs. C.[1] Iūlius Caesar tum erat maximus Rōmānōrum. Galliam, Alexandrīam, Pontum, Āfricam vīcerat. Decem annōs in Galliā ēgerat et, multīs mīlibus hostium repulsīs, illam regiōnem in prōvinciam Rōmānam redēgerat. Pompeius,[2] cum Caesare prō summā potestāte contendēns, in fugam datus erat. Tum Caesar in Aegyptum prōcesserat et, Alexandrīnīs[3] pulsīs, Cleopātrae nōmen rēgīnae Aegyptiōrum dederat. In Asiā rēgem Pontī celeriter vīcerat et ex eius rēgnō nōtās illās litterās mīserat in quibus erant sōla verba, "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Nunc futūrī erant quattuor triumphī, quod Caesar dē bellīs reverterat.



FIG 183 JULIUS CAESAR

WAITING

Lūcius numquam triumphum vīderat et dē eō multa rogāvit. Pater eī dīxit triumphum esse similem pompae in Circō habitae et Caesarem per Circum et Sacram

[1] C. = Gāius. [2] *Pompey.* [3] *the people of Alexandria.*

Viam ad Capitōlium prōcessūrum esse. Lūcius permōtus vix exspectāre poterat. Sed omnia ad eum quī exspectat veniunt; tempus triumphōrum aderat. Prīmus et clārissimus triumphus quem Caesar ēgit erat Gallicus. Pater Lūcī cognātus Caesaris erat et optima loca obtinuit. Ubi Caesar in Campō Mārtiō[1] mīlitēs īnstrūxit et ex praedā eīs praemia tribuit, pompa tardē prōcēdere incipit.

"Here They Come!"

Post longum tempus (ut[2] Lūciō vīsum est) pompa aderat. Prīmī fuērunt cōnsulēs et senātōrēs, post quōs vēnērunt cornicinēs, quī Lūciō grātissimī fuērunt. Tum cōnspexit titulōs[3] ducum oppidōrumque captōrum cum fōrmīs exemplīsque[4] oppidōrum. Dē nōminibus nōn nōtīs multa rogāvit: "Quī sunt Aquītānī? Quī sunt Belgae?" Pater respondit: "Gallia est omnis dīvīsa[5] in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam eī quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae." "Quī sunt Helvētiī?"[6] "Helvētiī statuērunt per prōvinciam nostram iter facere quod maiōrēs fīnēs habēre cupīvērunt, sed ā Caesare prohibitī sunt." "Quis est Ariovistus?" "Ariovistus erat superbus rēx Germānōrum, ā Caesare ex Galliā expulsus." "Quī sunt Germānī?" "Maxima pars Germānōrum trāns Rhēnum flūmen incolunt.[7] Etiam trāns Rhēnum Caesar mīlitēs suōs trādūxit et cum Germānīs

[1] *Campus Martius (Mar'shus)*, a park in Rome [2] *as*
[3] *placards* (with names of towns, etc.). [4] *models* (of wood, etc.)
[5] From *dīvidō*. Use derivative. [6] *Helvetians (Helvē'shans)*
[7] In Latin a plural verb may be used when the subject is grammatically singular but refers to more than one.

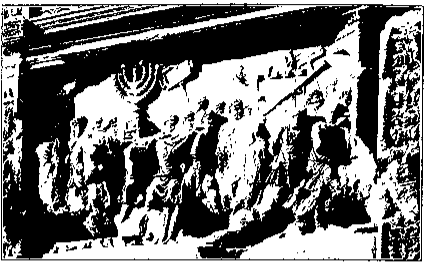


FIG. 184. TRIUMPHAL PROCESSION, ARCH OF TITUS, ROME

Note the famous seven-branched candlestick from the temple at Jerusalem, captured by Titus in 70 A.D.

contendit." "Quid est Britannia?" "Britannia est extrēma īnsula, ā barbarīs culta, in quam Caesar cōpiās bis dūxit."

HAIL! THE CONQUERING HERO COMES!

Posteā Lūcius cōnspexit arma captōrum prīncipum et prīncipēs ipsōs ligātōs, inter quōs erat Vercingetorīx. Nunc populus maximē clāmat. "Quis est ille?" rogat Lūcius. Pater respondet: "Ille est ultimus dux Gallōrum, quī victōs Gallōs ad bellum permōvit. Pompā ad Capitōlium accēdente, interficiētur." Nunc clāmōrēs audiuntur: "Caesar adest! Caesar adest!" Currus imperātōris, quattuor equīs trāctus, cernitur. Caesar ipse togam pictam[1] gerit et scēptrum tenet. In currū[2] stat servus corōnam super Caesaris caput tenēns. Sed

[1] *embroidered* (with gold). [2] Ablative.

subitō omnēs terrentur: axe frāctō, Caesar paene ē currū cadit. Hic sōlus nōn commōtus est. Dum novum currum exspectat, Lūcium cōnspicit et eum rogat: "Tū, quis es?" Lūcius respondet: "Ego sum Lūcius Iūlius, cognātus tuus. Mīles erō et multās gentēs vincam." Caesar rīdēns eius caput tetigit et dīxit: "Bene incipis. Putō tē imperātōrem futūrum esse." Pompa rūrsus prōcēdit, et nunc mīlitēs Caesaris accēdunt, clāmantēs, "Iō triumphe![1] Iō triumphe!" Etiam carmina canunt. Inter alia Lūcius haec audit:

"Ecce Caesar nunc triumphat quī subēgit Galliās."
Itaque omnēs discēdunt, Lūciō clāmante, "Iō triumphe! Iō triumphe!"



FIG. 185. TRIUMPHAL CHARIOT

[1] Exclamation: *Triumph!*

566. Vocabulary

ae'tās, aetā'tis, f., *age, time of life*	(eternal)
attin'gō, -ere, at'tigī, attāc'tus, *touch, reach*	[*tangō*]
exer'ceō, -ē're, -er'cuī, -er'citus, *keep busy, train*	(exercise)
exīs'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *think, consider*	[***aestimō***, *estimate*]
in'colō, -ere, -co'luī, -cul'tus, *dwell, inhabit*	[*colō*]
intel'legō, -ere, -lē'xī, -lēc'tus, *understand*	(intellect)
iun'gō, -ere, iūn'xī, iūnc'tus, *join (to)*	(junction)
***mēn'sis, mēn'sis, mēn'sium,** m., *month*	
vir'tūs, virtū'tis, f., *manliness, courage*	[*vir*]

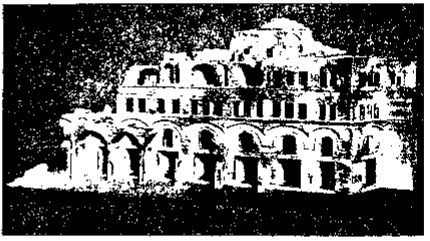


FIG 186 MODEL OF ANCIENT ROMAN APARTMENT HOUSE
The ruins of this building are at the foot of the Capitoline Hill.

567. English Word Studies

(*a*) Most of the names of our states are Indian, but several of them are of Latin origin or form. Vermont means *green mountain* (**viridis mōns**), Pennsylvania is *Penn's woods* (**silva**), Virginia is the *maiden's* land (named after Queen Elizabeth, the virgin queen),

Florida is the *flowery* land (flōs, flōris), Colorado is the land of the *colored* or *red* river, Montana is *mountainous* (mōns), Nevada is the land of *snow* (nix, nivis), and Rhode Island is said to be named after the Greek island of Rhodes, meaning *rose*. New Jersey means "New Caesarea," named after the island of Jersey, one of many places named in honor of one of the Caesars. The titles *Kaiser* and *Czar* also come from Caesar.

Names whose endings only are Latin are Carolina (Charles II), Georgia (George II), Louisiana (Louis XIV), and Indiana.

(*b*) Explain *conjunction, adjunct, intelligible, repellent, distraction.*

568. Accusative of Extent

Duōs annōs remānsit, *He remained two years.*
Flūmen decem pedēs altum est, *The river is ten feet deep.*

Observe that

(*a*) **duōs annōs** answers the question, *How long?*
(*b*) **decem pedēs** answers the question, *How much?*
(*c*) both express *extent* by the accusative;
(*d*) the English and Latin constructions are identical and are not to be confused with the direct object.

569. Rule. — *Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative.*

570. Stop! Look! Think!

The following words, which have already been used, closely resemble one another in form or sound and must be carefully distinguished. For difference in meaning, see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

aetās, aestās	cīvis, cīvitās	ob, ab
accēdō, accidō	gēns, genus	pars, pār
alius, alter, altus	ibi, ubi	pōnō, possum
cadō, cēdō	līber, lĭber, lĭberī	vīs, vir

571. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Exīstimō hunc montem esse mīlle pedēs altum, illud flūmen duōs pedēs altum. 2. Nōnne intellegis virtūtem hōrum puerōrum maximam esse? 3. Illī hominēs multōs mēnsēs sē exercuērunt et nunc plūrimum valent. 4. Ille vir maximam aetātem attigit, sed nōn iam vīrēs habet nec bene vidēre potest. 5. Multa mīlia Germānōrum, quī trāns flūmen Rhēnum incoluerant, pāce factā, Rōmānīs sēsē iūnxērunt. 6. Ego exīstimō nōs in illō locō duōs annōs remānsisse, sed frāter meus dīcit nōs ibi trēs annōs remānsisse.

(*b*) 1. My brother will arrive next year and remain with me[1] the whole summer. 2. The greater part of the winter we remain in town, but in summer we hasten to the fields. 3. We understand that you have been training yourselves for many months. 4. The longest months are the first, the third, the fifth, the seventh, the eighth, the tenth, and the twelfth.[2]

572. MARIUS

C. Marius, vir humilis generis, ob ēgregiam virtūtem cōnsul ā Rōmānīs factus est. Plūrimī cīvēs exīstimāvērunt eum esse maximum imperātōrem aetātis suae; nōs hoc intellegere facile possumus.

Iugurthā,[3] rēge Numidiae, victō, Marius bellum con-

[1] See page 159, footnote 1. [2] duodecimus. [3] *Jugur'tha.*

trā Cimbrōs et Teutonēs[1] suscēpit. Hī, quī extrēmōs fīnēs Germāniae incoluerant, Cimbrīs sē iūnxerant. Multōs mēnsēs hae duae gentēs novās sēdēs quaesīverant et prōvinciam Rōmānam attigerant, quam eō tempore acerrimē oppugnābant. Tribus ducibus Rōmānīs ā barbarīs pulsīs, Marius mīlitēs trēs annōs exercuit et Teutonēs sub Alpibus proeliō superāvit.



FIG. 187 MARIUS

Cimbrī nihil dē victōriā Rōmānōrum audīverant et per lēgātōs agrōs sibi et Teutonibus petīvērunt. Marius rīdēns, "Illī quidem tenent," inquit, "semperque tenēbunt terram ā[2] nōbīs acceptam." Proximō annō contrā eōs pugnāvit. Nec minor erat pugna cum uxōribus eōrum quam cum virīs. Victae sē līberōsque suōs interfēcērunt.

Multōs annōs Rōmānī hōs barbarōs timuerant sed post hanc victōriam Alpēs Rōmam ā perīculō prohibēbant.

Thought Questions. — 1. What was the cause of the war with the Cimbri and Teutons? 2. Which did Marius defeat first? Where? 3. What part did the wives of the Cimbri play in the war?

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 148–155; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 155–158; Mills, pp. 215–221.

[1] *Cimbri* (*Sim'brī*), *Teu'tons.* [2] *from.*

LESSON LXXVIII

573. Vocabulary

cir'cum, prep. with acc., *around*

* **mors, mor'tis, mor'tium**, f., *death* (mortal)

negō'tium, negō'tī, n., *business* [*ōtium*]

post'quam, conj., *after* [*post* + *quam*]

potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., *power, authority, chance* [*possum*]

prae, prep. with abl., *before, in front of*

praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send ahead* [*mittō*]

sa'tis, adv. and indecl. adj, *enough* (satisfaction)

su'per, prep. with acc., *over, above* [*superō*]

super'sum, -es'se, -fuī, -futū'rus, *be left (over), survive* [*sum*]

574. Latin and English Word Formation

Ne- is sometimes used as a negative prefix in Latin: **nēmō** (ne-homō), **negōtium** (ne-ōtium), **neuter** (ne-úter), **nūllus** (ne-üllus).

Circum, contrā, prae, and **super** have their usual meanings when used as prefixes in Latin and English. In English **prae** becomes *pre-*, as *pre-pare, pre-fix;* **contrā** sometimes retains its form, sometimes becomes *counter-*, as *contra-dict, counter-act.* **Super** sometimes becomes *sur-* in English, in which case it must be distinguished from assimilated **sub**: *surplus, surmount.*

Exercise. — Find ten English words with these prefixes, compounded with Latin words which you have studied.

575. *Post, Posteā,* and *Postquam*

The conjunction **postquam,** meaning *after,* must be distinguished carefully from the adverb **posteā,** meaning *afterwards,* and the preposition **post,** meaning *after* (with acc.). Examine the following:

1 **Post hunc mēnsem plūrēs librōs legam**, *After this month I shall read more books.*

2 **Posteā multōs librōs lēgī**, *Afterwards I read many books.*

3. **Postquam opus perfēcī, multōs librōs lēgī**, *After I finished the work, I read many books.*

Note that

(*a*) the addition of **quam** to **post** makes **postquam** a conjunction, which is followed by a verb, usually in the perfect indicative;

(*b*) **posteā**[1] means literally *after that*, hence *afterwards;*

(*c*) the real difficulty is in the English use of *after*, as both a conjunction and a preposition.

576. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Quis cōnspexit nautās nāvigantēs "plānīs" (in locō nāvium) super caput? 2. Post labōrēs bellī omnēs perpetuam pācem spērant. 3. Postquam mīlitēs servōs hostium cōnspexērunt, eōs cēpērunt et circum viās prae sē ēgērunt. 4. Cui hoc difficile negōtium posteā mandātūrus sum, sī ego ipse hoc nunc nōn suscipiam? 5. Postquam hostēs ā mīlitibus praemissīs victī sunt, paucī superfuērunt. 6. Postquam decimum annum attigī, exīstimāvī mē nōn iam esse sub potestāte patris meī, sed mē fefellī. 7. Post mortem patris ego et frātrēs meī nōn iam in hōc locō satis commodē habitāre poterāmus.

(*b*) 1. After the boy fell into the river, his sister ran shouting to her mother. 2. After the eighth year of the war, we enlisted 100,000 men. 3. The first horse which I bought was better than I expected, but the second was not good enough. 4. After the death of his father, my friend alone was left.

[1] Sometimes **post** is used as an adverb like **posteā**.

577. MARIUS ET SULLA

Postquam Rōmānī vīdērunt necesse[1] esse bellum cum Mithridāte gerere, hoc negōtium Sullae commīsērunt. Sed postquam Sulla ex urbe discessit, Marius, quī ipse cupīvit hoc negōtium super omnia suscipere, summam potestātem obtinuit. Posteā Sulla, quī ex Italiā nōndum discesserat, cum mīlitibus suīs ad urbem vēnit et eam armīs occupāvit. Marius in Āfricam fūgit. Sulla, cōpiīs praemissīs, paucōs mēnsēs Rōmae[2] mānsit. Sed postquam Sulla ad bellum discessit, Marius in Italiam ab amīcīs vocātus Rōmam vāstāvit. Omnēs nōbilēs variīs suppliciōrum generibus affēcit.



FIG 188. SULLA

Quattuor annōs Sulla cum Mithridāte bellum gessit. Post mortem Marī in Italiam revertit. Omnēs hostēs prae sē agēns, circum multa oppida cōpiās suās dūxit. Dictātor factus, multa mīlia cīvium interficī iussit. Amīcus eum monuit: "Nōnne satis est? Sī omnēs interficiēs, et nēmō supererit, quōrum cīvium dictātor eris?"

Thought Questions. — 1. What was the cause of the quarrel between Marius and Sulla? 2. When did Sulla return to Italy?

Read Haaren and Poland, pp 162–170; Harding, pp. 170–172; Mills, pp. 223–231; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 158–164.

[1] *necessary* (indeclinable). [2] *at Rome.*

LESSON LXXIX

578. Vocabulary

cā'sus, –ūs, m., *fall, chance, accident*	[*cadō*]
cruciā'tus, –ūs, m., *torture*	[*crux, cross*]
dē'serō, –ere, –se'ruī, –ser'tus, *desert*	[*serō, weave, join*]
dēspi'ciō, –ere, –spe'xī, –spec'tus, *look down on, despise*	[*speciō*]
do'mus, –ūs,[1] f., *house, home*	(domestic)
exer'citus, –ūs, m., (*trained*) *army*	[*exerceō*]
im'petus, –ūs, m., *attack*	[*petō*]
iū'rō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *swear*	[*iūs*]
ma'nus, –ūs, f., *hand, group, force*	(manual)
pen'dō, –ere, pepen'dī, pēn'sus, *hang, weigh, pay*	(pendant)

579. English Word Studies

In two earlier lessons (**169, 176**) we saw how many English words are simply the base of a Latin noun, adjective, or verb, or the base plus silent –e. A great many such words are derived from the Latin words in this book. A few are *par, facile, prīme, just, cede, part.* In the case of verbs, the base of the present indicative, present participle, or perfect participle, or of all three, may furnish an English word: *convene, convenient, convent; remove, remote; refer, relate.*

As previously noted, there are sometimes changes in the base, *e.g.* the dropping of one of two final consonants, as in *remit, expel,* and particularly the addition of a vowel to the main vowel of the word, as in the following (the added vowel is underlined): *peace, mount, reign, remain. Contain, retain,* etc., are from the compounds of **teneō**.

Exercise. — Find ten more words illustrating these principles.

[1] Usually has abl. sing. domō and acc. plur. domōs (**654**).

580. Fourth Declension

We have seen that nouns of the first three declensions are distinguished by the ending in the genitive singular — first declension, **-ae**, second declension, **-ī**, third declension, **-is**. The majority of Latin nouns belong to these three declensions. A few nouns, however, have **-ūs** in the genitive singular and belong to **the fourth declension.** Many are derived from verbs.

	Case Endings		cāsus, *chance* (base, cās-)	
Nom.	-us	-ūs	cā'sus	cā'sūs
Gen.	-ūs	-uum	cā'sūs	cā'suum
Dat.	-uī	-ibus	cā'suī	cā'sibus
Acc.	-um	-ūs	cā'sum	cā'sūs
Abl.	-ū	-ibus	cā'sū	cā'sibus

581. Gender. — Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are mostly masculine; the only exceptions in this book are **manus** and **domus**, both of which are feminine.

582. Drill. — Decline **exercitus noster, hic impetus fortis.**

583. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Iūrāvit per (*by*) deōs sē numquam dēsertūrum esse amīcōs suōs. 2. Omnēs cīvēs cruciātū in suīs domibus ā barbarīs interfectī sunt. 3. Maiōrēs gentēs lībertātem iūraque minōrum populōrum dēspicere nōn dēbent. 4. Postquam cāsus ducī nūntiātus est, ille mortem suā manū petīvit. 5. Exercitus noster impetum in (*on*) ōrdinēs Gallōrum fēcit et celeriter eōs in fugam dedit. 6. Paucī cūrās cāsūsque vītae

leviter dēspicere possunt. 7. Magnamne pecūniam prō eō librō quem manū tenēs pependistī?

(*b*) 1. Soldiers, make an attack upon that small force of the enemy. 2. Death brought about by torture is the worst of all misfortunes. 3. He has sworn that he will make an attack upon the enemy at the third hour. 4. The house was deserted; I could see nothing. I touched a body with my hand and shouted.

584. GRACCHĪ

Ti. et C. Gracchī Scīpiōnis Āfricānī nepōtēs erant. Dīligentiā Cornēliae mātris puerī doctī sunt. Cornēlia crēdidit eōs certē summam potestātem obtentūrōs esse. Quondam hospita,[1] domō Cornēliae petītā, ōrnāmenta sua pulcherrima manū prae sē tenēns ostendēbat. Tum Cornēlia līberōs suōs, quī cāsū aderant, hospitae mōnstrāns dīxit: "Haec sunt mea ōrnāmenta!"

Tiberius iam vir plēbī amīcus erat. Tribūnus plēbis factus[2] agrōs populō dabat. Hī agrī pūblicī erant sed multōs annōs ā nōbilibus occupātī erant. Nihil nōbilēs prō eīs pependerant. Tum senātōrēs convocātī dē Tiberiō cōnsuluērunt. Multī eum dēspexērunt et eum cruciātū interficere cupīvērunt. Tiberiō accēdente, Scīpiō Nāsīca,[3] senātor, clāmāvit: "Venīte mēcum sī rei[4] pūblicae salūtem cupitis." Tum omnēs in Tiberium impetum fēcērunt et eum interfēcērunt.

Posteā in somnō Gāius vīdit frātrem suum, quī dīxit: "Cūr dubitās, Gāī? Tū, quī superes, vītam tuam populō dare dēbēs." Itaque Gāius iūrāvit opus Tiberī sē perfectūrum esse neque eius cōnsilia dēsertūrum.

[1] *guest.* [2] 133 B.C. [3] *Nasi'ca.* [4] Genitive of rēs.



FIG. 189. "HAEC SUNT MEA ORNAMENTA"

Tribūnus factus frūmentum plēbī dabat et cīvitātem omnibus quī Italiam incolēbant. Sed sine exercitū nihil efficere potuit; fugere coāctus interfectus est.

Itaque senātōrēs mortem Gracchōrum effēcērunt. Sed cōnsilia hōrum mānsērunt, et Rōmānī eōs multōs annōs memoriā tenuērunt.

Thought Questions. — 1. Who was the grandfather of Gaius Gracchus? 2. Who was the teacher of Tiberius Gracchus? 3 What was the political policy of Gaius?

Read Mills, pp. 199–208; Harding, pp. 158–165; Haaren and Poland, pp. 142–147; Guerber (*Story*), pp. 146–152.

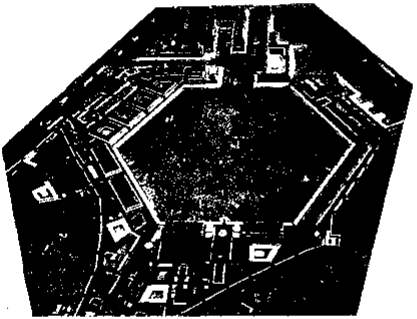


FIG. 190. MODEL OF TRAJAN'S HARBOR AT OSTIA

Gift of Italy to the Century of Progress, Chicago, now in the Classical Museum of the University of Chicago. The buildings are mostly warehouses for wheat imported to feed the people of Rome

LESSON LXXX

585. Vocabulary

dēmōns'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *point out, show* [*mōnstrō*]
dē'sum, dees'se, dē'fuī, dēfutū'rus, *be lacking* (with dat.) [*sum*]
ex'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *pile up, build up* [*struō*]
impe'rium, impe'rī, n., *command, power* (imperial)
lēgā'tus, -ī, m., *envoy, lieutenant general* [*lēgō, appoint*]
no'ceō, -ē're, no'cuī, nocitū'rus, *do harm (to), harm* (with dat.) (innocent)
praefi'ciō, -ere, -fē'cī, -fec'tus, *put in charge of* (with acc and dat.) [*faciō*]
prae'sum, -es'se, -fuī, -futū'rus, *be in charge of* (with dat.) [*sum*]
red'dō, -ere, red'didī, red'ditus, *give back, deliver* [*dō*]
***urbs, ur'bis, ur'bium,** f., *city* (suburban)

586. Latin and English Word Formation

We have seen (183) that when a Latin word is compounded with a prefix, a short **-a-** or **-e-** is usually changed to short **-i-**. Similarly, **-ae-** is changed to long **-ī-**. From **aestimō** we have **exīstimō**; from **aequus, inīquus.**

-Au- is often changed to **-ū-** in compounds: **accūsō** is from **causa**; **interclūdō** and **exclūdō** are from **claudō** (English *recluse*, etc.).

Exercise. — Illustrate these rules by further examples of English derivatives of **quaerō** and **claudō.**

587. Idioms

Review the idioms **committere proelium, alius . . . alius, aliī . . . aliī, alter . . . alter, summus mōns, extrēma via.** Memorize the following new idioms:

1 **certiōrem eum facere dē**, *to inform him about;* as, **Fēcī eōs certiōrēs dē itinere**, *I informed them about the road* (what literally?).

2. **quam**, when used with the superlative of an adjective or adverb, means *as . . . possible.* Cf. **quam plūrimī**, *as many as possible;* **quam celerrimē**, *as quickly as possible*

588. *To* with Verbs of Motion

The dative is essentially the "to" or "for" case. We have noticed, however, that when *to* implies literally *motion toward* a place or person, the accusative is used. The following are "motion verbs," previously studied, that take the accusative with **ad** or **in**:

accēdō, cēdō, contendō, dūcō, fugiō, mātūrō, mittō, moveō, nāvigō, portō, prōcēdō, prōdūcō, properō, redigō, redūcō, trānsportō, veniō

589. Dative of Indirect Object: A Summary

When *to* or *toward* does not imply literal motion but indicates the person *to whom* something is given or *toward whom* a benefit, injury, feeling, or quality is directed, the dative must be used. The following verbs, already familiar, are transitive and admit an accusative of the *direct object* and a dative of the *indirect object*:

committō, dīcō, dō, dōnō, iungō, mandō, mōnstrō, nūntiō, ostendō, permittō, prōpōnō, reddō, relinquō, respondeō, submittō, trādō, tribuō

Some of these verbs have as the direct object either a neuter pronoun or an infinitive: **dīcō, respondeō, nūntiō.**

Other verbs rarely take any case but the dative: **noceō.**

590. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Puerī quī prae sē equōs agēbant, nōbīs vīsīs, quam celerrimē cōnstitērunt. 2. Dēmōnstrā mihi illum librum quem tibi reddidī. 3. Virum quī huic operī praefuit illī urbī praeficiam. 4. Lēgātus Rōmānus agricolās certiōrēs fēcit exercitum suum agrīs domibusque eōrum nōn nocitūrum esse. 5. Sī reliquam partem aestātis cōpiam māteriae exstruētis, hieme cōpia vōbīs nōn deerit. 6. Postquam Rōmānōs ex hīs regiōnibus expulērunt, ipsī sub imperium Rōmānum redāctī sunt. 7. Castrīs nostrīs cōnfectīs, hostēs in nōs impetūs nōn iam facient.

(*b*) 1. Show him your new books; he will not harm them. 2. We shall put this general in charge of that province and he will send grain to the city. 3. We shall inform you about all (things). 4. Answer our letters. Write as clearly as possible.

591. SCĪPIŌ

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, puer duodēvīgintī annōrum, patrem, quī graviter vulnerātus erat, servāvit.[1] Post pugnam Cannēnsem,[2] in quā Rōmānī gravissimē victī sunt, omnibus probantibus, Scīpiōnī, puerō vīgintī annōrum, summum imperium datum est. Postquam sex annōs in Italiā exercituī praefuit, Rōmānī eum cōpiīs Hispānīs praefēcērunt. Ille in Hispāniam statim prōcessit et urbem Carthāginem Novam diē[3] quō vēnit expugnāvit. Quīnque annīs exercitūs hostium ex His-

[1] In the Second Punic War, the greatest of the three wars against Carthage, 218–201 B.C.

[2] *of Cannae* (*Căn'ē*).

[3] Ablative.

pāniā expulit. Nihil eius famae deesse vīsum est: dēmōnstrāverat cīvibus suīs Carthāginiēnsēs vincī posse et Hispāniam populō Rōmānō reddiderat. Neque aurum sibi exstrūxerat neque miserīs nocuerat.

Hispāniā pācātā, Scīpiō in Āfricam prōcessit et ibi Carthāginiēnsēs victōriīs terruit. Tum illī, lēgātīs in Italiam missīs, Hannibalem ad patriam revocāvērunt. Sed Scīpiō eum Zamae[1] vīcit, et ille, clārissimus et maximus omnium ducum quī contrā Rōmānōs pugnāvērunt, ex patriā in exsilium fūgit. Scīpiō ob hanc victōriam Āfricānus appellātus est.

Thought Questions. — 1. How old was Scipio when he went to Spain? 2. How long did he stay there? 3. Why was Scipio called Africanus?

Read Haaren and Poland, pp. 122–134; Harding, pp. 135–146.

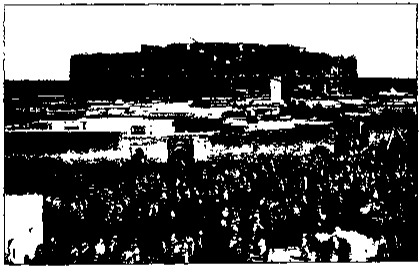


FIG. 191. ROMAN AMPHITHEATER AT EL DJEM, TUNISIA

This Arab village, once a Roman colony, is 75 miles from Zama. The Arabs are having a market day.

[1] *at Zama* (202 B.C.).

592. Vocabulary

au'tem, conj. (never first word), *moreover, on the other hand*
dī'ēs, diē'ī, m., *day* (diary)
ignō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *be ignorant of, not know* [*nōscō*]
interclū'dō, -ere, -clū'sī, -clū'sus, *shut off, cut off* [*claudō*]
lūx, lū'cis, f., *light* (translucent)
prīn'ceps, prīn'cipis, m., *first man, chief, leader* [*primus* + *capiō*]
rēs, re'ī, f., *thing, matter, affair* (real)
senā'tus, senā'tūs, m., *senate* (senatorial)
spe'ciēs, speciē'ī, f., *appearance, pretense, kind* [*speciō*]
spēs, spe'ī, f., *hope* [*spērō*]

593. English Word Studies

(*a*) English words which preserve the forms of the Latin fourth declension are: **census, consensus, impetus, prospectus, status, apparatus** (plural **apparatuses** or **apparatus**; the latter preserves the Latin plural). Note that **consensus** (from **sentiō**) is spelled with an **-s-** but **census** (from **cēnseō**) with a **-c-**. An ablative form is seen in **impromptu**.



FIG 192. DANCING DWARF

The fifth declension is represented by **rabies, series, species**. The last two are used in the plural with no change of form (as in Latin).

The accusative singular is represented by **requiem**, the ablative by **specie**, and the ablative plural by **rebus**.

A.M., ante **meridiem**, *before midday;* **P.M.**, post **meridiem**, *after midday;* **M.**, **meridiēs**, *midday.*

(*b*) Latin Phrases in English

cāsus belli, *an occasion for war.*

in statū quō, *in the situation in which (it was before)*: **status quō**, *the situation in which (it was before).*

bonā fidē, *in good faith*

prīmā faciē, *on the first face (of it)*; e g *prima facie* evidence.

sine diē, *without a day (being set)*; used of adjournment by a parliamentary body.

Explain **post mortem**, **per diem**, **sui generis.**

594. Fifth Declension

The last of the noun declensions includes comparatively few words. **Rēs** and **diēs**, however, occur constantly and should be memorized. Other nouns of the **fifth declension**, as a rule, have no plural: all are feminine except **diēs**, which is usually masculine.

Case Endings			**diēs**, *day* (base, **di-**)		**rēs**, *thing* (base, **r-**)	
	Sing	Plur				
Nom.	**-ēs**	**-ēs**	di'ēs	di'ēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	**-ēī**	**-ērum**	diē'ī	diē'rum	re'ī	rē'rum
Dat.	**-ēī**	**-ēbus**	diē'ī	diē'bus	re'ī	rē'bus
Acc.	**-em**	**-ēs**	di'em	di'ēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	**-ē**	**-ēbus**	di'ē	diē'bus	rē	rē'bus

Observe that **-e-** appears in every ending and that in **diēs** it is long in the genitive and dative singular, though preceding a vowel (617).

595. Drill. — Decline **rēs similis, ūna spēs, diēs longus, senātus minor, melior lūx.**

596. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Noster exercitus maiōrem partem nōnī diēī in castrīs remānsit, quod nūllam spem victōriae habuit. 2. Gallī autem, hīs rēbus cognitīs, trāns flūmen ante lūcem diēī trāductī, nōs interclūsērunt. 3. Amīcus certus in rē incertā cernitur. 4. Memoria diēī bene āctī est per sē satis magnum praemium. 5. Dēmōnstrāvī illum prīncipem nocuisse senātuī populōque Rōmānō. 6. Quid significant (*mean*) hae litterae, in signīs Rōmānīs vīsae, "S. P. Q. R."? Rogā magistrum tuum sī ignōrās. 7. Speciēs illōrum barbarōrum mē puerum terrēbat et multōs annōs in memoriā haerēbat.

(*b*) 1. A wretched man is always urged-on by the hope of better days. 2. Under the pretense of friendship he proposed very good terms, but we did not believe him (*dāt.*). 3. By chance I heard our leader say that there was no hope of peace before the seventh month. 4. Most (men) are deceived by the appearance of things; a few, on the other hand, see things clearly.

597. DĒ SCĪPIŌNE

Multae rēs dē Scīpiōne Āfricānō nārrantur. Ōlim ille oppugnābat oppidum mūnītum in quō erant multī mīlitēs interclūsī et magna cōpia frūmentī. Scīpiō exīstimābat oppidum capī posse, sed paucī eandem spem habuērunt. In castrīs Scīpiō iūs dīcēbat,[1] et ex eō locō oppidum vidērī poterat. Ūnus ē mīlitibus quī ante eum stābat rogāvit: "Quō diē locōque iubēs hunc

[1] *was administering justice.*

hominem[1] ad tē venīre?" Tum Scīpiō manum ad oppidum ipsum tetendit et iussit eum hominem in illō oppidō tertiō diē esse. Ita rēs facta est; tertiō diē oppidum captum est eōdemque diē ibi ille iūs dīxit.

Contrā auctōritātem senātūs Scīpiō exercitum in Āfricam trādūxit et bellum cōnfēcit.

Id autem dīcī potest quod trāditum est ab eīs quī dē vītā et rēbus gestīs Āfricānī scrīpsērunt. Saepe ante prīmam lūcem hīc princeps populī Rōmānī in Capitōlium veniēbat et ibi sōlus multās hōrās manēbat. Eī quī ignōrābant putāvērunt Scīpiōnem hanc rem ad speciem facere; alīī autem crēdidērunt eum dē salūte cīvitātis deum cōnsulere.

Thought Questions. — 1. Where did Scipio conduct the trial? 2. What explanations were given of Scipio's visits to the temple?

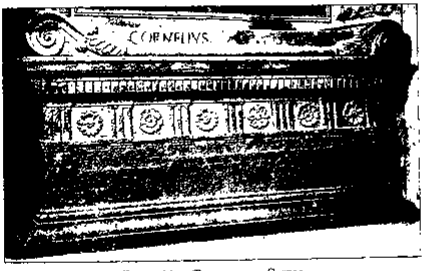


FIG. 193. TOMB OF A SCIPIO

This stone coffin of the great-grandfather of Scipio Africanus was found in the family tomb on the Appian Way.

[1] The man was charged with an offense. The trial was set for the third day after.

LESSON LXXXII

598. Vocabulary

am'plus, –a, –um, *large, great, distinguished*	(amplify)
a'pud, prep. with acc., *among*	
ascen'dō, –ere, ascen'dī, ascēn'sus, *climb (up), ascend*	[*scandō, climb*]
dī'vidō, –ere, dīvī'sī, dīvī'sus, *separate, divide*	(division)
explō'rō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *investigate, explore*	[*plōrō, call out*]
familiā'ris, –e, (*belonging to the family*), *friendly*, as noun, m., *friend*	[*familia*]
*frōns, fron'tis, fron'tium, f., *forehead, front*	(frontal)
im'perō, –ā're, –ā'vī, –ā'tus, *command, order* (with dat of person)	[*imperium*]
ra'tiō, ratiō'nis, f., *account, plan, manner, reason*	(rational)

599. Latin and English Word Formation

The suffixes **–ilis** and **–bilis** are added to verb stems to form adjectives. They indicate what *can be done:* **facilis** is "doable," *easy*. The suffix **–ilis** usually becomes *–ile* in English: *facile, fertile*. The more common suffix **–bilis** becomes *–ble, –able, –ible* in English: *noble, credible, terrible, amiable, visible, comparable.*

Several suffixes meaning *pertaining to* are added to nouns and adjectives to form adjectives: **–āris** (English *–ar*), **–ārius** (*–ary*), **–ānus** (*–an, –ane*), **–icus** (*–ic*). Examples of their use in Latin and English are: **familiāris**, *singular;* **frūmentārius**, *ordinary;* **Rōmānus**, *human, humane;* **pūblicus**, *generic.*

The suffix **–tūdō** (English *–tude*) is added to adjective stems to form nouns and means *state of being:* **magnitūdō**, *magnitude.*

Exercise. — Find fifteen other examples of these suffixes in English words derived from Latin words already studied.

600. Genitive and Ablative of Description

1. **virī magnae virtūtis**, *men of great courage*
2. **spatium decem pedum**, *a space of ten feet.*
3. **hominēs inimīcō animō**, *men with* (or *of*) *an unfriendly spirit.*

Observe that in English we may say *men of* or *with an unfriendly spirit.* Both are descriptive. Note also that description is similarly expressed in Latin, *i.e.* either by the genitive or the ablative, but only when modified by an adjective.

While the **genitive** and the **ablative of description** are translated alike, the Latin confines the genitive largely to expressions of *measure and number* (see 2) and the ablative to *physical qualities.*

601. Exercises

(*a*) 1. Mārcus erat puer magnā grātiā apud familiārēs suōs. 2. Lēgātus Gallōrum fuit vir amplissimō genere. 3. Posteā explicābō tibi ratiōnēs quās in animō habeō. 4. Hāc aestāte ascendam montem decem mīlium pedum. 5. Frontem huius montis nōn poterō ascendere, quod ea est praeceps et difficillima. 6. Eum montem sōlī virī maximae virtūtis explōrāvērunt. 7. "Dīvide et imperā" erat cōnsilium Rōmānōrum.

(*b*) 1. After a journey of two days, we arrived at (ad) a very beautiful city. 2. We all know that Italy has been separated from Gaul by very high mountains. 3. The general whom Caesar put-in-charge-of the army was a man of great influence among the Gauls. 4. Do you desire to climb a mountain which has never been explored?

602. CATŌ ET SCĪPIŌ

M. Catō, vir humilī genere, ad summōs honōrēs per sē ascenderat. Hic Scīpiōnī, virō amplissimā familiā, inimīcus erat. Itaque iussit familiārem suum Petīlium[1] in senātū petere et explōrāre ratiōnēs pecūniae praedaeque captae in bellō cum Antiochō[2] ā Scīpiōne gestō. Hōc modō senātum in duās partēs dīvīsit, ūnam quae Scīpiōnī nocēre cupiēbat, alteram quae eum virum maximae virtūtis esse crēdēbat. Tum Scīpiō, cuius īra ex fronte gravī clārē cernī poterat, librum ostendit et dīxit:



FIG 194 SENĀTUS

The new senate house at Rome, built by Caesar near the old one. This building, used as a church for centuries, was recently restored

"In hōc librō ratiōnēs scrīptae sunt omnis pecūniae omnisque praedae quam accēpī. Hic est diēs quō mihi in animō erat[3] ratiōnēs apud vōs legere. Nunc autem, quod Petīlius imperat, id nōn faciam."

Hōc dictō, librum suīs manibus dīscidit.[4]

Thought Questions. — 1. In what respect were Cato and Scipio unlike? 2. Why did Scipio tear the book in pieces?

[1] *Petil'ius.* [2] *Anti'ochus,* a Syrian king
[3] **mihi . . . erat,** *I intended.* [4] *tore in pieces.*

NINTH REVIEW (LESSONS LXXVII–LXXXII)

603. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. aetās	7. exercitus	13. mēnsis	19. rēs
2. cāsus	8. imperium	14 mors	20 senātus
3. cruciātus	9. impetus	15. negōtium	21. speciēs
4. diēs	10. lēgātus	16. potestās	22 spēs
5. domus	11. lūx	17. princeps	23. urbs
6. frōns	12 manus	18. ratiō	24. virtūs

Adjectives

25. amplus 26. familiāris

Verbs

27. ascendō	34. exerceō	40 incolō	46. pendō
28. attingō	35. exīstimō	41. intellegō	47. praeficiō
29. dēmōnstrō	36. explōrō	42. interclūdō	48. praemittō
30. dēserō	37. exstruō	43. iungō	49. praesum
31 dēspiciō	38. ignōrō	44. iūrō	50. reddō
32. dēsum	39. imperō	45 noceō	51. supersum
33. dīvidō			

Adverb

52. satis

Prepositions

53. apud	55. prae
54. circum	56. super

Conjunctions

57. autem 58. postquam

604. Vocabulary Review

Nouns

1. *age*
2. *chance, accident*
3. *torture*
4. *day*
5. *home*
6. *front*
7. *army*
8. *command*
9. *attack*
10. *envoy, general*
11. *light*
12. *hand*
13. *month*
14. *death*
15. *business*
16. *power*
17. *chief*
18. *account, plan*
19. *thing*
20. *senate*
21. *appearance*
22. *hope*
23. *city*
24. *courage*

Adjectives

25. *great, distinguished*
26. *friendly*

Verbs

27. *ascend*
28. *reach*
29. *point out*
30. *desert*
31. *look down on*
32. *be lacking*
33. *separate*
34. *train*
35. *think*
36. *explore*
37. *pile up*
38. *not know*
39. *command*
40. *dwell*
41. *understand*
42. *shut off*
43. *join*
44. *swear*
45. *do harm to*
46. *hang, pay*
47. *put in charge of*
48. *send ahead*
49. *be in charge of*
50. *give back*
51. *be left over*

Adverb

52. *enough*

Prepositions

53. *among*
54. *around*
55. *in front of*
56. *above*

Conjunctions

57. *moreover*
58. *after*

605. English Word Studies

Find and use in sentences as many English derivatives as possible from **pōnō**, **veniō**, and **pellō**.

Enter the derivatives in your notebook, using a separate page for each Latin word.

606. Noun and Adjective Review

Decline **magna virtūs, mors tarda, lēgātus optimus, diēs longus, maxima potestās, urbs nōbilis.**

607. Verb Review

1. Give a synopsis of (*a*) **noceō**, 1st sing., indic. act.; (*b*) **trādō**, 2d sing., indic. pass.; (*c*) **praeficiō**, 3d sing., indic. act.; (*d*) **dēmōnstrō**, 3d sing., indic. pass.; (*e*) **mūniō**, 3d plur., indic. pass.; (*f*) **supersum**, 3d plur., indic.

2. Conjugate **possum** throughout.

3. **Rapid-Fire Drill on Verb Forms.** — *Locate the form:* praemīsit, frēgerant, exīstimābō, incoluisse, iūnctūrus esse, exercērī, interclūdēns, dēserunt, redde, dēmōnstrāte, explōrārī, dīvidī, imperāns.

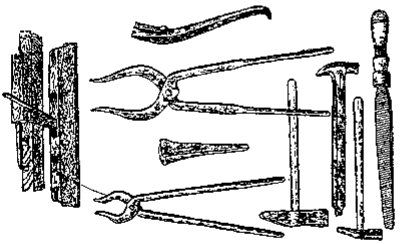


FIG. 195. ROMAN TOOLS

These tools and many others were found in a Roman fort in Germany

608. Final Pronoun Drill and Review

Review sections **272**, **321**, **337**, **435**, **448**, **455**, **460**, and **543**. Translate the underlined words:

1. We often admire the most those whom we know the least.
2. Whose book is this? Whose (*plur.*) horses are those?
3. At what time did you arrive?
4. The sailor himself told it to me.
5. That is the same speech that I heard before.
6. What did he tell you? Did he tell him the same thing?
7. I remember you, but you don't remember me.
8. The number of those who flatter is legion.
9. Who will tell us the name of the boy by whom his sister and I have been rescued?
10. Who were the men whom we saw that day, to whom you handed the contract?



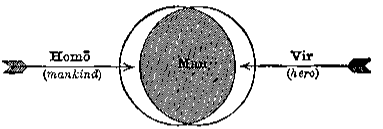
FIG. 196. A ROMAN WEDDING

From a copy of an ancient wall painting.

LESSON LXXXIII

609. Synonyms

We rarely find a word in any language which has exactly the same meaning as another word. Words which have almost the same meaning are called synonyms. The diagram may help you to remember the margin of difference between the synonyms **homō** and **vir**, which are often confused.



The following synonyms have occurred in previous vocabularies:

1. **ante**, *before* (of time and place), adverb or preposition (with accusative).
 prae, *before* (of place only), preposition (with ablative).
2. **terra**, *land* (as opposed to water), then some particular *land* or *country*.
 fīnēs, *borders*, hence a *land* or *country* with reference to its boundaries.
 patria, *fatherland*, the *land* of one's birth.
3. **dux** [dūcō], *a leader* in any field, but often in a military sense.
 prīnceps [prīmus + capiō], the *first* or *chief* man in a group — usually nonmilitary.
4. **videō**, *see*, the most general word.
 cernō, *see clearly*.
 cōnspiciō, *catch sight of*.

5 **labor**, *hard work, toil, suffering.*
opus, usually *a piece of work.*
negōtium, *lack of leisure* [ōtium], *business.*
6. **potestās**, *power* in general, *opportunity.*
auctōritās, *influence.*
rēgnum, *royal power.*
imperium, *military power, command.*



FIG. 197. WEARERS OF THE TOGA
From an ancient relief on the Altar of Peace at Rome

610. THE STORY OF LUCIUS (*Concluded*)

Cīvis Novus Iter Facit

Iam Lūcius aetātem quīndecim annōrum attigerat. Nunc pater eius dīxit eum dēbēre proximīs Līberālibus[1] togam praetextam dēpōnere et virīlem togam sūmere. Hōc tempore plūrimī puerī Rōmānī togās

[1] The Liberalia, a festival held March 17.

praetextās dēpōnēbant. (Puerī Rōmānī togās praetextās gerēbant, sed virī tōtās albās gerēbant. Brācae, quae ā virīs nunc geruntur, ā barbarīs, nōn ā Rōmānīs, illīs diēbus gerēbantur.)

The New Citizen

Līberālia aderant. Multī amīcī convēnērunt. Lūcius, postquam mōrem antīquum servāns togam praetextam ante Larēs posuit, novam virīlem togam sūmpsit. Omnēs familiārēs cum eō ad Forum pedibus prōcessērunt, et posteā ad Capitōlium, ubi nōmen eius ad numerum cīvium ascrīptum est. Nunc poterat dīcere, "Cīvis Rōmānus sum!" Tum omnēs cum Lūciō domum[1] revertērunt, ubi optima cēna parāta erat. Multī cibī dē ultimīs terrīs portātī erant, alī dē Graeciā, alī dē Asiā, alī dē Āfricā. Hospitēs cēnam variō sermōne prōdūxērunt et cum Lūciō dē officiīs cīvium, dē bellō et pāce, dē negōtiīs, dē multīs aliīs rēbus ēgērunt. Lūcius nunc intellēxit mūnera et officia cīvis Rōmānī.

The Journey

Paulō[2] post Lūcius, iam vir, cum patre iter fēcit. Itaque per portam Capēnam ex urbe discessērunt. Raedā ibi inventā, in Appiā Viā prōcessērunt. Sepulchrīs ad viam vīsīs, Lūcius dīxit: "Pater, cūr sepulchra ad viās pōnuntur? Hoc numquam intellegere potuī." Pater respondit: "Hōc modō omnēs ea vidēre possunt." Lūcius dīxit sē nocte inter sepulchra iter facere nōn cupere.

[1] *Place to which* is expressed without a preposition with domum: *home.* [2] *shortly.*

Good Roads and Great Men

Quod iter facile et commodum erat, Lūcius dīxit: "Nōnne exīstimās Appiam Viam optimam omnium esse?" Pater respondit: "Omnēs nostrae viae optimae sunt. Ob eam causam hostēs vīcimus, potestātem nostram auximus, et nunc gentēs regimus. Aliī īmāginēs pulchriōrēs pingunt, aliī ōrant[1] causās melius, sed nōs regimus populōs." "Etiam causās optimē ōrāmus," respondit Lūcius. "Quis melior ōrātor fuit aut est aut erit quam Cicerō? Hic ōrātor etiam cōnsul fuit et populum Rōmānum rēxit. Ego eum ōrātiōnem habentem in Forō audīvī et eius ōrātiōnēs in lūdō lēgī." "Lēgistīne ōrātiōnēs in Catilīnam, illum quī cīvitātem ēvertere statuit?" "Illās et aliās lēgī. In prīmā dīxit dē Catilīnā: 'Ō tempora! Ō mōrēs! Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit.'" "Optimē!" dīxit pater. "In secundā, sī rēctē memoriā teneō, dīxit, postquam Catilīna ex urbe exiit: 'Abiit, excessit, ēvāsit,[2] ērūpit![3] Ex Cicerōnis linguā fluēbat ōrātiō dulcior quam mel."

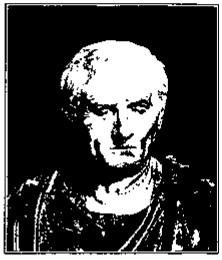


Fig. 198. M. Tullius Cicerō

Scenes by the Way

Tum altōs et pulchrōs arcūs[4] aquaeductūs[5] cernunt,

[1] *plead.* [2] Ēvādō, ēvāsus — derivative? [3] Ērumpō, ēruptus — derivative? [4] Accusative plural. [5] Genitive singular.

quī optimam aquam dē montibus in urbem dūcunt. Pater Lūciō dīxit prīmum aquaeductum ab Appiō factum esse. Appius fuit ille quī Appiam Viam mūnīvit. Ita prōcēdunt, nunc agrōs et vīllās, montēs silvāsque spectantēs, nunc hominēs frequentēs in viā ipsā, quōrum alīī pedibus prōcēdēbant, alīī aut equō aut raedā aut lectīcā ferēbantur.

Epilogue

Nōn iam vīvunt Lūcius et eius amīcī, nōn iam vīvunt Caesar et Cicerō, virī clārissimī, sed lingua eōrum vīvit, vīvunt eōrum dicta et facta, lēgēs et mōrēs, glōria et fāma. Haec omnia in eōrum librīs inveniuntur. Īīs quī itinera parva per illōs librōs faciunt Rōmānī ipsī vīvere videntur.

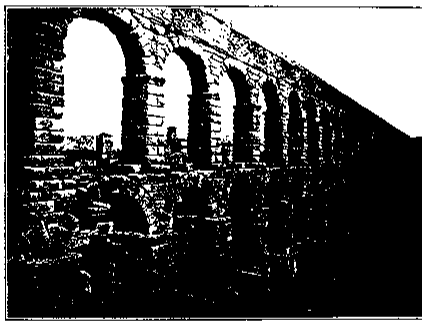


Fig. 199. Aquaeductus
Roman aqueduct at Segovia, Spain.

611. GLIMPSES OF ROMAN LIFE

(*a*) Dress

The most obvious difference between ancient and modern clothing was that civilized men did not in the old days wear trousers. These garments were worn only by barbarians. After the barbarians destroyed the Roman Empire, their garb became the fashion for all Europe. The same is true of the mustache (without beard). No Roman ever wore one, and it was just as much the mark of the barbarian as trousers were. Down to the second century A.D. most Romans were smooth shaven.

All Roman men wore as an outer garment a long shirt called a tunic, made of white wool. Senators and knights had crimson stripes down the front and back. A belt was worn over this, and the upper part was bloused out over the belt. When a Roman was engaged in some active occupation, he pulled his tunic up to his knees. Such a garment alone was worn in the house.

Over the tunic the Roman citizen might wear the toga. This garment was the official dress of Roman citizens, and only citizens were allowed to wear it. It was made of white wool. The toga of boys and magistrates had a crimson border. When boys grew up, they changed to the plain white toga. Important citizens always wore this garment when appearing in public, but the ordinary Roman wore it much less frequently.

The toga was really a sort of blanket which was thrown over the left shoulder, pulled across the back

and under the right arm, and again thrown over the left shoulder. It was not fastened in any way, and it must have been quite a trick to learn to wear it.

Roman women also wore a tunic. Over this the married women wore a **stola,** a long dress with a flounce at the bottom. For street wear a shawl, called a **palla,** was used.

Wool was the chief material for clothing; next came linen. Silk was rare and expensive, while cotton was almost unknown.

In the house men and women wore sandals or slippers; outdoors they wore shoes. Those of magistrates were red. No stockings were worn, though in cold weather old and sickly people sometimes wound cloth around their legs, like the puttees of soldiers.



FIG. 200 ROMAN SANDAL
Found in England.

Hats were rarely worn, except on journeys. Such as there were had broad brims and were flat. Women often wore ribbons and elaborate pins in their hair. Styles in hairdressing changed constantly as with us, but bobbed hair was unknown among adult women.

Read Showerman, pp. 56–64; McDaniel, pp. 81–93; Johnston, chap. VII; Mills, pp. 309–312.

(*b*) Food and Meals

The easiest way to give an idea of Roman foods is by listing some important foods which were unknown to the Romans: potatoes, tomatoes, bananas, oranges,

sugar, coffee, tea. Butter was rarely used, except externally as a sort of salve or cold cream. Milk and cheese were freely used. Instead of sugar, honey was used for sweetening. The extensive use of honey made beekeeping a very important occupation. Wheat bread baked in round loaves (Fig. 128) was the "staff of life." Cabbage, onions, beans were among the chief vegetables. Apples, pears, grapes, olives were the chief fruits. The **mālum Persicum** (from which our word *peach* is derived) was, as its name shows, originally brought from Persia.

Much use was made of salads of various kinds, as is true in Italy today. Hence one reason for the importance of olive oil. This was used also in cooking, instead of butter, and in lamps.

The favorite meat was pork. Various kinds of fowl and birds were eaten, even peacocks by the wealthy classes. Fish and oysters became extremely popular.

Besides milk and water the chief drink of the Romans was wine. There were many grades of native and imported wines. They were usually mixed with water when drunk at meals.

Breakfast was a simple meal, chiefly of bread. In the country, dinner (**cēna**) was at noon, but in the city this was postponed till early evening. Instead there was a luncheon (**prandium**) at midday or somewhat earlier.

The dinner consisted of a course of relishes (lettuce, onions, eggs, oysters, asparagus, etc.), called the **gustus** (*taste*), followed by the chief course (meat, fish, or fowl and vegetables), then the dessert, called the **secunda mēnsa** (*second table*), of fruit, nuts, and sweets. The

Latin expression **ab ōvō usque ad māla**, *from eggs to apples*, meaning from beginning to end, shows what the usual relishes and desserts were. Wine was served with the meal.

The guests reclined on couches instead of sitting on chairs. There were couches along three sides of the rectangular table, each with room for three people. As the guests reclined on their left elbows, only their right hands were free. Forks were rarely used. Food was taken up with the fingers or with spoons. Meat was cut up before being served. Though much use was made of the fingers, we may well imagine that people of culture ate quite as daintily as we do who have forks to help us.

Read Showerman, pp 124–136; McDaniel, pp. 120–136.



FIG. 201. ROMAN CHILDREN'S TUNICS
Found in Egypt; now in the Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto.

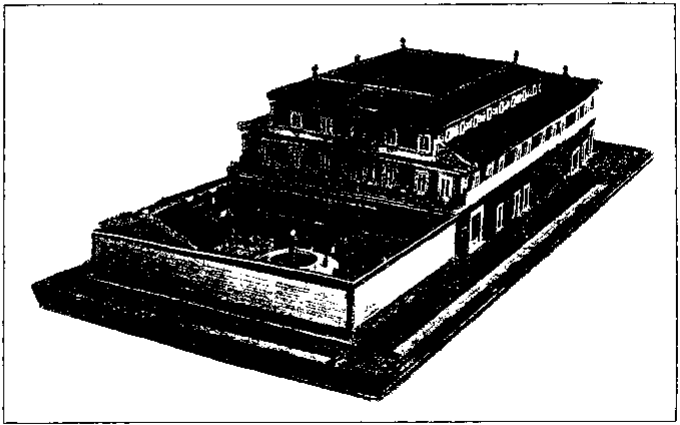


Fig. 202 Model of a Pompeian House in the Metropolitan Museum, New York

612. **SĀTURNĀLIA**

Persōnae

Geta, *callidissimus servōrum*	Hector, *maximus servōrum*
Bellus, *pulcherrimus servōrum*	Boadīx, *coquus*
L. Calpurnius, *dominus*	Aliī servī

TEMPUS. Decembrī. LOCUS: in aedibus L. Calpurnī. (*Servī accēdunt.*)

Servī. Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia! Iō Sāturnālia! (*Boadīx ā sinistrā parte accēdit, currēns*)

Boadīx. Quid est? Quem clāmōrem audiō? Quid accidit? Quis interfectus est?

Servī. Ho, ho, ho! Coquus est.

Bellus. Nōnne pulcher est? Quam gravis est! Eō currente, audīre vidēmur — montem cadentem!

Servī. Ha, ha!

Boadīx. Quid? Montem cadentem? Ubi?

Hector. Mōns nōn cadit; stupidus es.

Geta. Sāturnālia adsunt. Nōnne Sāturnālia in Galliā, tuā patriā, erant?

Boadīx. Quae sunt? Nūlla coxī.

Servī. Ha, ha! "Coxī!"

Geta. Sāturnālia! — Sunt septem diēs quibus deō Sāturnō honōrēs dōnantur —

Boadīx. Septem diēs! Deī Superī! Cūr rīdētis? Abīte,[1] aut vōs omnēs interficiam.

Hector. Quid? Properāre nōn dēbēs.

Boadīx. Diēbus quibus deīs honōrēs dōnantur, tum labor coquī maximus est. Cūr tantum clāmōrem

[1] *Be off!*

fēcistis? Cūr nōn licet dominō nostrō ex memoriā hōs diēs dēpōnere? Cūr —

Geta. Sed hīs diēbus servī līberī sunt. Rēgem habent, ē numerō servōrum dēlēctum. Rēx domum regit. Nūllus labor est.

Boadīx. Coquīs labor semper est. Abīte!

Hector. Nunc nōn est tempus labōris. Tē teneō. Sī nōbīscum Sāturnālia nōn clāmābis, — in viam tē ēiciēmus.

Bellus. Eat[1] stupidus ad labōrem.

Geta. Eat.

Boadīx. Poenam dabitis, — pessimī. (*Exit*)

Geta (*Hectorī*). Eat, — nam dē graviōribus rēbus agere dēbēmus.

Hector. Dē graviōribus quam dē Boadīce agere nōn possumus. Ha, ha!

Geta (*Hectorī*). Nōnne tū cōnfīdis tē rēgem futūrum esse?

Servī. Iō Sāturnālia!

Hector. Rēgem?

Geta. Rēgem familiae, — servum quī reliquōs servōs Sāturnālibus regit.

Hector. Mē?

Geta. Tē. Maximus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dīxit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse.

Hector. Dīxitne?

Geta. Dīxit. Sed Bellus putat sē rēgem futūrum esse.

Hector. Bellus? Puer est. Rēx nōn erit.

Geta. Tū rēx eris. Iō Sāturnālia!

Hector et reliquī servī. Iō Sāturnālia!

[1] *Let him go.*

Geta (*Bellō*). Nōnne tū cōnfīdis tē rēgem familiae futūrum esse?
Bellus. Mē?
Geta. Tē. Pulcherrimus servōrum es. Dominus tē amat. — Mihi dīxit tē sibi cārissimum servōrum esse. Sed Hector putat sē rēgem futūrum esse.
Bellus. Hector? Nōn pulcher est.
Hector. Servī! Nōnne mē audītis?
Servī. Audīmus.
Hector. Rēx familiae erō.
Bellus. Quid? Ego rēx erō.
Hector. Puer es.
Bellus. Tē nōn timeō. Tē interficiam.
Hector. Tē in viam ēiciam.
Bellus. Em!
Hector. Em tibi! (*Pugnant*)
Servī. Bellus vincit. Bene, Hector! Bellus eum interficiet. Iō!

(*Calpurnius ā dextrā parte, Boadix ā sinistrā parte accēdunt*)

Calpurnius et Boadix. Quid hoc?
Servī. Dominus adest. Illī tamen pugnant.
Calpurnius. Quid hoc? Librum meum legere nōn possum.
Geta (*Calpurniō*). Diū pugnāvērunt. Ego eōs dēsinere pugnāre iussī, sed mihi nōn pāruērunt. Sī mē rēgem familiae faciēs, mihi pārēbunt. Rēx bonus erō. —
Calpurnius. Oho! Rēx familiae!
Hector et Bellus. Mēne vocās? Ōh! Dominus est.

Calpurnius. Ha, ha! Rēgem familiae dēligere dēbeō. In memoriā nōn habēbam. Dēligō —

Hector et Bellus et Geta. Mē.

Calpurnius. Dēligō servum mihi cārissimum et optimum, —— coquum.

Servī. Coquum!

Calpurnius. Boadīx, rēx es. Em, vidēsne? Haec pecūnia tua est. Sī servī tibi pārēbunt, eīs partem dā. Sed in memoriā tenē tē rēgem esse. Bene rege. Iō Sāturnālia! (*Exit*)

Boadix. Rēx nunc sum. Vōs omnēs nunc mihi auxilium dabitis. Meus labor vester est. Iō Sāturnālia!

—— Cūr nōn iam Sāturnālia clāmātis?

Servī. Ōh! Ōh! Sāturnālia dūra.

(*Exeunt*)



Fig 203. Ancient Foods Found in Pompeii



FIG. 204. A SHOP IN POMPEII AS IT USED TO BE

APPENDIX

PRONUNCIATION[1]

613. Vowels

In English and Latin, the vowels are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*.[2]

At one time the English vowels were pronounced like the Latin, but the pronunciation of English has changed greatly. In French, Spanish, Italian, German, etc., which also have adopted the Latin alphabet, the vowels are still pronounced substantially as in Latin.

Each of the Latin vowels may be pronounced long or short, the difference being one of *time*. This is called **quantity**. In addition, all the long vowels except a have a different *sound* from the short vowels. This is called **quality**. The pronunciation is as follows:

(*a*) LONG	SHORT	LONG AND SHORT AS IN
ā as in *father*	**a** as first *a* in *aha*	*Martha* (ā, ă)
ē as in *they*	**e** as in *let*	*lateness* (ē, ĕ)
ī as in *police*	**i** as in *bit*	*seasick* (ī, ĭ)
ō as in *rope*	**o** as in *for*	*phonograph* (ō, ŏ)
ū as in *rude*	**u** as in *full*	*two-footed* (ū, ŭ)

In this book long vowels are regularly marked –; short vowels are usually unmarked, but ˘ is sometimes used.

(*b*) **Caution.** — It is very important to distinguish the *sounds* of the long and short vowels. For a person to say, *I heard the din in the hall*, when he meant the "dean," or *I forgot the debt*, when he meant the "date," is no worse than to confuse ī and ĭ, ē and ĕ in Latin.

The English equivalents of e and o are only approximate. Avoid pronouncing ŏ like *o* in *not* or in *note*.

[1] The best way to learn correct pronunciation is by careful imitation of the teacher; the rules are given for reference.

[2] In English sometimes also *y*, as in *by*, but not in *you*.

614. Diphthongs

The first three of the following **diphthongs** (two vowels making one sound) are the ones most commonly used:

ae like *ai* in *aisle*
au like *ou* in *out*
oe like *oi* in *oil*
ei like *ei* in *freight*
eu like *eh–oo* (pronounced quickly)
ui like *oo–ee* (pronounced quickly); only in **cui** and **huic**

615. Consonants

All letters other than vowels and diphthongs are **consonants.**

The Latin consonants have, generally speaking, the same sounds as in English. The following differences, however, should be noted:

b before **s** or **t** has the sound of **p.**
c is always hard as in *cat*, never soft as in *city*.
g is always hard as in *go*, never soft as in *gem*.
i (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *year*.
(i is a consonant between vowels and before a vowel at the beginning of a word.)
s always has the sound of *s* in *sin;* never of *s* in *these*.
t always has the sound of *t* in *ten;* never of *t* in *motion*.
v has the sound of *w* in *will*.
x has the sound of *x* in *extra*.
(**ch** = **k**; **ph** = **p**; **th** = **t**)
Doubled consonants are pronounced separately: **an'–nus.**

In both English and Latin the combination **qu** forms a single consonant and the **u** is not a vowel.

616. English Pronunciation of Latin. — The above method of pronunciation is the ancient Roman method. It should be remembered, however, that Latin words which have become thoroughly English should be pronounced as English words; *e.g.* in *terra firma*, the *i* is pronounced as in *firm*, not as in *miracle;* in *alumni*, the *i* is pronounced as in *mile*.

617. Quantity of Vowels

The quantity (and quality) of vowels must be learned as part of the word. There are, however, a few general rules:

1. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h** (because **h** is weakly sounded).

2. A vowel is short before **nt**, **nd**, and final **m** and **t**.

618. Syllables

Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **vir–tū′–te**, **proe′–li–um.**

A single consonant between two vowels or diphthongs is pronounced with the second: **fī′–li–us**, **a′–git.** Compound words are divided into their component parts and are exceptions to this rule: **ad′–es.**

When two or more consonants occur between vowels or diphthongs, the division is made before the last consonant: **por′–tus**, **vinc′–tī**, **an′–nus.** An exception to this rule occurs whenever a mute (**p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **g**) is followed by a liquid (**l**, **r**), in which case the mute combines with the liquid and both are pronounced with the second vowel: **pū′–bli–cus**, **cas′–tra.**

The next to the last syllable of a word is called the **penult**; the one before the penult (*i.e.* the third from the end) is called the **antepenult.**

619. Quantity of Syllables

Some syllables of course take longer to pronounce than others, just as some vowels are longer than others.

1. A syllable is *naturally* long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.

2. A syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the double consonant **x** (= cs).

Note. — Exception is made in the case of a mute followed by a liquid (see **618**). **H** is so weakly sounded that it does not help make a syllable long

Caution. — Distinguish carefully between long syllable and long vowel; in **ĕxĕm'plum** the first two syllables are long, though the vowels are short.

620. Accent

The accented syllable of a word is the one that is pronounced with more stress or emphasis than the others; so in the word *an'swer*, the accent is on the first syllable. In Latin the accent is easily learned according to fixed rules:

1. Words of two syllables are accented on the first. **frā'ter.**

2 Words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult **lēgā'tus, exem'plum; dī'cĕre, si'milis.**



FIG 205 ROMAN TOILET ARTICLES

Brush, combs, pins, mirror, rouge jar with cover.

BASIC GRAMMAR

The material here given may be reviewed in connection with the Lessons. For the use of those who prefer to review Basic Grammar before taking up the Lessons, a number of explanations are given here which will also be found in the body of the book. Teachers can easily devise English exercises for drill with classes which need it. The sentences on these pages may be used for that purpose.

621. The Sentence. Subject and Predicate

A **sentence** is a group of words which completely express a thought. Every sentence consists of two parts — the **subject** about which something is said and the **predicate** which says something about the subject. *The sailor* (subject) *saved the girl* (predicate), **Nauta puellam servávit.**

A subject or predicate is said to be **modified** by those words which are closely associated with it.

622. Parts of Speech

The words of a language are divided, according to their use, into eight classes called **parts of speech.** These are:

Nouns	Verbs	Prepositions
Pronouns	Adverbs	Conjunctions
Adjectives		Interjections

623. Nouns

A **noun** (from Latin **nōmen,** *name*) is a word that names a person, place, or thing: *Anna,* **Anna**; *island,* **īnsula**; *letter,* **littera.**

Nouns may be classified as:

a. **Common** (applied to any one of a class): *city,* **urbs**; *girl,* **puella.**

b. **Proper** (applied to a particular one of a class): *Rome,* **Rōma**; *Julia,* **Iūlia.**

Note. — Proper nouns always begin with a capital letter.

624. Pronouns

A pronoun (Latin **prō**, *for*, **nōmen**, *name*) is a word used instead of a noun. The noun whose place is taken by a pronoun is called an **antecedent** (Latin **ante**, *before*; **cēdere**, *go*). There are five classes of pronouns:

a. **Personal** pronouns distinguish the three persons: the person speaking (*I*, **ego**; *we*, **nōs** — first person), the person spoken to (*you*, **tū**, **vōs** — second person), the person or thing spoken of (*he*, **is**; *she*, **ea**; *it*, **id**; *they*, **eī** — third person).

b. **Interrogative** pronouns are used to ask questions: *who*, **quis**; *which*, *what*, **quid**.

c. **Relative** pronouns relate to a preceding (antecedent) word and join to it a dependent clause; *who*, **quī**; *which*, *what*, *that*, **quod**.

d. **Demonstrative** pronouns point out persons or objects definitely — often accompanied with a gesture; *this*, **hic**; *that*, **ille**; *these*, **hī**; *those*, **illī**.

e. **Indefinite** pronouns refer to persons or objects in an indefinite way. *some one*, *some*, *any*, *anyone*, **aliquis**; *no one*, **nēmō**; *each*, *everyone*, **quisque**.

625. Adjectives

An **adjective** is a word used to describe or limit the meaning of a noun or pronoun:

a. **Descriptive** adjectives are either common or **proper**: *good*, **bonus**; *Roman*, **Rōmānus** (see **623** *a*, *b*, and **Note**).

b. **Limiting**:

1. **Article** — **definite** (*the*), **indefinite** (*a*, *an*). There is no word in Latin for "the" or "a."
2. **Numerals** — **cardinals** (*one*, *two*, *three*, etc., **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, etc.), **ordinals** (*first*, *second*, *third*, etc., **primus**, **secundus**, **tertius**, etc.)
3. **Possessive** adjectives (formed from personal pronouns): *my*, *mine*, **meus**; *our*, *ours*, **noster**; *your*, *yours*, **tuus**, **vester**; *his*, *her*, *its*, **eius**; *their*, *theirs*, **eōrum**.

When interrogative, relative, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns (**624**) are used as adjectives, they are called respectively:

4. **Interrogative** adjectives: *what street!* **quae** via?
5. **Relative** adjectives: *He spent a year in Italy, in which country he saw many beautiful things,* Annum in Italiā **ēgit, in *quā*** terrā **multa** pulchra **vidit.**
6. **Demonstrative** adjectives: ***that** road,* **illa** via.
7. **Indefinite** adjectives: ***some** boy,* **aliquis** puer.

In English the demonstrative adjectives are the only ones that have different forms in the singular and plural: *this, these; that, those.*

626. Verbs

A verb is a word used to tell something about a subject; it expresses either action or situation: *He fought,* ***Pugnābat;*** *He is good,* **Bonus *est.***

a. According to use, verbs are either **transitive** or **intransitive.**

1. A **transitive** verb (Latin trāns, *over;* īre, *go, pass*) is one in which the action expressed by the verb passes over to a receiver: *Anna* ***is carrying*** *water,* **Anna *aquam portat.***
2. An **intransitive** verb is one whose action does not pass over to a receiver: *Anna* ***is working,*** **Anna *labōrat.***

Contrast "set" (transitive) with "sit" (intransitive), and "lay" (transitive) with "lie" (intransitive).

b. Intransitive verbs are either **complete** or **linking** (copulative).

1. A **complete** verb is one which is complete in meaning without an object or other word: ***He sails, Nāvigat.***
2. A **linking** verb is one which links a noun or adjective to the subject: *They* ***are good,*** **Bonī *sunt.***

The chief linking verbs in English are *be, appear, seem, become, feel, look, taste, smell.*

c. An **auxiliary** verb (Latin **auxilium,** *help*) is one used in the conjugation of other verbs: *I* ***am*** *learning;* ***Did*** *you see? They* ***have*** *given.*

627. Adverbs

An **adverb** is a word used to modify the meaning of a verb, adjective, or other adverb: *He is working* ***now,*** ***Nunc*** **labōrat.**

628. Prepositions

A **preposition** is a word used to show the relation of a noun or pronoun, called its **object**, to some word in the sentence: *He sails to the island, Ad* **insulam nāvigat.** The preposition is said to **govern** its object.

629. Conjunctions

A **conjunction** is a word used to join words, groups of words, and sentences. Conjunctions may be classified according to their use as:

a. **Coördinate,** connecting words or sentences of equal rank (*and,* et; *but,* sed; *or,* aut; *nor,* neque).

b. **Subordinate,** connecting a subordinate part of a sentence with a principal part (*if,* sī; *while,* dum; *because,* **quod,** etc.).

c. **Correlative,** used in pairs (*both . . . and,* et . . . et; *neither . . . nor,* neque . . . neque, etc.).

630. Interjections

An **interjection** is a word used to show emotion. It has no direct relation to any other word in the sentence: *O! Alas! Ah! Oh!*

631. Inflection

The change of form which words undergo to indicate differences in use is called **inflection**: *boy — boys,* puer — **puerī**; *see, saw, seen,* **videō, vīdī, visus.** The inflection of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called **declension.** They are declined to indicate change in number and case, and sometimes gender. Some pronouns indicate person (**624,** *a*).

632. Number

A noun or pronoun is **singular** when it refers to one person or thing: *girl,* puella; *house,* **aedificium**; *mouse,* **mūs**; *tooth,* **dēns.** It is **plural** when it refers to more than one: *girls,* puellae; *houses,* **aedificia**; *mice,* **mūrēs**; *teeth,* **dentēs.**

633. Gender

Gender is a distinction in the form of words corresponding to a distinction of sex. It is shown by change of word, by change of ending, or by use of a prefix: *father*, **pater** — *mother*, **māter**; *master*, **dominus** — *mistress*, **domina**; *he-goat* — *she-goat*. The first words given are **masculine**, the second are **feminine**. Most nouns in English have no gender and are therefore **neuter** ("neither" masculine nor feminine).

634. Case

Case is a change in the form of a noun, pronoun, or adjective to show its use in the sentence. ***She*** (subject) *is here*, ***Ea*** **adest**; *I saw* ***her*** (object), ***Eam*** **vīdī**.

635. Subject and Object

a. The subject of a verb is that about which a thing is said (621).

b. The **direct object** is that which is directly affected by the action indicated in the verb. *Anna carries* ***water***, **Anna** ***aquam*** **portat**. The term object is also applied to a word dependent upon a preposition (628).

636. Names and Uses of the Cases

a. **Nominative.** — A noun or pronoun used as the subject of a verb is in the **nominative** case: *The farmer calls*, ***Agricola*** **vocat**.

b. **Accusative** (Objective). — A noun or pronoun used as the object of a verb or preposition is in the **accusative** case: *I sent a book to him*, **Ad eum** ***librum*** **mīsī**.

c. **Dative.** — The noun or pronoun that shows for whom or what the direct object is intended is called the **indirect object** and is put in the **dative** case: *I gave* ***him*** *a book*, ***Ei*** **librum dedī**.

d. **Genitive** (Possessive). — Possession is expressed by the **genitive** case: *the* ***boy's*** *book*, ***puerī*** **liber**.

637. Conjugation

The inflection of verbs is called **conjugation**. Verbs are conjugated to indicate *person*, *number*, *tense*, *voice*, and *mood*.

638. Person and Number

A verb must agree with its subject in person and number: *The girl is good,* Puella *est* bona; *The girls are good,* Puellae *sunt* bonae.

639. Tense

Tense is time. There are six tenses:

a. The **present** represents an act as taking place now: *He goes.*

b. The **past** represents an act as having already taken place: *He went yesterday.*

c. The future represents an act that will occur at some future date: *He will go tomorrow.*

d. The present perfect represents an act as completed, but from the point of view of the present: *He has just gone.*

e. The **past perfect** represents an act as completed at some definite time in the past: *He had gone* (before something else occurred).

f. The **future perfect** represents an act as completed at or before some definite time in the future: *He will have gone* (before something else will occur).

640. Progressive and Emphatic Verb Forms

a. **Progressive** (time or action continuous; used with the auxiliary "be"): *They **are studying**, they **were studying**, they **will be studying**, they **have been studying**, they **had been studying**, they **will have been studying**.*

b. **Emphatic** (with the auxiliary "do," used only in the present and past):

1. Used in questions: *Do (did) you know this?*
2. Negative: *I do (did) not know it.*
3. Emphatic. *I do (did) believe it.*

641. Voice

A transitive verb is in the **active voice** when it represents the subject as the doer or agent: *Anna accuses the sailor,* Anna nautam *accūsat.*

A transitive verb is in the **passive voice** when it represents the subject as the receiver of the action: *The sailor* ***is accused***, **Nauta** *accūsātur*.

Note. — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice in English.

642. Mood

The **indicative mood** is used to state a fact or to ask a question: *Rome is a great city*, **Rōma** ***est*** **magna** **urbs**; *Where is Anna?* **Ubi** *est* **Anna**?

643. Infinitive

The **infinitive** is a form of the verb to which *to* is usually prefixed in English: *to go*, *to sing* It has tense and voice, but not person, number, or mood.

644. Participle

The **participle** is a verbal adjective. As an adjective it modifies a noun or pronoun: *a* ***losing*** *fight*. As a verb it may have an object or adverbial modifiers: ***losing*** *his balance, he fell off*. The participles which are used in English are:

	Active	Passive
Present	*seeing*	*being seen*
Past	*having seen*	*seen, having been seen*

645. Synopsis

A **synopsis** is an outline, showing the given verb in a certain person and number in all moods and tenses (and in both voices if the verb is transitive).

646. Phrases

A **phrase** is a group of words without subject and predicate.

One important kind of phrase is the **prepositional phrase**, that is, a preposition together with the word or words which it governs: *in great danger*, **in** **magnō** **perīculō**.

647. Clauses

A **clause**, like a phrase, is a part of a sentence but differs from it in having a subject and a predicate.

Clauses are classified as:

a. **Principal**, when used as the leading or independent statement in a sentence: *The girl whom you saw on the street is my sister,* **Puella** *quam in viā vīdistī est soror mea.*

b. **Subordinate**, when used as a dependent statement to modify the principal clause: *The girl whom you saw on the street is my sister,* **Puella** *quam in viā vīdistī* **est soror mea.**

Subordinate clauses are used as single parts of speech.

1. **Substantive** (or **noun**) **clause**: *It pleases me that you came* (your coming), **Mihi grātum est** *quod vēnistī.*

2. **Adjective clause**: *This boy, who is always good, will receive a reward* (this good boy), **Hic puer,** *quī semper bonus est,* **praemium accipiet.**

3. **Adverbial clause**: *I gave him the money because he earned it,* **Ei pecūniam dedī** *quod eam meruit.*

648. Sentences

a. A **simple sentence** contains one principal clause. *My friend, the farmer, has many horses,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet.**

b. A **compound sentence** contains two or more principal clauses connected by the coördinate conjunctions "and," "but," etc.: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses, but I have not seen them,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet, sed eōs nōn vīdī.**

c. A **complex sentence** contains one principal clause to which one or more subordinate clauses are joined by subordinate conjunctions or by relative or interrogative pronouns: *My friend, the farmer, has many horses which I have not seen,* **Amīcus meus, agricola, multōs equōs habet quōs nōn vīdī.**

SUMMARY OF BASIC FORMS

NOUNS

649. FIRST DECLENSION (86) SECOND DECLENSION (116)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	via	viae	servus	servī
Gen.	viae	viārum	servī	servōrum
Dat.	viae	viīs	servō	servīs
Acc	viam	viās	servum	servōs
Abl	viā	viīs	servō	servīs
(*Voc.*)			(serve)	

650. SECOND DECLENSION (129, 144)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ager	agrī	puer	puerī	signum	signa
Gen.	agrī	agrōrum	pueri	puerōrum	signī	signōrum
Dat	agrō	agrīs	puerō	pueris	signō	signīs
Acc	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs	signum	signa
Abl.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	pueris	signō	signīs

651. THIRD DECLENSION (378, 391)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	miles	militēs	lēx	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Gen.	militis	militum	lēgis	lēgum	corporis	corporum
Dat.	militī	militibus	lēgi	lēgibus	corporī	corporibus
Acc.	militem	militēs	lēgem	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
Abl.	mīlite	militibus	lēge	lēgibus	corpore	corporibus

I-Stems (402)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom	cīvis	cīvēs	mare	maria
Gen.	cīvis	cīvium	maris	marium
Dat.	cīvī	cīvibus	marī	maribus
Acc	cīvem	cīvēs (-īs)	mare	maria
Abl.	cīve	cīvibus	marī	maribus

652. FOURTH DECLENSION (580)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Gen.	cāsūs	cāsuum	cornūs	coruuum
Dat.	cāsuī	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
Acc.	cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
Abl.	cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

653. FIFTH DECLENSION (594)

	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
Nom.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
Gen.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
Dat.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Acc	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Abl.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

654. NOUNS OF IRREGULAR OR DEFECTIVE DECLENSION

	(479)		(519)	(578)	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Sing	Plur
Nom.	vīs	vīrēs	nēmō	domus	domūs
Gen.	——	vīrium	(nūllius)	domūs (–ī)	domuum (–ōrum)
Dat	——	vīribus	nēminī	domuī (–ō)	domibus
Acc	vim	vīrēs (–īs)	nēminem	domum	domōs (–ūs)
Abl. (*Loc*)	vī	vīribus	(nūllō)	domō (–ū) (dōmī)	domibus

ADJECTIVES

655. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (86, 116, 129, 144, 159)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F	N.	M	F.	N.
Nom	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
Gen.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
Dat.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
Acc.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
Abl.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnis	magnis
(*Voc*)	(magne)					

	Singular			Plural		
	M	F	N	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	līber	lībera	līberum	līberī	līberae	lībera
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum
Dat.	līberō	līberae	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs
Acc.	līberum	līberam	līberum	līberōs	līberās	lībera
Abl.	līberō	līberā	līberō	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs

	Singular		
Nom.	noster, *m.*	nostra, *f.*	nostrum, *n.*
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
Dat.	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
Acc	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
Abl.	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

Plural, **nostrī, nostrae, nostra,** *etc.*

656. THIRD DECLENSION (408)

a. Three Endings

	Singular			Plural		
Nom	ācer, *m*	ācris, *f.*	ācre, *n.*	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
Gen.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
Dat.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Acc.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs (–is)	ācrēs (–is)	ācria
Abl.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

b. Two Endings

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	fortis, *m., f*	forte, *n.*	fortēs	fortia
Gen.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs (–īs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

c. One Ending

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	pār, *m., f.*	pār, *n.*	parēs	paria
Gen.	paris	paris	parium	parium
Dat.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
Acc.	parem	pār	parēs (–īs)	paria
Abl.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

657. PRESENT PARTICIPLE (474)

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	parāns, *m.*, *f.*	parāns, *n.*	parantēs	parantia
Gen.	parantis	parantis	parantium	parantium
Dat.	parantī	parantī	parantibus	parantibus
Acc.	parantem	parāns	parantēs (-īs)	parantia
Abl.	parante (-ī)	parante (-ī)	parantibus	parantibus

658. NUMERALS (466, 553, 554)

Nom.	ūnus, *m.*	ūna, *f.*	ūnum,[1] *n.*	trēs, *m.*, *f*	tria, *n.*
Gen.	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius	trium	trium
Dat.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
Acc	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
Abl.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

Nom.	duo, *m.*	duae, *f.*	duo, *n*	mille	mīlia
Gen.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mille	mīlium
Dat	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīllibus
Acc	duōs	duās	duo	mille	mīlia
Abl.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

659. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

a. Regular (513, 528, 530)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus, -a, -um	altior, altius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, forte	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
liber, -era, -erum	liberior, -ius	liberrimus, -a, -um
ācer, ācris, ācre	ācrior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
facilis, facile	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um

b. Irregular (536)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um	maior, -ius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, -us	minimus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
inferus, -a, -um	īnferior, -ius	īnfimus *or* imus, -a, -um

[1] Alius has aliud in the nom. and acc. sing. neuter; plural regular.

superus, –a, –um	superior, –ius	suprēmus *or* summus, –a, –um
——	prior, –ius	prīmus, –a, –um
——	propior, –ius	proximus, –a, –um
——	ulterior, –ius	ultimus, –a, –um

660. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES (514, 536)

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	altior, *m., f.*	altius, *n.*	altiōrēs	altiōra
Gen.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum
Dat	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus
Acc	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra
Abl.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus

	Singular		Plural	
Nom.	plūs,[1] *n*		plūrēs, *m., f.*	plūra, *n.*
Gen	plūris		plūrium	plūrium
Dat	——		plūribus	plūribus
Acc.	plūs		plūrēs	plūra
Abl	plūre		plūribus	plūribus

661. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (522, 528, 537)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altē	altius	altissimē
līberē	līberius	līberrimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
facile	facilius	facillimē
bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
——	minus	minimē
——	magis	maximē

662. NUMERALS (358, 552)

Roman numerals	Cardinals	Ordinals
1. I.	ūnus, –a, –um	prīmus, –a, –um
2. II.	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)

[1] Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.

ROMAN NUMERALS	CARDINALS	ORDINALS	
3.	III.	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IIII *or* IV.	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V.	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI.	sex	sextus
7.	VII.	septem	septimus
8.	VIII.	octō	octāvus
9.	VIIII *or* IX.	novem	nōnus
10.	X.	decem	decimus
11.	XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	XII.	duodecim	duodecimus
13.	XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	XIIII *or* XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	XV.	quindecim	quīntus decimus
16.	XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	XVIII.	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19.	XVIIII *or* XIX.	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20.	XX.	vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21.	XXI.	vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus
30.	XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40.	XXXX *or* XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50.	L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
60.	LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus
70.	LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsimus
80.	LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsimus
90.	LXXXX *or* XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsimus
100.	C.	centum	centēsimus
101.	CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus
200.	CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
300.	CCC.	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsimus
400.	CCCC.	quadringentī, -ae, -a	quadringentēsimus
500.	D.	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsimus
600.	DC.	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsimus
700.	DCC.	septingentī, -ae, -a	septingentēsimus
800.	DCCC.	octingentī, -ae, -a	octingentēsimus
900.	DCCCC.	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsimus
1000.	M.	mīlle	mīllēsimus
2000.	MM.	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsimus

PRONOUNS

663. PERSONAL (272)

	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	M. F. N.
Nom.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	is ea id
Gen.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)	(For declension see **665**
Dat.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbis	— demonstrative is)
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
Abl.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

664. REFLEXIVE (543)

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
Gen.	meī (declined like ego)	tuī (declined like tū)

Note. — Reflexive pronouns are not used in the nominative and there is therefore no nominative form.

THIRD PERSON

	Singular	Plural
Gen.	suī	suī
Dat.	sibi	sibi
Acc.	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
Abl.	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

665. DEMONSTRATIVE (435, 448, 455)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	hic, *m.*	haec, *f.*	hoc, *n.*	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Nom.	is, *m.*	ea, *f.*	id, *n.*	eī (iī)	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

	Singular		
Nom.	īdem, *m.*	eadem, *f.*	idem, *n.*
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	Plural		
Nom.	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
Acc.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

DEMONSTRATIVE (435)

	Singular			Singular		
Nom.	ille, *m*	illa, *f.*	illud, *n.*	ipse, *m.*	ipsa, *f.*	ipsum, *n.*
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus
Dat.	illī	illī	illī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
Abl.	illō	illā	illō	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō
	(Plur. regular like magnus)			(Plur. regular)		

INTENSIVE (460)

666. RELATIVE (321)

	Singular			Plural		
Nom.	quī, *m.*	quae, *f.*	quod, *n*	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

667. INTERROGATIVE (337)[1]

	Singular		
Nom.	quis,[2] *m., f.*	quid, *n.*	
Gen.	cuius	cuius	
Dat.	cui	cui	
Acc.	quem	quid	
Abl.	quō	quō	

[1] Plural like that of quī.

[2] Interrogative adjective quī declined throughout like relative quī.

REGULAR VERBS

668. FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus
(Stems: portā-, portāv-, portāt-)

INDICATIVE

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
PRESENT (37)		PRESENT (236)	
I carry, etc.		*I am carried*, etc.	
portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
portās	portātis	portāris (-re)	portāminī
portat	portant	portātur	portantur
IMPERFECT (53)		IMPERFECT (236)	
I was carrying, etc.		*I was (being) carried*, etc.	
portābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
portābās	portābātis	portābāris (-re)	portābāminī
portābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur
FUTURE (65)		FUTURE (236)	
I shall carry, etc.		*I shall be carried*, etc.	
portābō	portābimus	portābor	portābimur
portābis	portābitis	portāberis (-re)	portābiminī
portābit	portābunt	portābitur	portābuntur
PERFECT (252)		PERFECT (238)	
I carried, I have carried, etc.		*I was carried, I have been carried*, etc.	
portāvī	portāvimus	portātus {sum, es, est} (-a, -um)	portātī {sumus, estis, sunt} (-ae, -a)
portāvistī	portāvistis		
portāvit	portāvērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT (265)		PAST PERFECT (239)	
I had carried, etc.		*I had been carried*, etc.	
portāveram	portāverāmus	portātus {eram, erās, erat} (-a, -um)	portātī {erāmus, erātis, erant} (-ae, -a)
portāverās	portāverātis		
portāverat	portāverant		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
FUTURE PERFECT (266)		FUTURE PERFECT (295)	
I shall have carried, etc.		*I shall have been carried*, etc.	
portāverō	portāverimus	portātus (–a, –um) erō eris erit	portātī (–ae, –a) erimus eritis erunt
portāveris	portāveritis		
portāverit	portāverint		

INFINITIVE (35, 297, 481, 486)

Present	portāre, *to carry*	portārī, *to be carried*
Perfect	portāvisse, *to have carried*	portātus esse, *to have been carried*
Future	portātūrus esse, *to be going to carry*	

PARTICIPLE (286, 474, 475)

Present	portāns, *Gen.* –antis, *carrying*	
Perfect		portātus, –a, –um, *(having been) carried*
Future	portātūrus, –a, –um, *going to carry*	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (90)

2d sing. portā, *carry* *2d plur.* portāte, *carry*

669. SECOND CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus
(Stems: docē–, docu–, doct–)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (100)		PRESENT (236)	
I teach, etc		*I am taught*, etc.	
doceō	docēmus	doceor	docēmur
docēs	docētis	docēris (–re)	docēminī
docet	docent	docētur	docentur

IMPERFECT (100)		IMPERFECT (236)	
I was teaching, etc.		*I was (being) taught*, etc.	
docēbam	docēbāmus	docēbar	docēbāmur
docēbās	docēbātis	docēbāris (–re)	docēbāminī
docēbat	docēbant	docēbātur	docēbantur

ACTIVE VOICE

FUTURE (100)

I shall teach, etc.

docēbō	docēbimus
docēbis	docēbitis
docēbit	docēbunt

PERFECT (252)

I taught, I have taught, etc

docuī	docuimus
docuistī	docuistis
docuit	docuērunt (-ēre)

PAST PERFECT (265)

I had taught, etc.

docueram	docuerāmus
docuerās	docuerātis
docuerat	docuerant

FUTURE PERFECT (266)

I shall have taught, etc.

docuerō	docuerimus
docueris	docueritis
docuerit	docuerint

PASSIVE VOICE

FUTURE (236)

I shall be taught, etc.

docēbor	docēbimur
docēberis (-re)	docēbiminī
docēbitur	docēbuntur

PERFECT (238)

I was taught, I have been taught, etc.

doctus (-a, -um)	sum	doctī (-ae, -a)	sumus
	es		estis
	est		sunt

PAST PERFECT (239)

I had been taught, etc.

doctus (-a, -um)	eram	doctī (-ae, -a)	erāmus
	erās		erātis
	erat		erant

FUTURE PERFECT (295)

I shall have been taught, etc.

doctus (-a, -um)	erō	doctī (-ae, -a)	erimus
	eris		eritis
	erit		erunt

INFINITIVE (297, 481, 486)

Present	docēre, *to teach*	docērī, *to be taught*
Perfect	docuisse, *to have taught*	doctus esse, *to have been taught*
Future	doctūrus esse, *to be going to teach*	

PARTICIPLE (286, 474, 475)

Present	docēns, *Gen.* -entis, *teaching*	
Perfect		doctus, -a, -um, *(having been) taught*
Future	doctūrus, -a, -um, *going to teach*	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (90)

2d sing.	docē, *teach*	*2d plur.*	docēte, *teach*

670. THIRD CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **pōnō, pōnĕre, posuī, positus**
(Stems: **pōnĕ–, posu–, posit–**)

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT (170)		**PRESENT (236)**	
I place, etc.		*I am placed*, etc.	
pōnō	pōnimus	pōnor	pōnimur
pōnis	pōnitis	pōneris (-re)	pōniminī
pōnit	pōnunt	pōnitur	pōnuntur
IMPERFECT (170)		**IMPERFECT (236)**	
I was placing, etc.		*I was (being) placed*, etc.	
pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus	pōnēbar	pōnēbāmur
pōnēbās	pōnēbātis	pōnēbāris (-re)	pōnēbāminī
pōnēbat	pōnēbant	pōnēbātur	pōnēbantur
FUTURE (196)		**FUTURE (236)**	
I shall place, etc		*I shall be placed*, etc.	
pōnam	pōnēmus	pōnar	pōnēmur
pōnēs	pōnētis	pōnēris (-re)	pōnēminī
pōnet	pōnent	pōnētur	pōnentur
PERFECT (252)		**PERFECT (238)**	
I placed, I have placed, etc.		*I was placed, I have been placed*, etc.	
posuī	posuimus	positus { sum / es / est } (-a, -um)	positī { sumus / estis / sunt } (-ae, -a)
posuistī	posuistis		
posuit	posuērunt (-ēre)		
PAST PERFECT (265)		**PAST PERFECT (239)**	
I had placed, etc.		*I had been placed*, etc.	
posueram	posuerāmus	positus { eram / erās / erat } (-a, -um)	positī { erāmus / erātis / erant } (-ae, -a)
posuerās	posuerātis		
posuerat	posuerant		

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
FUTURE PERFECT (266)		FUTURE PERFECT (295)	
I shall have placed, etc.		*I shall have been placed*, etc.	
posuerō	posuerimus	positus erō / positī erimus	
posueris	posueritis	positus eris / positī eritis	
posuerit	posuerint	positus erit / positī erunt	

INFINITIVE (297, 481, 485)

Present	pōnere, *to place*	pōnī, *to be placed*
Perfect	posuisse, *to have placed*	positus esse, *to have been placed*
Future	positūrus esse, *to be going to place*	

PARTICIPLE (286, 474, 475)

Present	pōnēns, *Gen* –entis, *placing*	
Perfect		positus, –a, –um, (*having been*) *placed*
Future	positūrus, –a, –um, *going to place*	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (171)

2d sing	pōne, *place*	*2d plur.* pōnite, *place*

671. FOURTH CONJUGATION

Principal Parts: **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītus**
(Stems: **mūnī–, mūnīv–, mūnīt–**)

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (185)		PRESENT (236)	
I fortify, etc.		*I am fortified*, etc.	
mūniō	mūnīmus	mūnior	mūnīmur
mūnīs	mūnītis	mūnīris (–re)	mūnīminī
mūnit	mūniunt	mūnītur	mūniuntur

IMPERFECT (185)		IMPERFECT (236)	
I was fortifying, etc.		*I was (being) fortified*, etc.	
mūniēbam	mūniēbāmus	mūniēbar	mūniēbāmur
mūniēbās	mūniēbātis	mūniēbāris (–re)	mūniēbāminī
mūniēbat	mūniēbant	mūniēbātur	mūniēbantur

ACTIVE VOICE

FUTURE (209)

I shall fortify, etc.

mūniam	mūniēmus
mūniēs	mūniētis
mūniet	mūnient

PERFECT (252)

I fortified, I have fortified, etc.

mūnīvi	mūnīvimus
mūnīvistī	mūnīvistis
mūnīvit	mūnīvērunt (-ēre)

PAST PERFECT (265)

I had fortified, etc.

mūnīveram	mūnīverāmus
mūnīverās	mūnīverātis
mūnīverat	mūnīverant

FUTURE PERFECT (256)

I shall have fortified, etc.

mūnīverō	mūnīverimus
mūnīveris	mūnīveritis
mūnīverit	mūnīverint

PASSIVE VOICE

FUTURE (236)

I shall be fortified, etc

mūniar	mūniēmur
mūniēris (-re)	mūniēminī
mūniētur	mūnientur

PERFECT (288)

I was fortified, I have been fortified, etc.

mūnītus (-a, -um)	sum es est	mūnītī (-ae, -a)	sumus estis sunt

PAST PERFECT (283)

I had been fortified, etc

mūnītus (-a, -um)	eram erās erat	mūnītī (-ae, -a)	erāmus erātis erant

FUTURE PERFECT (295)

I shall have been fortified, etc.

mūnītus (-a, -um)	erō eris erit	mūnītī (-ae, -a)	erimus eritis erunt

INFINITIVE (297, 481, 486)

Present	mūnīre, *to fortify*	mūnīrī, *to be fortified*
Perfect	mūnīvisse, *to have fortified*	mūnītus esse, *to have been fortified*
Future	mūnītūrus esse, *to be going to fortify*	

PARTICIPLE (286, 474, 475)

Present	mūniēns, *Gen.* mūnientis, *fortifying*	
Perfect		mūnītus, -a, -um, (*having been*) *fortified*
Future	mūnītūrus, -a, -um, *going to fortify*	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (185)

2d sing.	mūnī, *fortify*	*2d plur.*	mūnīte, *fortify*

672. THIRD CONJUGATION *-IŌ* VERBS

Principal Parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captus
(Stems: capē–, cēp–, capt–)

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
INDICATIVE			
PRESENT (184)		PRESENT (236)	
capiō	capimus	capior	capimur
capis	capitis	caperis (-re)	capiminī
capit	capiunt	capitur	capiuntur
IMPERFECT (184)		IMPERFECT (236)	
capiēbam, etc.		capiēbar, etc.	
FUTURE (209)		FUTURE (236)	
capiam	capiēmus	capiar	capiēmur
capiēs	capiētis	capiēris (-re)	capiēminī
capiet	capient	capiētur	capientur
PERFECT (232)		PERFECT (238)	
cēpī, etc.		captus sum, etc.	
PAST PERFECT (265)		PAST PERFECT (289)	
cēperam, etc		captus eram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT (266)		FUTURE PERFECT (295)	
cēperō, etc.		captus erō, etc.	

INFINITIVE (297, 481, 486)

Present	capere	capī
Perfect	cēpisse	captus esse
Future	captūrus esse	

PARTICIPLE (286, 474, 475)

Present	capiēns, *Gen.* capientis	
Perfect		captus, -a, -um
Future	captūrus, -a, -um	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE (184)

2d sing	cape	*2d plur.*	capite

IRREGULAR VERBS

673. Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT (137)		IMPERFECT (151)	
sum, *I am*	sumus, *we are*	eram, *I was*, etc.	erāmus
es, *you are*	estis, *you are*	erās	erātis
est, *he is*	sunt, *they are*	erat	erant
FUTURE (151)		**PERFECT (258)**	
erō, *I shall be*, etc.	erimus	fuī, *I was*, etc.	fuimus
eris	eritis	fuistī	fuistis
erit	erunt	fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)
PAST PERFECT (279)		**FUTURE PERFECT (279)**	
fueram, *I had been*, etc	fuerāmus	fuerō, *I shall have been*, etc.	fuerimus
fuerās	fuerātis	fueris	fueritis
fuerat	fuerant	fuerit	fuerint

INFINITIVE (481, 486)		PARTICIPLE (475)
Pres.	esse, *to be*	——
Perf.	fuisse, *to have been*	——
Fut	futūrus esse, *to be going to be*	futūrus, -a, -um, *going to be*

IMPERATIVE *2d sing.* es, *be* *2d plur* este, *be*

674. Principal Parts: possum, posse, potuī, ——

INDICATIVE (351)

Pres.	possum, *I am able, I can*, etc.	possumus
	potes	potestis
	potest	possunt
Impf	poteram, etc., *I was able, I could*, etc.	
Fut	poterō, etc., *I shall be able*, etc.	
Perf	potuī, etc., *I was able, I could*, etc.	
Past P.	potueram, etc., *I had been able*, etc.	
Fut P.	potuerō, etc., *I shall have been able*, etc.	

INFINITIVE (347, 481)		PARTICIPLE (474)
Pres	posse, *to be able*	potēns, *Gen* -entis (adj.), *powerful*
Perf.	potuisse, *to have been able*	

OUTLINE OF BASIC SYNTAX

NOUN SYNTAX

(References are to sections)

675. Nominative

1. Subject of Verb (16).
2. Predicate Noun or Adjective (15).

676. Genitive

1. Possession (69)
2. Description (600).

677. Dative

1. Indirect Object (71–72).
 (*a*) With transitive verbs (*give*, etc.) and Acc. of Dir. Obj (589).
 (*b*) With certain intransitive verbs (**noceō**, etc.) (589)
2. With adjectives meaning *like, fit, near*, etc. (531).

678. Accusative

1. Direct Object (43–44).
2. Place to Which with **ad** or **in** (139).
3. Subject of an Infinitive (280–281).
4. Extent of Time or Space (568–569).
5. Prepositions with acc.: **ad, ante, apud, circum, contrā, inter, ob, per, post, super, trāns**; also **in** and **sub** to indicate the direction in which a thing moves.

679. Ablative

(*a*) *With Preposition*

1. Agent (person) with **ab** (**ā**) (242–243).
2. Place Where with **in, sub** (109).

3. Place from Which with **ab, dē, ex** (121).
4. Separation[1] with **ab, dē, ex** (121).
5. Accompaniment with **cum** (204).
6. Manner with **cum**[2] (332).
7. Prepositions with the abl.: **ab, cum, dē, ex, prae, prō**; also **in** and **sub** to indicate place in which.
 (*b*) *Without Preposition*
8. Means (thing) (79–80).
9. Time When (443).
10. Respect (420–421).
11. Ablative Absolute (384–385).
12. Description (600).
13. Cause (141, footnote).

680. Vocative

Case of address (123).

VERB SYNTAX

681. Infinitive

Use	*After Verbs*	*Translated by*
Subject or Object	as in English, without subject	Infinitive (152; 153)
Object	*order, teach*, etc., as in English, with subj. acc.	Infinitive (280–281)
Object (indir. statement)	*saying, thinking, knowing*, etc., with subj. acc.	"That" clause (488–490)

682. Imperative

Used in commands (90).

[1] When the separation is not meant literally, the preposition is usually omitted: **Līberor timōre**, *I am freed from fear*

[2] When an adjective is used with the noun, **cum** may be omitted.

683. TENSE

(*a*) Indicative

Imperfect Indicative — state of being; repeated, customary, or continuous action (259).

Perfect Indicative — act performed once (259).

(*b*) Infinitives and Participles

(Determined by main verb)

Present: *same time as* main verb (473, 498, 1).
Perfect: *before* main verb (498, 3).
Future: *after* main verb (498, 2).

684. AGREEMENT

Adjectives agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns which they modify (23–24).

Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects (46–47).

When two singular subjects are connected by **aut, aut . . . aut, neque . . . neque,** the verb is singular (244).

The relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause (324).

Appositives agree in case (177–178).



FIG. 206. MASKS USED BY ACTORS ON THE STAGE



FIG. 207 MAGNĀ CELERITĀTE ITER FACIT
The Emperor Hadrian leaves his villa near Tivoli From a painting by Forti.

685. BASIC VOCABULARY

This list consists of words recommended by the College Entrance Examination Board (1927) and the Syllabus of the State of New York (1932).[1]

FIRST HALF YEAR

The following lists are to be memorized thoroughly. Time-limited tests are recommended, in which teachers should strive to secure at least 90 per cent efficiency.

Verbs

1. amō
2. appellō
3. cōnfirmō
4. dō
5. exspectō
6. labōrō
7. līberō
8. nāvigō
9. nūntiō
10. occupō
11. parō
12. comparō
13. portō
14. pugnō
15. servō
16. spectō
17. superō
18. vocō
19. habeō
20. moneō
21. moveō
22. commoveō
23. permoveō
24. removeō
25. respondeō
26. teneō
27. contineō
28. obtineō
29. pertineō
30. sustineō
31. timeō
32. videō
33. agō
34. cōgō
35. redigō
36. cēdō
37. discēdō
38. excēdō
39. dēfendō
40. dūcō
41. addūcō
42. indūcō
43. perdūcō
44. prōdūcō
45. gerō
46. lūdō
47. mittō
48. āmittō
49. committō
50. dimittō
51. intermittō
52. permittō
53. praemittō
54. remittō
55. petō
56. relinquō
57. scrībō
58. cōnscrībō
59. vincō
60. sum
61. absum
62. adsum

[1] The College Board gives 891 words for the first two years without indication of semester or year. The New York Syllabus arranges the words by semesters. The present list gives in blackface type the words common to both lists (in the New York Syllabus order) and in lightface type those not required until later by the College Board list or not found at all in that list.

Verbs

1. love
2. name, call
3. strengthen, assert
4. give
5. look out for, wait for
6. toil, suffer
7. set free
8. sail
9. give news, announce
10. seize
11. make ready, prepare
12. make ready, buy, compare
13. carry
14. fight
15. keep, save
16. look at
17. overcome, surpass, defeat
18. call
19. have, hold
20. warn, advise
21. move
22. move thoroughly, alarm
23. move strongly, excite
24. move back, withdraw
25. answer
26. hold
27. hold together, bound
28. hold fast, obtain
29. extend, belong to
30. uphold, resist
31. be afraid, fear
32. see
33. drive, do, plead
34. drive together, gather, compel
35. drive back, reduce
36. move, go away, yield
37. go away
38. go out, withdraw
39. ward off, defend
40. lead
41. lead to, influence
42. lead on, influence
43. lead through, construct
44. lead forward, protract
45. carry on
46. play
47. send
48. send away, let go, lose
49. send together, entrust, join
50. send away, dispatch
51. interrupt, stop
52. allow
53. send ahead
54. send back, let go, relax
55. seek, attack, ask
56. leave behind
57. write
58. write together, enroll
59. conquer
60. be
61. be away, be absent
62. be near, be present

Nouns

1. agricola
2. amīcitia
3. aqua
4. fāma
5. fēmina
6. fīlia
7. fortūna
8. fuga
9. iniūria
10. īnsula
11. lingua
12. lūna
13. memoria
14. mēnsa
15. nātūra
16. nauta
17. patria
18. pecūnia
19. poena
20. poēta
21. porta
22. prōvincia
23. puella
24. pugna
25. rēgina
26. silva
27. terra
28. via
29. victōria
30. vīta
31. ager
32. animus
33. annus
34. arma
35. auxilium
36. bellum
37. castra
38. cōnsilium
39. deus
40. dominus
41. equus
42. factum
43. filius
44. frūmentum
45. gladius
46. liber
47. locus
48. magister
49. negōtium
50. numerus
51. oculus
52. officium
53. oppidum
54. periculum
55. populus
56. praemium
57. praesidium
58. proelium
59. puer
60. rēgnum
61. servus
62. signum
63. socius
64. vesper
65. vir
66. aestās
67. ălĭtūdō
68. arbor
69. auctōritās
70. caput
71. celeritās
72. cōnsul
73. corpus
74. dux
75. flūmen
76. frāter
77. hiems
78. homō
79. lātitūdō
80. lēx
81. lĭbertās
82. lūx
83. magnitūdō
84. māter
85. miles
86. multitūdō
87. nōmen
88. pater
89. pāx
90. pēs
91. princeps
92. rēx
93. sōl
94. soror
95. tempus
96. victor
97. virtūs
98. vōx

Nouns

1. farmer
2. friendship
3. water
4. reputation, rumor
5. woman
6. daughter
7. chance, fortune
8. flight
9. wrong
10. island
11. tongue, language
12. moon
13. memory
14. table, dish
15. nature, character
16. sailor
17. one's country
18. money
19. penalty, punishment
20. poet
21. gate
22. province
23. girl
24. fight
25. queen
26. forest
27. earth, land
28. way, road
29. victory
30. life
31. field, country
32. spirit, courage, mind
33. year
34. arms, implements
35. aid, assistance
36. war
37. camp
38. plan, counsel
39. god
40. master
41. horse
42. deed
43. son
44. grain
45. sword
46. book
47. place
48. master, teacher
49. business, task
50. number
51. eye
52. duty
53. town
54. trial, danger
55. people, nation
56. reward
57. garrison, protection
58. battle
59. boy
60. kingdom, royal power
61. slave
62. sign, signal, standard
63. ally
64. evening
65. man
66. summer
67. height
68. tree
69. authority, influence
70. head
71. swiftness, speed
72. consul
73. body
74. leader
75. river
76. brother
77. winter
78. man, human being
79. width
80. law
81. freedom
82. light
83. greatness, size
84. mother
85. soldier
86. large number, crowd
87. name
88. father
89. peace
90. foot
91. leading man, chief
92. king
93. sun
94. sister
95. time
96. conqueror
97. manliness, bravery
98. voice, word

Adjectives, Pronouns

1. aequus
2. altus
3. amīcus
4. amplus
5. barbarus
6. bonus
7. certus
8. crēber
9. decimus
10. ēgregius
11. fīnitimus
12. ignōtus
13. inimīcus
14. iniquus
15. integer
16. lātus
17. līber
18. longus
19. magnus
20. malus
21. meus
22. miser
23. multus
24. nōnus
25. noster
26. nōtus
27. novus
28. octāvus
29. parvus
30. paucī
31. primus
32. pūblicus
33. quārtus
34. quīntus
35. reliquus
36. secundus
37. septimus
38. sextus
39. tertius
40. timidus
41. tuus
42. ūnus
43. vērus
44. vester
45. centum
46. decem
47. duo
48. novem
49. octō
50. quattuor
51. quīnque
52. septem
53. sex
54. trēs
55. vīgintī
56. is
57. quī

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

1. ā (ab)
2. ad
3. ante
4. cum
5. dē
6. ē (ex)
7. in
8. per
9. post
10. prō
11. sine
12. sub
13. trāns
14. anteā
15. iam
16. nōn
17. nunc
18. posteā
19. tum (tunc)
20. ubi
21. ac (atque)
22. aut
23. aut . . . aut
24. cūr
25. et
26. et . . . et
27. etiam
28. -ne
29. nec (neque)
30. neque . . . neque
31. quam
32. -que
33. quod
34. sed

Adjectives, Pronouns

1. level, equal, kindly
2. high, deep
3. friendly
4. large, splendid
5. foreign, rude
6. good
7. sure, certain
8. thick, close, frequent
9. tenth
10. outstanding, distinguished
11. neighboring
12. unknown
13. unfriendly
14. uneven, unfair
15. whole
16. wide
17. free
18. long
19. great
20. bad
21. my, mine
22. wretched
23. much (plu. many)
24. ninth
25. our, ours
26. known
27. new
28. eighth
29. small
30. a few, few
31. first
32. belonging to the people, public
33. fourth
34. fifth
35. left behind, remaining, rest of
36. following, second, favorable
37. seventh
38. sixth
39. third
40. fearful, cowardly
41. thy, thine, your, yours
42. one
43. true
44. your, yours
45. hundred
46. ten
47. two
48. nine
49. eight
50. four
51. five
52. seven
53. six
54. three
55. twenty
56. this, that, he
57. who, which, that

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

1. from, away from, by
2. to, toward, near
3. before
4. with
5. down from, concerning
6. out of
7. in, into
8. through
9. after, behind
10. in front of, in behalf of
11. without
12. under, close to
13. across
14. before that, previously
15. now, already, presently
16. not
17. now
18. after that, afterwards
19. at that time
20. where, when
21. and also, and
22. or
23. either . . . or
24. why
25. and
26. both . . . and
27. also, even
28. interrogative particle
29. and not, nor, neither
30. neither . . . nor
31. how, as, than
32. and
33. because
34. but

SECOND HALF YEAR

Verbs

1. appropinquō
2. clāmō
3. commūnicō
4. dēmōnstrō
5. circumdō
6. abdō
7. reddō
8. trādō
9. dubitō
10. ēnūntiō
11. exīstimō
12. prōnūntiō
13. putō
14. renūntiō
15. ignōrō
16. laudō
17. occultō
18. recuperō
19. temptō
20. vītō
21. vulnerō
22. audeō
23. dēbeō
24. doceō
25. iubeō
26. licet
27. maneō
28. permaneō
29. noceō
30. obsideō
31. oportet
32. perterreō
33. possideō
34. prohibeō
35. studeō
36. antecēdō
37. succēdō
38. claudō
39. coepī
40. cognōscō
41. cōnfidō
42. cōnsistō
43. dēsistō
44. resistō
45. contendō
46. ostendō
47. dīcō
48. exstruō
49. instruō
50. legō
51. dēligō
52. pellō
53. compellō
54. impellō
55. pōnō
56. dēpōnō
57. expōnō
58. impōnō
59. prōpōnō
60. premō
61. submittō
62. trahō
63. capiō
64. accipiō
65. excipiō
66. incipiō
67. cupiō
68. faciō
69. cōnficiō
70. dēficiō
71. interficiō
72. perficiō
73. praeficiō
74. prōficiō
75. satisfaciō
76. iaciō
77. adiciō
78. coniciō
79. obiciō
80. prōiciō
81. audiō
82. fīniō
83. mūniō
84. sciō
85. sentiō
86. cōnsentiō
87. veniō
88. circumveniō
89. conveniō
90. inveniō
91. perveniō
92. dēsum
93. possum
94. praesum
95. supersum

SECOND HALF YEAR

1 approach
2 shout, cry
3 share, communicate
4. point out
5 put around, surround
6 put away, hide
7 give back, return
8 hand over, entrust, surrender
9 hesitate, doubt
10. disclose, announce
11. think, believe
12 declare
13. think
14 announce, proclaim
15 be unacquainted with
16 praise
17. hide, conceal
18 regain, get back
19. try, attempt
20. avoid
21. wound
22. dare
23 owe, ought
24. teach, inform
25 order, command
26. it is permitted
27 stay, remain
28. stay through, abide
29. harm
30. sit against, besiege
31. it behooves, ought
32. frighten thoroughly
33. possess, acquire
34 keep away
35. be eager, desire
36 go before, surpass
37. approach, come next
38 close, shut
39 have begun
40. learn (perfect know)
41. trust
42. take position, halt, stop
43. desist, cease
44 take a stand, resist
45. struggle, hasten
46. hold out, show
47. say, speak
48. pile up, build
49. arrange, marshal
50. pick, choose, read
51. pick out, choose
52. strike, beat, drive
53. drive together, collect, force
54. drive on, urge on
55. put, place
56. put down, put aside
57. put forth, set forth
58. put on
59. set forth, propose
60. press
61. send under, send to assist, yield
62. drag, draw
63. take, seize
64. take to, receive, accept
65. take out, succeed to
66. begin
67 desire, wish
68. do, make
69 accomplish, complete
70 fail, revolt from
71. kill
72 accomplish
73. put at the head of
74. accomplish, gain
75 do enough, do one's duty, apologize
76. hurl, throw
77. add to
78. hurl, throw
79. throw against
80. hurl (forward)
81. hear
82. limit, bound, end
83 do a task, build, fortify
84. know
85. feel, think, judge
86. think together, agree
87. come
88. come around, surround, cut off
89. come together, assemble
90. come upon, find
91. come through, arrive
92. be lacking
93. be able, can
94. be ahead, be in charge of
95. be over, remain, survive

Nouns

1. cōpia
2. hōra
3. inopia
4. rīpa
5. sagitta
6. toga
7. tuba
8. villa
9. beneficium
10. bīduum
11. campus
12. digitus
13. imperātum
14. imperium
15. maleficium
16. modus
17. spatium
18. trīduum
19. aetās
20. cīvitās
21. condiciō
22. cōnsuētūdō
23. cupiditās
24. difficultās
25. dignitās
26. facultās
27. genus
28. iūs
29. laus
30. ōrātiō
31. ōrdō
32. potestās
33. ratiō
34. timor
35. vulnus
36. iter
37. cīvis
38. dēns
39. finis
40. hostis
41. mare
42. mēns
43. mēnsis
44. mōns
45. mors
46. nāvis
47. nox
48. pars
49. pōns
50. urbs
51. vīs
52. adventus
53. cornū
54. domus
55. equitātus
56. exercitus
57. exitus
58. manus
59. passus
60. senātus
61. aciēs
62. diēs
63. fidēs
64. meridiēs
65. rēs
66. rēs pūblica
67. spēs

Adjectives, Pronouns

1. cupidus
2. dexter
3. idōneus
4. maritimus
5. necessārius
6. occultus
7. perītus
8. propinquus
9. sinister
10. suus
11. vīcinus
12. ācer
13. alacer
14. celer
15. commūnis
16. difficilis
17. dīligēns
18. facilis
19. fidēlis
20. fortis
21. gravis
22. humilis
23. levis
24. mīlle
25. nōbilis
26. omnis
27. pār

Nouns

1. supply, abundance (plu. forces)
2. hour
3. want, lack
4. bank, shore
5. arrow
6. toga
7. trumpet
8. farm house
9. kind deed, service
10. two days
11. plain, field
12. finger, toe
13. command
14. command, power
15. evil deed
16. measure, manner
17. space
18. three days
19. age, time of life
20. citizenship, community, state
21. agreement, terms, condition
22. custom, habit
23. desire, longing
24. difficulty
25. worth, rank
26. power of doing, ability, chance
27. origin, kind, race
28. right, law
29. praise, glory
30. speech
31. order, rank
32. power
33. reckoning, plan, reason
34. fear
35. wound
36. road, march
37. citizen
38. tooth
39. end, boundary (plu. territory)
40. enemy
41. sea
42. mind
43. month
44. mountain
45. death
46. ship
47. night
48. part
49. bridge
50. city
51. violence, force
52. approach, arrival
53. horn, wing (of an army)
54. home, house
55. body of horsemen, cavalry
56. trained body, army
57. outcome, end
58. band, band, troop
59. pace, (double) step
60. body of elders, senate
61. edge, line of battle
62. day
63. trust, pledge, reliability
64. midday
65. thing
66. commonwealth
67. hope

Adjectives, Pronouns

1. desirous
2. right (of direction)
3. suitable
4. of the sea, maritime
5. necessary
6. hidden, secret
7. experienced, skilled
8. nearby, kinsman
9. left (of direction)
10. his, her, its, their (own)
11. neighboring
12. sharp, keen, eager
13. eager, cheerful
14. swift
15. common, general
16. difficult
17. careful
18. easy
19. faithful
20. brave
21. heavy, serious
22. low, lowly
23. light, fickle
24. thousand
25. well-known
26. all, whole (sing. every)
27. equal

Adjectives, Pronouns

28. potēns
29. praesēns
30. prūdēns
31. recēns
32. similis
33. singulāris
34. ego
35. hic
36. īdem
37. ille
38. ipse
39. quis
40. suī
41. tū

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

1. apud
2. inter
3. ob
4. propter
5. aegrē
6. amplius
7. bene
8. bis
9. eō
10. eōdem
11. facile
12. hīc (adv.)
13. hūc
14. iam prīdem
15. ibi
16. inde
17. interim
18. magis
19. magnopere
20. nē . . . quidem
21. parum
22. quidem
23. quō
24. satis
25. unde
26. vehementer
27. vērō
28. autem
29. enim
30. nam
31. sī

Adjectives, Pronouns

28. able, powerful
29. present, in person
30. foreseeing, discreet, wise
31. fresh, new
32. like, resembling
33. one by one, extraordinary
34. I
35. this
36. the same
37. that
38. self, very
39. who, any
40. (of) himself, herself, itself, themselves
41. thou, you

Prepositions, Adverbs, Conjunctions

1. near, in the presence of, among
2. between, among
3. against, on account of
4. near, on account of
5. with difficulty
6. more
7. well
8. twice
9. thither, to that place
10. to the same place
11. easily
12. here, at this point
13. hither
14. long ago
15. there
16. thence
17. meanwhile
18. more greatly, more
19. greatly
20. not even
21. (too) little
22. certainly, at least
23. whither
24. enough
25. whence
26. strongly
27. in truth, but
28. moreover, but
29. for, indeed
30. for
31. if

FRENCH AND SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

Nōtitia linguārum est prima porta sapientiae, *A knowledge of languages is the first door to wisdom.* — Bacon

686. The Romance Languages

The Romance (**Rōmānus,** *Roman*) languages — French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Rumanian — are modern forms of Latin. Fully ninety per cent of the words in French and Spanish are derived from Latin. The Latin student, therefore, who is familiar with the principles that govern vowel and consonant changes, as well as other peculiarities of word transfer, can recognize at a glance a large proportion of words in French and Spanish derived from classical (as opposed to late) Latin.

The following pages are intended primarily for older students who have elected Latin after having begun the study of French or Spanish. These rules will, moreover, be found invaluable for reference by the Latin student who may later elect French or Spanish (see 1).

687. Pronunciation

The distinctions in sound between long and short **e** and **o** (**613, a**) are preserved in French and Spanish, though not in all derived words.

Spanish has no silent letters, except **h**, thus resembling Latin (**h** was weakly sounded in Latin).

688. Syllable Division

Syllable division in French and Spanish is according to the Latin rule (**618**).

689. Gender

Nouns which are masculine or feminine in Latin retain their gender in French and Spanish:

Lat.	poēta, *m.*	liber, *m.*	mōns, *m*	lībertās, *f.*	manus, *f*
Fr.	poète	livre	mont	liberté	main
Sp.	poeta	libro	monte	libertad	mano

Exception: Most Latin masculines in **-or** become feminine in French. **error**, *erreur*.

Nouns which are neuter in Latin become masculine in French and Spanish:

Lat.	*n.*	verbum	tempus
Fr.	*m.*	verbe	temps
Sp.	*m.*	verbo	tiempo

Exception: Many Latin neuters, especially those which were commonly used in the plural (which ends in **-a**, like the feminine singular), become feminine singular in French and Spanish:

Lat.	*n. plur.*	arma	data	pecora
Fr.	*f. sing.*	arme	date	pêcore
Sp.	*f. sing.*	arma	data	pêcora

FRENCH THROUGH LATIN

690. Accent

The French stress often preserves the Latin accent. The syllables after the accented syllable in Latin were dropped or became silent in French, which fact explains why the French stress is usually on the last syllable.

691. Vocabulary

Many Latin words remain unchanged in French, as in English: *agenda, alibi, errata, humus, omnibus, ultimatum*, etc.

692. Loss of Letters

1. The final syllable or letters of many Latin words are lost in French or changed to silent **e**: *ami* (amīcum[1]), *mont* (montem), *terre* (terram).

[1] The accusative of all Latin nouns and adjectives is given because the Romance forms are derived from it, not from the nominative.

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is often lost: *homme* (hom**i**nem), *livrer* (lib**e**rāre), *peuple* (pop**u**lus).

3. A consonant between two vowels is often lost: *cruel* (crūd**ē**lem), *dire* (d**i**cere).

4. The first of two consonants is often lost: *frère* (fr**ā**trem).

693. Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in French, but the following changes are to be noted:

(*A*) *Change to a single vowel*

1. **a** sometimes becomes **e**: *père* (p**a**trem), *aimer* (am**ā**re), *gré* (gr**ā**tum), *mer* (m**a**re).
2. **e** sometimes becomes **i**: *six* (s**e**x), *lire* (l**e**gere).
3. **i** sometimes becomes **e**: *ferme* (f**i**rmum), *lettre* (l**i**teram).
4. **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *nombre* (n**u**merum), *onde* (**u**ndam), *rompre* (r**u**mpere).
5. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *chose* (c**au**sam).
6. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e**.

(*B*) *Change to two vowels*

This was very common in accented syllables (cf. **579**, **459**).

1. **ai** is from **a**: *aimer* (am**ā**re), *main* (m**a**num).
2. **ei** is from **e** or **i**: *plein* (pl**ē**nus), *seing* (s**i**gnum).
3. **oi** is from **e**, **i**, **o**, or **u**: *roi* (r**ē**gem), *voie* (v**i**am), *gloire* (gl**o**riam), *croix* (cr**u**x).
4. **ui** is from **o** or **u**: *puis* (p**o**st), *suis* (s**u**m)
5. **au** is from **al**, and **eau** from **el**: *haut* (**a**ltum), *vaut* (v**a**let), *beau* (b**e**llum).
6. **eu**, **oeu**, is from **o**: *seul* (s**ō**lum), *cœur* (c**o**r)
7. **ou** is from **o** or **u**: *nous* (n**ō**s), *prouver* (prob**ā**re), *jour* (d**iu**rnum).
8. **ie** is from **e**: *bien* (b**e**ne), *pied* (p**e**dem)

694. Consonants

1. **b** and **p** sometimes become **v**: *livre* (li**b**rum), *avril* (a**p**rilem).

2. **p** and **v** sometimes become **b** or **f**: *double* (du**p**licem), *chef* (ca**p**ut), *neuf* (no**v**um).

3. *ct* sometimes becomes **it**: *fait* (**factum**), *fruit* (**frūctum**).

4. **t** followed by **i** and a vowel in certain cases becomes **s**: *raison* (**rationem**).

5. **s** before a consonant is dropped and the preceding vowel receives a circumflex accent: *maître* (**magistrum**), *tempête* (**tempestātem**).

6. **c** before **a**, especially at the beginning of words, becomes **ch**: *char* (**carrum**), *chef* (**caput**), *chose* (**causam**).

7. Initial **sc**, **sp**, and **st** become **esc**, **esp**, and **est**: *espace* (**spatium**), *espèce* (**speciem**).

In some words the **s** is dropped and the **e** has an acute accent: *étude* (**studium**).

695. Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in French have undergone the same changes that have been noted for English in this book (cf. especially **com–**, **con–**, **en–**, **em–**, **sur–**, **tra–**). In addition, attention is called to the change from **dis–** to **de–**, **dés–** (**dēshonneur**), **inter–** to **entre–** (**entrevoir**), **per–** to **par–** (**parfait**), **pro–** to **pour–** (**poursuivre**), **sub–** to **sou–**, **sous–** (**souvenir**), **ultra–** to **outre–** (**outremer**).

Latin suffixes in French show much the same form as in English. Note, however, the change of **–ātum** to **é** (**amātum**, *aimé*), **–ōrem** to **–eur** (**auctōrem**, *auteur*), **–ōsum** to **–eux** (**ōtiōsum**, *oiseux*), **–tātem** to **–té** (**lībertātem**, *liberté*)

696. Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension in **–a** end in silent **–e** in French.

2. The French definite article *le*, *la*, is derived from the last syllable of **ille**, **illa**.

3. The comparative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in French: *meilleur* (**melior**), *moins* (**minus**), *pire* (**peior**).

4. The same forms constitute the principal parts of verbs in French as in Latin, with the addition of the present participle.

5. Most French verbs belong to the first conjugation, with infinitive in **–er**. This corresponds to the Latin first conjugation,

with infinitive in **-āre**, but includes a number of verbs of the Latin second and third conjugations.

6. The French second conjugation, with infinitive in **-ir**, corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (**-īre**).

7. The French third conjugation, with infinitive in **-re**, corresponds to the Latin third conjugation (**-ĕre**).

8. The Latin personal endings have undergone considerable change in French. The endings of the French past definite can easily be traced to those of the Latin perfect. Many of the irregular verbs in French preserve forms derived from the Latin:

suis	(**sum**)	*sommes*	(**sumus**)
es	(**es**)	*êtes*	(**estis**)
est	(**est**)	*sont*	(**sunt**)

SPANISH THROUGH LATIN

697. Accent

Accent is greatly simplified in Spanish if the student understands Latin accent. The so-called irregular accent of nouns and adjectives in Spanish preserves the Latin accent of the accusative case:

Lat.	**a'mant**	**a'nimum**	**ima'ginem**	**prōpo'situm**	**dormi're**
Sp.	**aman**	**ánimo**	**imagen**	**propósito**	**dormir**

698. Vocabulary

Hundreds of words in Spanish are either identical with the original Latin form or resemble it so closely that one who knows Latin can understand their meaning at a glance, without knowing the principles that govern word transfer:

Lat.	**aqua**	**arma**	**causa**	**hŏra**	**patria**	**trēs**	**victōria**	**dare**	**ūtilis**
Sp.	**agua**	**arma**	**causa**	**hora**	**patria**	**tres**	**victoria**	**dar**	**útil**

699. Loss of Letters

1. Final letters and syllables are often lost in Spanish, but not to the same extent as in French: *amigo* (**amicum**), *monte* (**montem**), *útil* (**ūtilem**).

2. An unaccented short vowel within a word is sometimes lost: *hombre* (**hom**inem), *librar* (**li**berāre), *pueblo* (**pop**ulum).

3. A consonant (especially **b, d, g, h**) between vowels is sometimes lost: *leer* (**l**egere), *creer* (**cr**ēdere), *traer* (**tra**here).

4. The first of two consonants is sometimes lost, especially **n** before **s**: *escrito* (**scr**iptum), *autor* (**auc**tōrem), *isla* (**ins**ulam).

5. Double consonants become single: *oficio* (**off**icium), *nulo* (**nūll**um), *permitir* (**permitt**ere). Double **n** becomes **ñ**: *año* (**ann**um); **ñ** is also for **ni**, etc.: *señor* (**seni**or).

700. Vowels

The Latin vowels often remain unchanged in Spanish, but the following changes are to be noted:

(*A*) *Change to a single vowel*

1. Short **i** sometimes becomes **e**: *lengua* (**l**ĭnguam), *letra* (**l**itteram), *menos* (**m**inus).
2. Short **u** sometimes becomes **o**: *onda* (**und**am), *romper* (**rump**ere).
3. **au** sometimes becomes **o**: *oido* (**aud**ītum), *cosa* (**caus**am).
4. **ae** and **oe** are treated as **e**.

(*B*) *Change to two vowels*

1. Accented short **e** becomes **ie**: *bien* (**b**ene), *cielo* (**cael**um), *cierto* (**cert**um).
2. Accented short **o** becomes **ue**: *bueno* (**b**onum), *cuerpo* (**corp**us), *nuevo* (**nov**em).

701. Consonants

1. **c** sometimes becomes **g**: *amigo* (**am**īcum).
2. **p** sometimes becomes **b**: *pueblo* (**p**opulum).
3. **t** sometimes becomes **d**: *maduro* (**mā**tūrum), *padre* (**pa**trem).
4. **ct** becomes **ch**: *dicho* (**dict**um), *hecho* (**fact**um), *ocho* (**oct**ō).
5. **li** becomes **j**: *consejo* (**cōnsil**ium), *hijo* (**fīl**ium), *mejor* (**mel**ior).
6. Initial **f** sometimes becomes **h**: *hacer* (**face**re), *hijo* (**fīl**ium).
7. Initial **cl** and **pl** sometimes become **ll**: *llamar* (**clā**māre), *llano* (**plā**num).

8. Initial sc, sp, and st become esc, esp, est: *escribir* (scrībere), *esperar* (spērāre), *estar* (stāre).

702. Word Formation

The Latin prefixes used in Spanish are easily recognizable. Note the following changes which sometimes occur: ex- to ej- (*ejercer*), dis- to des- (*descrédito*), super- to sobre- (*sobrehumano*).

The Latin suffixes are also used in Spanish. Note the following changes: -ātum to -ado (*amado*), -tātem, -tūtem, to -tad, -tud (*libertad, virtud*), -tiōnem to -cion (*oración*), -tiam to -cia (*gracia*).

703. Inflection

1. Nouns of the first Latin declension ending in -a retain the -a in Spanish: *gracia* (grātia), *tierra* (terra).

2. Nouns of the second Latin declension in -us and -um end in -o in Spanish: *carro* (carrus), *reino* (rēgnum).

3. The comparative and superlative forms of Latin irregular adjectives are to some extent preserved in Spanish: *peor* (peior), *mayor* (maior), *óptimo* (optimus), *libérrimo* (liberrimus).

4. The Spanish first conjugation, with infinitive in -ar, corresponds to the Latin first conjugation (-āre).

5. The Spanish second conjugation, with infinitive in -er, corresponds to the Latin second and third conjugations (-ēre, -ĕre).

6. The Spanish third conjugation, with infinitive in -ir, corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (-īre) but also includes many verbs of the third conjugation.

7. Many of the tenses of the Spanish verb are very much like the Latin. Cf. the imperfect:

Lat.	amābam	amābās	amābat	amābāmus	amābātis	amābant
Sp.	amaba	amabas	amaba	amábamos	amabais	amaban

Observe that final -m and -t of the personal endings of Latin verbs disappear in Spanish.

The Spanish past definite is very similar to the Latin perfect.

8. The Latin perfect participle will suggest at once the past participle of the Spanish verb, no matter how irregular: impressus, Sp. *impreso*, scriptus, Sp. *escrito*.

704. Vocabulary

I The Classroom

blackboard, tabula (nigra) — *chalk*, crēta
desk, scrīnium — *pencil*, stilus
door, iānua — *pen*, calamus
open, *close the door*, aperī, claude iānuam — *ink*, ātrāmentum
seat, sella — *paper*, charta
window, fenestra
sit down, cōnsīde, -ite — *stand up*, surge, -ite

II The Lesson

page, pāgina — *to speak*, *know Latin*, loquī, scīre Latīnē
lesson, pēnsum — *translate into English*, Anglicē redde

III Grammar

parts of speech, partēs ōrātiōnis: nōmen, adiectīvum, prōnōmen (persōnāle, relātīvum,[1] etc.), verbum, adverbium, praepositiō, coniūnctiō, interiectiō
case, cāsus: nōminātīvus, genitīvus, datīvus, accūsātīvus,[1] etc.
gender, genus: masculīnum, fēminīnum, neutrum
number, numerus: singulāris, plūrālis
person, persōna: prīma, secunda, tertia
declension, dēclīnātiō; *to decline*, dēclīnāre
tense, tempus: praesēns, imperfectum, futūrum, perfectum, praeteritum perfectum, futūrum perfectum
mood, modus: indicātīvus,[1] etc.
voice, vōx: activa, passīva
conjugation, coniugātiō; *to conjugate*, coniugāre
participle, participium — *deponent*, dēpōnēns

IV Miscellaneous

good morning, salvē, -ēte — *today*, hodiē
good-by, valē, -ēte — *yesterday*, herī
how are you? quid agis? — *tomorrow*, crās
good! bene! — *that's enough*, satis est

[1] Similarly other words whose English forms end in *-ive*.

ADESTE FIDĒLĒS[1]

Adeste, fidēlēs,
Laetī triumphantēs;
Venīte, venīte in Bethlehem;
Nātum vidēte
Rēgem angelōrum;
Venīte adōrēmus, venīte adōrēmus,
Venīte adōrēmus Dominum.

Cantet nunc "Iō!"
Chorus angelōrum;
Cantet nunc aula caelestium:
"Glōria, glōria
In excelsīs Deō!"
Venīte, etc.

Ergō quī nātus
Die hodiernā,
Iēsū, tibi sit glōria;
Patrīs aeternī
Verbum carō factum!
Venīte, etc.

THE STAR-SPANGLED BANNER

Tr. F. A. Geyser

Ōh, potestne cernī, praefulgente diē,
Salūtātum signum circā noctis adventum?
Lātī clāv(ī) et stellae, dēcertant(e) aciē,
Glōriōsē cingunt oppidī mūnīmentum!
Iaculumque rubēns, globus sūrsum rumpēns
Per noctem mōnstrant vexillum fulgēns.
Stellātumne vexillum volāns tegit nōs,
Patriam līberam fortiumque domōs?

(For "America" see page 10)

[1] Sung to the tune of the Portuguese Hymn, "O Come, All Ye Faithful."

GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song



INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Odes I. 22 (ca. 25 B.C.)

Dr. F. F. FLEMMING, ca. 1811



705. BOOKS FOR REFERENCE

I. BOOKS FOR SPECIAL ASSIGNMENTS (referred to in the lessons)

Baker, Emilie Kip, *Stories of Old Greece and Rome.* The Macmillan Company, New York, 1913.

Bulfinch, Thomas, *The Age of Fable* (Everyman's Library). E. P. Dutton and Company, New York, 1910.

Colum, Padraic, *The Adventures of Odysseus and the Tale of Troy.* The Macmillan Company, New York, 1927.

Davis, William Stearns, *A Day in Old Rome.* Allyn and Bacon, Boston, 1925.

Gayley, Charles Mills, *Classic Myths in English Literature and Art.* Ginn and Company, Boston, 1911.

Guerber, H. A., *Myths of Greece and Rome.* American Book Company, New York, 1921.

Guerber, H. A., *The Story of the Romans.* American Book Company, New York, 1924.

Haaren, John H., and Poland, A. B., *Famous Men of Rome.* American Book Company, New York, 1921.

Harding, C. H. and S. B., *The City of the Seven Hills.* Scott, Foresman and Company, Chicago, 1902.

Harding, C. H. and S. B., *Stories of Greek Gods, Heroes, and Men.* Scott, Foresman and Company, Chicago, 1897.

Johnston, Harold W., *The Private Life of the Romans.* Scott, Foresman and Company, Chicago, 1932.

McDaniel, Walton Brooks, *Roman Private Life and Its Survivals.* Longmans, Green and Company, New York, 1924.

Mills, Dorothy, *The Book of the Ancient Romans.* G. P. Putnam's Sons, New York, 1927.

Sabin, Frances E., *Classical Myths That Live Today.* Silver, Burdett and Company, New York, 1927.

Showerman, Grant, *Rome and the Romans.* The Macmillan Company, New York, 1931.

Tappan, Eva March, *The Story of the Roman People.* Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, 1910.

II. NOVELS AND OTHER BOOKS FOR HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Bulwer-Lytton, Edward, *The Last Days of Pompeii* (Pocket Classics). The Macmillan Company, New York, 1908.

Cowles, J. D., *Our Little Roman Cousin of Long Ago.* L. C. Page and Company, Boston, 1913.

Hall, Jennie, *Buried Cities.* The Macmillan Company, New York, 1922.

Macgregor, Mary, *The Story of Rome.* Frederick A. Stokes Company, New York, 1913.

White, Edward Lucas, *The Unwilling Vestal.* E. P. Dutton and Company, 1918.

III. SUPPLEMENTARY BOOKS FOR THE TEACHER

Johnson, Edwin Lee, *Latin Words of Common English.* D. C. Heath and Company, 1931.

Kent, Roland G., *Language and Philology.* Longmans, Green and Company, New York, 1923.

Lawler, Lillian B., *The Latin Club.* League Service, New York University, New York, 1929.

Scott, H. F., Carr, W. L., and Wilkinson, G. T., *Language and Its Growth.* Scott, Foresman and Company, Chicago, 1935.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The English pronunciation of proper names is indicated by a simple system. The vowels are as follows: ā as in *bāte*, ă as in *băt*, ē as in *fēed*, ĕ as in *fĕd*, ī as in *bīte*, ĭ as in *bĭt*, ō as in *hōpe*, ŏ as in *hŏp*, ū as in *cūte*, ŭ as in *cŭt*. In the endings -ĕs the -s is soft as in *rose*. When the accented syllable ends in a consonant, the vowel is short, otherwise, it is long.

A

ā, ab, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by.

abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go away.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be absent.

ac, *see* **atque.**

accēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, approach.

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall to, befall, happen (*w. dat.*).

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, receive.

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, blame, accuse.

ācer, ācris, ācre, sharp, keen.

ācriter, *comp.*, **ācrius,** *superl.*, **ācerrimē,** *adv.*, sharply.

Actium, -tī, *n.*, Actium (Ak'shium), *a promontory in Epirus*.

ad, *prep. w. acc.*, to, toward, for, near.

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead to, influence.

adhibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, apply, employ, summon.

adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be near, be present.

adventus, -ūs, *m.*, coming to, arrival.

aedēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, house.

aedificium, -cī, *n.*, building.

aeger, -gra, -grum, sick.

Aegyptiī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Egyptians

Aegyptus, -i, *f.*, Egypt.

Aenēās, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas (Ēnē'as).

Aeolus, -i, *m.*, Aeolus (Ē'olus).

aequē, *adv.*, justly.

aequus, -a, -um, even, equal, fair, just, calm.

aestās, aestātis, *f.*, summer.

aetās, aetātis, *f.*, age, time of life.

Aetna, -ae, *f.*, (Mt.) Etna.

afficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, affect, afflict with, visit with.

Āfrica, -ae, *f.*, Africa.

Āfricānus, -i, *m.*, Africā'nus.

ager, agrī, *m.*, field, land, country.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, live or spend (*of time*), do, treat, discuss; **grātiās agere,** thank; **triumphum agere,** celebrate a triumph.

agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.

āh! *interj.*, ah!

āla, -ae, *f.*, wing.

Albānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Albans, *the people of Alba Longa*.

albus, -a, -um, white.

Alexandria, -ae, *f.*, Alexandria, *a city in Egypt*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, another's, unfavorable, foreign, of no concern.
alius, alia, aliud, other, another; **alius . . . alius**, one . . . another; **alii . . . alii**, some . . . others.
alō, -ere, alui, alitus, feed, nourish.
Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, the Alps.
altē, *adv.*, on high, deeply, far.
alter, altera, alterum, the other (*of two*); **alter . . . alter**, the one . . . the other.
altus, -a, -um, high, deep, tall.
ambō, -ae, -ō, both.
America, -ae, *f.*, America.
Americānus, -a, -um, American; **Americānus, -ī**, *m.*, an American.
amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.
amīcus, -a, -um, friendly; **amīcus, -ī**, *m.*, **amīca, -ae**, *f.*, friend.
āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus, let go, lose.
amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, love, like.
amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.
amphitheātrum, -ī, *n.*, amphitheater.
amplus, -a, -um, large, great, distinguished, magnificent.
Anglicus, -a, -um, English.
animus, -ī, *m.*, mind, spirit, courage.
Anna, -ae, *f.*, Anna.
annus, -ī, *m.*, year.
ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before (*of time or space*).
anteā, *adv.*, before.
antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go before, precede, take the lead, excel.
antīquus, -a, -um, ancient, of old.
aperiō, -īre, aperuī, apertus, open.
Apollō, -inis, *m.*, Apol'lo.
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call, call upon, name.
Appius, -pī, *m.*, Ap'pius.
Appius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Appius, Appian.
aptus, -a, -um, fit, suitable (*w. dat.*).
apud, *prep. w. acc.*, among, at the home of, with.
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water.
aquaeductus, -ūs, *m.*, aqueduct.
Aquītānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Aquitā'nians, *a people in Gaul.*
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree.
arcus, -ūs, *m.*, arch, bow.
arēna, -ae, *f.*, sand, arena.
argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver.
Ariovistus, -ī, *m.*, Ariovis'tus.
arma, -ōrum, *n.*, weapons, arms.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, arm.
arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel.
ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus, climb (up), ascend.
ascrībō, -ere, ascrīpsī, ascrīptus, add to (*in writing*).
Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia.
Athēna, -ae, *f.*, Athē'na, *Greek goddess of wisdom.*

Atlanticus, -a, -um, Atlantic.
atque (ac), *conj.*, and.
ātrium, -trī, *n.*, atrium, hall, house.
Atticus, -ī, *m.*, At'ticus.
attingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, touch, reach.
auctor, -ōris, *m.*, maker, author.
auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*, authority, influence.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.
audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear.
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase.
aureus, -a, -um, of gold, golden.
aurīga, -ae, *m.*, charioteer.
aurōra, -ae, *f.*, dawn.
aurum, -ī, *n.*, gold.
aut, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.* (*never first word*), moreover, on the other hand.
auxilium, -lī, *n.*, help, aid, assistance; *pl.*, reinforcements.
āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversus, turn away from.
avus, -ī, *m.*, grandfather.
axis, -is, *m.*, axle.

B

Bacchus, -ī, *m.*, Bacchus, *god of wine.*
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, barbarous; barbarus, -ī, *m.*, barbarian, foreigner.
Belgae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Belgians.
bellum, -ī, *n.*, war; bellum gerere, wage *or* carry on war.
bene, *adv.*, well, well done; *comp.*, melius, better; *superl.*, optimē, best, very good.
beneficium, -cī, *n.*, kindness, favor, benefit.
bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink.
bis, *adv.*, twice.
bonus, -a, -um, good; *comp.*, melior, melius, better; *superl.*, optimus, -a, -um, best.
brācae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, trousers.
brevis, -e, short.
Britanni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Britons.
Britannia, -ae, *f.*, Britain.

C

C., *abbreviation for* Gāius.
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.
caelum, -ī, *n.*, sky.
Caesar, -aris, *m.*, Caesar.
callidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crafty, clever.
Calypsō, -ūs, *f.*, Calyp'so.
Campānia, -ae, *f.*, Campa'nia, *a district of Italy.*
candidus, -a, -um, white.
canis, -is, *m.*, dog.
canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing.
Capēna, *see* porta.
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, take, seize, capture.
Capitōlium, -lī, *n.*, the Capitol, *temple of Jupiter at Rome;* the Capitoline Hill.
captīvus, -i, *m.*, prisoner.

caput, capĭtis, *n.*, head.
carmen, -mĭnis, *n.*, song.
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon.
Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians (Carthajin'-ians).
Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city in Africa.*
cārus, -a, -um, dear.
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp; **castra pōnere,** pitch camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, fall, chance, accident; **cāsū,** by chance.
Catilīna, -ae, *m.*, Catiline.
Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato (Kā'tō), *a famous Roman senator.*
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; **causās ōrāre,** plead cases.
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, move, retreat, yield.
celer, celeris, celere, swift.
celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, swiftness, speed.
celeriter, *comp.*, **celerius,** quickly.
Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, Celts, *a people of Gaul.*
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.
centum, hundred.
cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax.
Cerēs, -ĕris, *f.*, Ceres (Sē'rēs), *goddess of agriculture.*
cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, separate, discern, see.
certē, certainly, at least.
certus, -a, -um, fixed, certain, sure; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** inform him about.
Christus, -ī, *m.*, Christ
cibus, -ī, *m.*, food.
Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (Sis'ero).
Circē, -ae, *f.*, Circe (Sir'sē), *a sorceress.*
circum, *prep. w. acc.*, around.
circus, -ī, *m.*, circle, circus, *esp. the Circus Maximus at Rome.*
cīvis, cīvis, *m.*, citizen.
cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*, citizenship, state.
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, cry out, shout.
clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout.
Clāra, -ae, *f.*, Clara.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, brilliant, famous.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, close.
Cleopātra, -ae, *f.*, Cleopā'tra.
Cn., *abbreviation for* **Gnaeus** (Nē'us).
cognātus, -ī, *m.*, relative.
cognōmen, -mĭnis, *n.*, cognomen, surname.
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nĭtus, learn, recognize; *perf.*, have learned, know, understand.
cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus, drive together, collect, compel.
colō, -ere, coluī, cultus, till, dwell in, inhabit, worship.
colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony.
colōnus, -ī, *m.*, settler.
Colossēum, -ī, *n.*, the Colossē'um, *an amphitheater at Rome.*
Comitium, -tī, *n.*, the Comitium (Comish'ium), *the assembly place of the Romans.*

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join together, commit, entrust; **proelium committere,** begin battle.

commodus, -a, -um, suitable, convenient.

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move away, disturb.

commūnis, -e, common.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, get ready, get together, prepare.

concordia, -ae, *f.*, harmony.

condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*, condition, terms.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, do up, complete, exhaust.

cōnfīdō, -ere, have confidence (*in*), be confident.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make firm, encourage, establish, strengthen.

cōnscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptus, enlist, enroll.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, save, preserve.

cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*, plan, prudence, advice; **cōnsilium capere,** adopt a plan.

cōnsistō, -ere, cōnstitī, cōnstitūrus, stand still, stop.

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, catch sight of, see.

cōnstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus, set up, establish, determine.

cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *the highest Roman official.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus, consult.

contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūrus, struggle, fight, hasten.

continēō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, hold (together), detain, contain, hem in.

contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come together, assemble.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, call together, summon.

cōpia, -ae, *f.*, supply, abundance; *pl.*, forces, troops.

coquō, -ere, coxī, coctus, cook.

coquus, -ī, *m.*, cook.

cor, cordis, *n.*, heart.

Corioli, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Cori'oli, *a town in Latium.*

Cornēlia, -ae, *f.*, Cornē'lia.

Cornēlius, -lī, *m.*, Cornē'lius.

cornicen, -cinis, *m.*, hornblower.

corōna, -ae, *f.*, crown, wreath.

corpus, -poris, *n.*, body.

Corsica, -ae, *f.*, Corsica.

crātēr, -ēris, *m.*, bowl.

crēber, -bra, -brum, frequent, close together.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, believe, entrust (*w. dat.*).

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, create, elect.

Crēta, -ae, *f.*, Crete.

cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture.

culpa, -ae, *f.*, fault.

cum, *prep. w. abl.*, with.

cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*, desire, greed.

cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītus, desire.

cūr, *adv.*, why.
Cūrius, -ri, *m.*, Curius.
cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, concern; (cum) magnā cūrā, very carefully.
cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, cure.
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursūrus, run.
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, course.

D

dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from, concerning, about.
dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess.
dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, ought, owe, be obliged to.
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, depart, go away.
decem, ten.
December, -bris, *m.*, December.
decimus, -a, -um, tenth.
dēcipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, deceive.
dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, defend.
dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, select.
dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, point out, show.
Dentātus, -ī, *m.*, Dentā'tus.
dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put *or* lay aside.
dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus, desert.
dēsiliō, -īre, -siluī, -sultūrus, jump down.
dēsinō, -ere, -siī, -situs, stop, cease.
dēspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look down on, despise.
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, be lacking.
deus, -ī, *m.*, god.
dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, swallow.
dexter, -tra, -trum, right (hand).
Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Dīā'na, *goddess of hunting.*
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, say, tell.
dictātor, -ōris, *m.*, dictator.
dictātūra, -ae, *f.*, dictatorship.
dictum, -ī, *n.*, word, saying.
Dīdō, -ōnis, *f.*, Dī'dō.
diēs, diēī, *m.*, day.
difficilis, -e, difficult.
digitus, -ī, *m.*, finger.
dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, carefulness, diligence.
dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, send away.
discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go away, depart.
disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, training, instruction, learning.
discipulus, -ī, *m.*, discipula, -ae, *f.*, learner, pupil.
dissimilis, -e, unlike.
diū, *comp.*, diūtius, *superl.*, diūtissimē, *adv.*, for a long time.
dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsus, divide.
dō, dare, dedī, datus, give; poenam dare, pay the penalty.
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, grief, pain.
dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, lord, ruler.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, give, present.
dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift.
dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, doubt, hesitate.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, draw.
dulcis, -e, sweet.
dum, *conj.*, while.
duo, -ae, -o, two.
duodēvīginti, eighteen.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, harsh, cruel.
dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general.

E

ē, ex, *prep. w. abl.*, from, out from, out of.
ecce, *interj.*, behold!
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsus, eat.
ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, bring up, educate.
ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out.
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, make out, bring about, complete.
ego, meī, I.
ēgregius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent.
ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw *or* thrust out.
elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant.
em! *interj.*, there! take that!
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, take, buy.
Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, Epī'rus, *a province in Greece.*
epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter.
eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman.
equus, -ī, *m.*, horse.
ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptus, burst forth.
et, *conj.*, and, even; et . . . et, both . . . and.
etiam, *adv.*, also, even, too.
Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Etruscans.
Eumaeus, -ī, *m.*, Eumaeus (Ūmē'us).
Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe.
Eurylochus, -ī, *m.*, Eurylochus (Ūril'okus), *a companion of Ulysses.*
ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus, go out, escape.
ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overturn.
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, summon.
excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go away, depart.
exemplum, -ī, *n.*, sample, example, model.
exeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go out *or* forth.
exerceō, -ēre, -ercuī, -ercitus, keep busy, train.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, (trained) army.
existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, consider.
expediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, set free.
expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive out.
explicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, unfold, spread out, explain.
explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, investigate, explore.

expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, capture by assault.
exsilium, –ī, *n.*, exile.
exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look out for, await, wait.
exstinguō, –ere, –stinxī, –stinctus, extinguish, destroy.
exstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, pile up, build up.
extrēmus, –a, –um, farthest, last, end of.

F

Fabius, –bī, *m.*, Fā'bius.
fābula, –ae, *f.*, story.
facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, –e, easy.
faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus, do, make; **verba facere,** speak, make a speech; **certiōrem eum facere dē,** inform him about.
factum, –ī, *n.*, deed.
fallō, –ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive.
fāma, –ae, *f.*, report, fame, reputation.
familia, –ae, *f.*, household, family.
familiāris, –e (belonging to the family), friendly; *as noun,* friend.
fātum, –ī, *n.*, fate; *often personified,* the Fates.
Faustulus, –ī, *m.*, Faus'tulus.
fēlīciter, *adv.*, happily.
fēlīx, *gen.* **–īcis,** happy.
fēmina, –ae, *f.*, woman.
fēriae, –ārum, *f. pl.*, holidays.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring.
ferrum, –ī, *n.*, iron.
fīlia, –ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, –ī, *m.*, son.
fīnis, fīnis, *m.*, end, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory.
fīnitimus, –a, –um, neighboring, near; **fīnitimus, –ī,** *m.*, neighbor.
firmus, –a, –um, strong, steadfast, firm, solid.
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, cry, weep.
flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower.
flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river.
fluō, –ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow.
focus, –ī, *m.*, hearth.
fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring.
fōrma, –ae, *f.*, shape, [image, form.
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
fortis, –e, strong, brave.
fortiter, bravely.
fortūna, –ae, *f.*, fortune.
forum, –ī, *n.*, market place; Forum (*at Rome*).
frangō, –ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, wreck.
frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother.
frequēns, *gen.* **frequentis,** *adj.*, in great numbers, often.
frōns, frontis, *f.*, forehead, front.
frūmentum, –ī, *n.*, grain.
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fuga, –ae, *f.*, flight; **in fugam dare,** put to flight.
fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, run away, flee.

fulmen, –minis, *n.*, lightning.
futūrus, *see* **sum.**

G

Gāia, –ae, *f.*, Gā'ia.
Gāius, –ī, *m.*, Gā'ius.
Gallia, –ae, *f.*, Gaul, *ancient France.*
Gallicus, –a, –um, Gallic.
Gallus, –ī, *m.*, a Gaul.
geminī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, twins.
gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation.
genus, generis, *n.*, birth, race, kind.
Germānia, –ae, *f.*, Germany.
Germānus, –ī, *m.*, a German.
gerō, –ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, manage, wear; **bellum gerere,** wage war.
gladiātor, –ōris, *m.*, gladiator.
gladius, –dī, *m.*, sword.
glōria, –ae, *f.*, glory, fame.
Gracchus, –ī, *m.*, Gracchus (Grak'us).
Graecia, –ae, *f.*, Greece.
Graecus, –a, –um, Greek; **Graecus, –ī,** *m.*, a Greek.
grātia, –ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor, influence, grace; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful; **grātiās agere,** thank.
grātus, –a, –um, pleasing, grateful.
gravis, –e, heavy, serious, severe.
graviter, seriously.

H

ha! *interj.*, ha!
habeō, –ēre, habuī, habitus, have, hold, consider; **grātiam habēre,** feel grateful (*w. dat.*); **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver an oration.
habitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, live.
haereō, –ēre, haesī, haesus, stick.
Hannibal, –alis, *m.*, Hannibal, *a Carthaginian general.*
Helenus, –ī, *m.*, Hel'enus.
herba, –ae, *f.*, grass, plant.
Hesperia, –ae, *f.*, Hespe'ria.
Hibernia, –ae, *f.*, Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc, this; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter.
Hispānia, –ae, *f.*, Spain.
Hispānus, –a, –um, Spanish; **Hispānus, –ī,** *m.*, a Spaniard.
ho! *interj.*, ho!
homō, hominis, *m.*, man, human being.
honestās, –tātis, *f.*, honor, honesty.
honor, –ōris, *m.*, honor, office.
hōra, –ae, *f.*, hour.
hospes, –pitis, *m.*, guest.
hospita, –ae, *f.*, guest.
hostis, hostis, *m.*, enemy (*usually pl.*).
humilis, –e, low, humble.

I

iaciō, –ere, iēcī, iactus, throw, cast, hurl.
iam, *adv.*, already; **nōn iam,** no longer.

ibi, *adv.*, there.
īdem, eadem, idem, same.
ignis, –is, *m.*, fire.
ignōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, be ignorant of, not know.
ille, illa, illud, *demonst. adj.*, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
imāgō, imāginis, *f.*, likeness (i.e. *a statue or picture*).
impedimentum, –ī, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.
impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, hinder.
imperātor, –ōris, *m.*, commander, general.
imperium, –rī, *n.*, command, power.
imperō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, command, order, govern (*w. dat.*).
impetus, –ūs, *m.*, attack.
in, *prep. w. acc.*, into, to, against; *w. abl.*, in, on.
incertus, –a, –um, uncertain.
incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take to, begin.
incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, urge on, arouse.
incolō, –ere, incoluī, incultus, dwell, inhabit.
inferior, **īnferius**, lower.
inimīcus, –a, –um, unfriendly, hostile; *as noun*, enemy.
iniūria, –ae, *f.*, wrong, injustice, injury.
inquit, says he, said he.
instō, –āre, **īnstitī**, —, press on, threaten.
īnstruō, –ere, –strūxī, –strūctus, arrange, provide, draw up.
īnsula, –ae, *f.*, island.
integer, –gra, –grum, untouched, fresh.
intellegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus, understand.
inter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among.
intercipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, intercept.
interclūdō, –ere, –clūsī, –clūsus, shut off, cut off.
interficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, kill.
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile.
intermittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go between, suspend, stop, cease.
invenīō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus, come upon, find.
iō, *interj.*, hurrah!
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, self, very.
īra, –ae, *f.*, anger.
īrātus, –a, –um, angry.
is, ea, id, this, that; *as pron.*, he, she, it.
ita, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.
Italia, –ae, *f.*, Italy.
itaque, *adv.*, and so, therefore.
iter, **itineris**, *n.*, journey, road, march.
iterum, *adv.*, again, for the second time.
Ithaca, –ae, *f.*, Ith'aca.
iubeō, –ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, order, command.
iūdicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, judge, decide.
Iūlia, –ae, *f.*, Julia.
Iūlius, –ī, *m.*, Julius.

iungō, –ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join (to) (*w. dat.*).
Iūnō, –ōnis, *f.*, Juno, *a goddess, wife of Jupiter.*
Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*, Jupiter, *king of the gods.*
iūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, swear.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, justice.
iūstē, *adv.*, justly.
iūstus, –a, –um, just.
Iuvenālis, –is, *m.*, Jū'venal.

L

L., *abbreviation for* Lūcius.
labor, –ōris, *m.*, work, trouble, hardship.
labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, labor, work, suffer.
lacrima, –ae, *f.*, tear.
lanterna, –ae, *f.*, lantern.
Lār, Laris, *m.*, Lar, *a household god.*
lassitūdō, –tūdinis, *f.*, weariness.
Latīnus, –a, –um, *adj.*, Latin, belonging to Latium; Latīnī, –ōrum, *m.*, the Latins; Latīna (lingua), the Latin language.
Latīnus, –ī, *m.*, Latī'nus.
Lātōna, –ae, *f.*, Latō'na, *mother of Apollo and Diana.*
lātus, –a, –um, wide.
laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, praise.
Lāvīnia, –ae, *f.*, Lavin'ia.
Lāvīnium, –ī, *n.*, Lavin'ium.
lavō, –āre, lāvī, lautus, wash.
lectīca, –ae, *f.*, litter, sedan.
lēgātus, –ī, *m.*, envoy, lieutenant general.
legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus, gather, choose, read.
levis, –e, light (*in weight*).
leviter, *adv.*, lightly.
lēx, lēgis, *f.*, law.
liber, lībrī, *m.*, book.
liber, –era, –erum, free.
līberē, *adv.*, freely.
līberī, –ōrum, *m.*, children.
līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, set free.
lībertās, –tātis, *f.*, freedom.
licet, –ēre, licuit, it is permitted.
lignum, –ī, *n.*, wood.
ligō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tie, bind.
lingua, –ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
littera, –ae, *f.*, a letter (*of the alphabet*); *pl.*, a letter (*epistle*), literature.
Līvius, –vī, *m.*, Livius.
locus, –ī, *m.* (*pl.*, loca, locōrum, *n.*), place.
longē, *adv.*, far away.
longus, –a, –um, long.
lōtus, –ī, *f.*, lotus.
Lūcius, –cī, *m.*, Lucius.
lūdō, –ere, lūsi, lūsus, play.
lūdus, –ī, *m.*, game, school (*as a place for exercise*).
lupa, –ae, *f.*, she-wolf.
Lūsitānia, –ae, *f.*, Portugal.
lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light.

M

M., *abbreviation for* Mārcus.
magis, *adv.*, more; *superl.*, maximē, very, very greatly, especially.
magister, –trī, *m.*, teacher.

magnus, –a, –um, big, large, great; *comp.*, **maior, maius,** greater; *superl.*, **maximus, –a, –um,** greatest, very great.

maior, *see* **magnus.**

male, *adv.*, badly; *comp.*, **peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimē,** worst.

malus, –a, –um, bad, evil; *comp.*, **peior, peius,** worse; *superl.*, **pessimus, –a, –um,** very bad, worst.

mandō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, entrust.

maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain.

manus, –ūs, *f.*, hand, group, force.

Mārcius, –cī, *m.*, Marcius (Mar'shius).

Mārcus, –ī, *m.*, Marcus.

mare, maris, *n.*, sea.

Maria, –ae, *f.*, Maria, Mary.

marītus, –ī, *m.*, husband.

Marius, –rī, *m.*, Marius.

Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, *god of war.*

māter, mātris, *f.*, mother.

māteria, –ae, *f.*, matter, timber.

mātrimōnium, –nī, *n.*, marriage.

mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātūrus, hasten.

maximē, *see* **magis.**

maximus, –a, –um, *see* **magnus.**

Maximus, –ī, *m.*, Maximus.

medicus, –ī, *m.*, doctor.

Mediterrāneum (Mare), Mediterranean Sea.

medius, –a, –um, middle (of).

mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.

melior, *see* **bonus.**

memoria, –ae, *f.*, memory; **memoriā tenēre,** remember.

mēnsa, –ae, *f.*, table.

mēnsis, –is, *m.*, month.

Mercurius, –rī, *m.*, Mercury.

mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus, deserve, earn.

mēta, –ae, *f.*, goal, turning post, *in the Circus.*

meus, –a, –um, mine, my.

Midās, –ae, *m.*, Mī'dăs.

migrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātūrus, depart.

mīles, mīlitis, *m.*, soldier.

mīlle, *pl.*, **mīlia,** thousand.

Minerva, –ae, *f.*, Minerva, *goddess of wisdom.*

minimē, *see* **minus.**

minimus, –a, –um, *see* **parvus.**

minor, *see* **parvus.**

Mīnōs, –ōis, *m.*, Mī'nŏs, *a Cretan king and lawgiver.*

minus, *adv.*, less; *superl.*, **minimē,** least.

miser, –era, –erum, wretched, poor, unhappy.

Mithridātēs, –is, *m.*, Mithridā'tēs, *king of Pontus in Asia Minor.*

mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus, let go, send.

modus, –ī, *m.*, measure, limit, manner, kind.

moneō, –ēre, monuī, monitus, remind, warn.

mōns, montis, *m.*, mountain; **summus mōns,** the top of the mountain.

mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, point out, show.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom.
moveō, –ēre, mōvī, mōtus, move.
mox, *adv.*, soon.
mulier, mulieris, *f.*, woman.
multum, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, plūs, more; *superl.*, plūrimum, most.
multus, –a, –um, much; *pl.*, many; *comp.*, plūrēs, plūra, more; *superl.*, plūrimus, –a, –um, most.
mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, fortify, defend; viam mūnīre, build a road.
mūnus, mūneris, *n.*, duty, service, gift.
mūrus, –ī, *m.*, wall.
mūtō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, change.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.
nārrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, tell, relate.
nātūra, –ae, *f.*, nature.
nauta, –ae, *m.*, sailor.
nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sail.
nāvis, nāvis, *f.*, ship.
nē . . . quidem (*emphatic word between*), not even.
–ne (*enclitic*), *introduces questions.*
nec, *see* neque.
necessārius, –a, –um, necessary.
neglegentia, –ae, *f.*, negligence.
negōtium, –ī, *n.*, business.
nēmō, *dat.* nēmini, *acc.* nēminem (*no other forms*), no one.
nepōs, –ōtis, *m.*, grandson.
Neptūnus, –ī, *m.*, Neptune, *god of the sea.*
neque (*or* nec), and not, nor; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
neuter, –tra, –trum, neither (*of two*).
nihil, nothing.
nisi, *conj.*, unless, except.
nōbilis, –e, distinguished, noble.
nōbīscum = cum nōbīs.
noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, do harm to (*w. dat.*).
nōmen, nōminis, *n.*, name.
nōn, *adv.*, not; nōn iam, *adv.*, no longer; nōndum, not yet.
nōnus, –a, –um, ninth.
nōs, nostrum, we, *pl. of* ego.
nōscō, –ere, nōvī, nōtus, learn; *perf.*, I have learned, I know.
noster, –tra, –trum, our.
nōtus, –a, –um, known, familiar.
novem, nine.
novus, –a, –um, new, strange.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
nūllus, –a, –um, no, none, no one.
numerus, –ī, *m.*, number.
Numidia, –ae, *f.*, Numidia, *a country in Africa.*
numquam, *adv.*, never.
nunc, *adv.*, now.
nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, report, announce.
nūntius, –ī, *m.*, messenger.

O

ō, *interj.*, O!
ob, *prep. w. acc.*, toward, on account of, for.

obtineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold, obtain.
occīdō, –ere, –cīdī, –cīsus, kill.
occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, seize.
Ōceanus, –ī, *m.*, ocean (*esp. the Atlantic Ocean*).
octāvus, –a, –um, eighth.
octō, eight.
oculus, –ī, *m.*, eye.
officium, –cī, *n.*, duty.
ōh! *interj.*, oh!
oho! *interj.*, oho!
ōlim, *adv.*, sometime, once upon a time.
Olympus, –ī, *m.*, Olym'pus, *the home of the gods.*
omnis, omne, all, every.
opera, –ae, *f.*, work; **meā operā,** through my efforts.
oppidum, –ī, *n.*, town.
opprimō, –ere, –pressī, –pressus, overwhelm, surprise, overcome.
oppugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, attack.
optimē, *see* **bene.**
optimus, *see* **bonus.**
opus, operis, *n.*, work.
ōrāculum, –ī, *n.*, oracle, prophecy.
ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, speech; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** deliver an oration.
ōrātor, –ōris, *m.*, speaker, orator.
ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*, order, rank.
ōrnāmentum, –ī, *n.*, ornament, jewel.
ōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beg, ask; **causās ōrāre,** plead cases.
ostendō, –ere, ostendī, ostentus, (stretch out), show, display.
ōtium, ōtī, *n.*, leisure, rest.
ovis, –is, *f.*, sheep.

P

P., *abbreviation for* **Pūblius.**
pācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
pāgina, –ae, *f.*, page.
pār, *gen.* **paris,** equal (*w. dat.*).
parātus, –a, –um, prepared, ready.
pāreō, –ēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, (appear), be obedient to, obey (*w. dat.*).
parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, get, get ready, prepare.
pars, partis, *f.*, part, side.
Parthenōn, –ōnis, *m.*, the Par'thenōn, *temple of Athena at Athens.*
parvus, –a, –um, small; *comp.*, **minor, minus,** less; *superl.*, **minimus, –a, –um,** least.
pāstor, –ōris, *m.*, shepherd.
pater, patris, *m.*, father.
patria, –ae, *f.*, fatherland, country.
paucī, –ae, –a, few.
Paulus, –ī, *m.*, Paul.
paupertās, –tātis, *f.*, poverty.
pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace.
pecūnia, –ae, *f.*, money.
peior, peius, *see* **malus.**
pellō, –ere, pepulī, pulsus, drive, defeat.
Penātēs, –ium, *m.*, the Penā'tēs, *household gods.*

pendō, –ere, pependī, pēnsus, hang, weigh, pay.
Pēnelopē, –ae, *f.*, Penĕl'ope, *wife of Ulysses.*
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, by.
perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus, finish.
perfodiō, –ere, –fōdī, –fossus, pierce.
periculum, –ī, *n.*, danger, trial.
permittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, let go through, allow, entrust (*w. dat.*).
permoveō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus, move throughout *or* deeply, induce.
permūtātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, exchange.
perpetuus, –a, –um, constant, lasting.
persōna, –ae, *f.*, character, person.
pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentūrus, (*w.* ad), extend to, pertain to.
perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventūrus, come through, arrive.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; pedibus, on foot.
pessimus, –a, –um, *see* malus.
petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus, seek, ask (for).
Phrygia, –ae, *f.*, Phrygia (Frĭj'ĭa), *a country of Asia Minor.*
pictūra, –ae, *f.*, picture.
pīla, –ae, *f.*, ball.
pingō, –ere, pīnxī, pictus, paint, embroider.
plācō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, calm, reconcile.
plānus, –a, –um, level, plane.
plēbs, plēbis, *f.*, the people, the common people.
plēnus, –a, –um, full.
plicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fold.
plūrēs, plūra, more, *see* multus.
plūrimus, *see* multus.
plūs, *see* multum, multus.
Plūtō, –ōnis, *m.*, Plū'tō.
poena, –ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; poenam dare, pay the penalty.
poēta, –ae, *m.*, poet.
Polyphēmus, –ī, *m.*, Polyphē'mus, *a man-eating giant.*
pompa, –ae, *f.*, parade.
Pompōnia, –ae, *f.*, Pompō'nia.
Pompōnius, –nī, *m.*, Pompō'nius.
pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus, put, place, set; castra pōnere, pitch camp.
pōns, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
pontifex, –ficis, *m.*, priest.
Pontus, –ī, *m.*, Pon'tus, *the region south of the Black Sea.*
populus, –ī, *m.*, people; *pl.*, peoples, nations.
Porsena, –ae, *m.*, Por'sena.
porta, –ae, *f.*, gate; porta Capēna, *a gate in the wall of Rome.*
portō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, carry.
portus, –ūs, *m.*, harbor.
possum, posse, potuī, —, can, be able (*w. infin.*).
post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, behind (*of place*); after (*of time*).
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
postquam, *conj.*, after.

potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, authority, chance.

prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before, in front of.

praeceps, *gen.* **praecipitis,** *adj.*, headlong, steep.

praeda, -ae, *f.*, loot, prey.

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put in charge of (*w. acc. and dat.*).

praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead.

praemium, -mī, *n.*, reward.

praesidium, -dī, *n.*, garrison, guard, protection.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be in charge of (*w. dat.*).

praetextus, -a, -um, (woven in front), bordered; **toga praetexta,** *a cloak with a purple border, worn by children.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress, attack fiercely.

pretium, -tī, *n.*, price.

primō, *adv.*, at first.

prīmum, *adv.*, for the first time.

prīmus, -a, -um, first.

princeps, -cipis, *m.*, first man, chief, leader.

prō, *prep. w. abl.*, in front of, before, for.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, test, prove, approve.

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go forth, advance.

procus, -ī, *m.*, suitor.

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth *or* out, prolong.

proelium, -lī, *n.*, battle.

prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus, prevent, keep from.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, promise.

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, hasten.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, set forth, present, offer.

proprius, -a, -um, (one's) own.

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of.

Prōserpina, -ae, *f.*, Proser'pina.

prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, foresee, provide.

prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province.

proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next (*w. dat.*).

pūblicus, -a, -um, public.

Pūblius, -lī, *m.*, Pub'lius.

puella, -ae, *f.*, girl.

puer, puerī, *m.*, boy.

pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.

pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, fight.

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful.

Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think.

Pyrrhus, -ī, *m.*, Pyr'rhus, *king of Epirus.*

Q

Q., *abbreviation for* **Quīntus.**

quadrīgae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a four-horse team, a chariot.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, seek, inquire.

quam, *conj.*, than; *w. superl.*, as . . . as possible; *adv.*, how.
quārtus, **-a**, **-um**, fourth.
quattuor, four.
-que (*joined to second word*), and.
quī, quae, quod, *relat. pron.*, who, which, what, that.
quī, quae, quod, *interrog. adj.*, what.
quidem (*placed after word emphasized*), certainly, to be sure.
quīndecim, fifteen.
quīnque, five.
quīntus, **-a**, **-um**, fifth.
Quīntus, **-ī**, *m.*, Quintus.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who, what.
quod, *conj.*, because.
quondam, *adv.*, once (upon a time).
quot, how many.

R

raeda, **-ae**, *f.*, carriage, omnibus.
rapiō, **-ere**, **rapuī**, **raptus**, seize, carry off.
ratiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, account, plan, manner, reason.
recipiō, **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptus**, take back, recover, receive; **sē recipere**, retreat.
rēctē, *adv.*, rightly.
reddō, **-ere**, **reddidī**, **redditus**, give back, deliver, restore.
redigō, **-ere**, **redēgī**, **redāctus**, drive *or* bring back, reduce.
redūcō, **-ere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductus**, lead back, bring back.
rēgia, **-ae**, *f.*, palace.
rēgīna, **-ae**, *f.*, queen.
regiō, **-ōnis**, *f.*, district, region.
rēgnum, **-ī**, *n.*, royal power, kingdom.
regō, **-ere**, **rēxī**, **rēctus**, rule, guide.
Rēgulus, **-ī**, *m.*, Reg'ulus.
relinquō, **-ere**, **-līquī**, **-lictus**, leave (behind), abandon.
reliquus, **-a**, **-um**, remaining, rest (of).
remaneō, **-ēre**, **-mānsī**, **-mānsūrus**, remain behind, remain.
remittō, **-ere**, **-mīsī**, **-missus**, relax, send back.
removeō, **-ēre**, **-mōvī**, **-mōtus**, move back, remove, withdraw.
Remus, **-ī**, *m.*, Rēmus.
repellō, **-ere**, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, drive back, repulse.
rēs, **reī**, *f.*, thing, matter, affair; **rēs pūblica**, public affairs, government; **rēs gestae**, exploits.
respondeō, **-ēre**, **-spondī**, **-spōnsus**, answer.
respōnsum, **-ī**, *n.*, reply.
restō, **-āre**, **restitī**, —, remain.
retineō, **-ēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentus**, hold back, restrain, keep.
revertō, **-ere**, **-vertī**, **-versūrus**, return.
revocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātus**, recall, call back.
rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king.
Rhēa, **-ae**, *f.*, Rhēa.
Rhēnus, **-ī**, *m.*, the Rhine river.
rīdeō, **-ēre**, **rīsī**, **rīsus**, laugh (at).

rogō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, ask.
Rōma, –ae, *f.*, Rome.
Rōmānus, –a, –um, Roman; **Rōmānus, –ī,** *m.*, a Roman.
Rōmulus, –ī, *m.*, Rōm'ulus.
Rūfus, –ī, *m.*, Rufus.
ruīna, –ae, *f.*, ruin.
rumpō, –ere, rūpī, ruptus, break, destroy.
rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

S

saccus, –ī, *m.*, sack.
sacer, –cra, –crum, sacred.
saepe, *adv.*, often.
salūs, salūtis, *f.*, health, safety, greeting.
Samnītēs, –ium, *m. pl.*, the Sam'nītes.
sapientia, –ae, *f.*, wisdom.
satis, *adv. and indecl. adj.*, enough.
Sāturnālia, –ium, *n. pl.*, the Saturnā'lia, *a festival in honor of the god Saturn.*
Sāturnus, –ī, *m.*, Saturn, *a god.*
saxum, –ī, *n.*, stone, rock.
scēptrum, –ī, *n.*, scepter.
sciō, –īre, scīvī, scītus, know.
Scīpiō, –ōnis, *m.*, Scipio (Sip'io).
Scōtia, Nova, Nova Scotia.
scrībō, –ere, scrīpsī, scriptus, write.
sēcrētō, *adv.*, secretly.
sēcum = **cum sē.**
secundus, –a, –um, second.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sedeō, –ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit.
sēdēs, –is, *f.*, dwelling place.
semper, *adv.*, always.
senātor, –ōris, *m.*, senator.
senātus, –ūs, *m.*, senate.
sententia, –ae, *f.*, feeling, opinic motto.
sentiō, –īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, fe realize.
septem, seven.
septimus, –a, –um, seventh.
sepulchrum, –ī, *n.*, tomb.
sermō, –ōnis, *m.*, talk, conver tion.
servō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, sa guard, preserve.
servus, –ī, *m.*, slave.
sex, six.
sextus, –a, –um, sixth; **sex decimus,** sixteenth.
sī, *conj.*, if.
Sicilia, –ae, *f.*, Sicily (Sis'ily).
signum, –ī, *n.*, sign, standa signal.
Sīlēnus, –ī, *m.*, Sīlē'nus.
silva, –ae, *f.*, forest, woods.
Silvia, –ae, *f.*, Silvia.
similis, –e, like.
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without.
singulī, –ae, –a, *pl. only*, one a time.
sinister, –tra, –trum, left (*hai*
sinō, –ere, sīvī, situs, let, p mit.
socius, –cī, *m.*, comrade, ally.
sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun.
sōlus, –a, –um, alone, sole, o
solvō, –ere, solvī, solūtus, lo pay.
somnus, –ī, *m.*, sleep.

sordidus, –a, –um, dirty.
soror, –ōris, *f.*, sister.
Spartacus, –ī, *m.*, Spartacus.
spatium, –ī, *n.*, space, time, distance, "lap" (*in a race*).
speciēs, speciēī, *f.*, appearance, pretense, kind.
spectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, look (at), face.
spēlunca, –ae, *f.*, cave.
spērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, hope (for).
spēs, speī, *f.*, hope.
spīna, –ae, *f.*, spina, *a low wall in the Circus, around which the track ran.*
spīrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, breathe.
statim, *adv.*, at once.
statua, –ae, *f.*, statue.
statuō, –ere, statuī, statūtus, place, establish, determine.
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand.
stomachus, –ī, *m.*, stomach.
studeō, –ēre, studuī, —, study.
studium, –dī, *n.*, eagerness, interest, zeal; *pl.*, studies.
stupidus, –a, –um, stupid.
sub, *prep.*, under, close to, at the foot of (*w. acc. after verbs of motion; w. abl. after verbs of rest or position*).
subigō, –ere, –ēgī, –āctus, subdue.
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
sublevō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lift up from beneath, hold up.
submittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus, (send from under), dispatch, furnish.
suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
Sulla, –ae, *m.*, Sulla.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist.
summus, –a, –um, highest, top of.
sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, assume.
super, *prep. w. acc.*, over, above.
superbia, –ae, *f.*, pride.
superbus, –a, –um, haughty.
superō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, overcome, excel.
supersum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus, be left over, survive.
superus, –a, –um, on high, above.
supplicium, –ci, *n.*, punishment, torture.
suscipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus, take up, undertake.
sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus, hold up *or* back, maintain, endure.
suus, –a, –um, *reflexive adj.*, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, *etc.*

T

tamen, *adv.*, still, nevertheless.
tandem, *adv.*, at last.
tangō, –ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch.
tardē, slowly.
tardus, –a, –um, slow, late.
Tarentīnī, –ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tarentines, *inhabitants of Tarentum.*

Tarentum, -ī, *n.*, Taren'tum, *a city in Italy.*

tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, cover, conceal.

Tēlemachus, -ī, *m.*, Telém'achus.

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, missile, weapon.

tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, season, storm.

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple.

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, test, try, attempt, tempt.

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time.

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, stretch.

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold, keep; **memoriā tenēre**, remember.

terminus, -ī, *m.*, end, boundary.

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, country, earth.

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, terrify, frighten.

tertius, -a, -um, third.

texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave.

theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater.

Ti., *abbreviation for* Tiberius.

Tiberis, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, *a river of Italy.*

Tiberius, -ī, *m.*, Tibē'rius.

timeō, -ēre, timuī, —, fear, be afraid.

timidus, -a, -um, fearful, afraid.

Tīrō, -ōnis, *m.*, Tī'rō.

toga, -ae, *f.*, toga, cloak.

tōtus, -a, -um, whole.

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give *or* hand over, deliver, relate.

trādūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead across.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, draw, drag.

trānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, swim across.

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, carry over, transport.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune, *a Roman official.*

tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, bestow, grant.

trīgintā, thirty.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, triumph.

triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph.

Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy.

Troiānus, -a, -um, Trojan; **Troiānī, -ōrum**, *m.*, Trojans.

tū, tuī, you.

tulī, *see* **ferō**.

tum, *adv.*, then.

Turnus, -ī, *m.*, Turnus, *king of the Rutuli.*

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*referring to one person*).

U

ubi, *adv.*, where; when.

Ulixēs, -is, *m.*, Ū'lys'sēs.

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ulterior, ulterius, farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, last, farthest.

unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

ūnus, -a, -um, one.

urbs, urbis, *f.*, city.

ūrō, –ere, ussī, ustus, burn.
ut, *conj.*, as.
ūtilis, –e, useful.
uxor, –ōris, *f.*, wife.

V

vacca, –ae, *f.*, cow.
valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus, be strong, be well, be powerful; *imper.*, valē, farewell.
vāllum, –ī, *n.*, wall.
varius, –a, –um, changing, varying, various.
vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, lay waste, devastate.
vel, or; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or.
veniō, –īre, vēnī, ventūrus, come.
ventus, –ī, *m.*, wind.
Venus, –eris, *f.*, Vē'nus, *goddess of love and beauty.*
vēr, vēris, *n.*, spring.
Vēra, –ae, *f.*, Vera.
verberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, beat.
verbum, –ī, *n.*, word; **verba facere**, speak, make a speech.
Vercingetorix, –rīgis, *m.*, Vercingetorix (Versinjet'orix), *a Gallic chieftain.*
vertō, –ere, versī, versus, turn.
vērus, –a, –um, true.
Vesta, –ae, *f.*, Vesta, *a goddess.*
Vestālis, –e, Vestal, of Vesta.
vester, –tra, –trum, your, yours (*of two or more persons*).
vestis, –is, *f.*, clothing, garment.
via, –ae, *f.*, way, road, street; **viam mūnīre**, build a road.
victor, –ōris, *m.*, victor.
victōria, –ae, *f.*, victory.
videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *passive*, seem, be seen.
vigilantia, –ae, *f.*, vigilance.
vigilia, –ae, *f.*, guard, watchfulness.
vīgintī, twenty.
villa, –ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country home.
vincō, –ere, vīcī, victus, conquer.
vīnum, –ī, *n.*, wine.
vir, virī, *m.*, man, hero.
Virginia, –ae, *f.*, Virginia.
virgō, –ginis, *f.*, virgin, maiden.
virīlis, –e, of a man, manly.
virtūs, –tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage.
vīs, —, *f.*, force, violence; *pl.*, vīrēs, –ium, strength.
vīta, –ae, *f.*, life.
vīvō, –ere, vīxī, victus, live.
vīvus, –a, –um, alive, living.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, call, summon.
volō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, fly.
volvō, –ere, volvī, volūtus, roll; *passive*, tumble.
vōs, vestrum, *pl. of* **tū**.
vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, remark.
Vulcānus, –ī, *m.*, Vulcan, *god of fire.*
vulnerō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus, wound.
vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

For proper nouns and adjectives not given here see the Latin-English Vocabulary.

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —.
about, dē, *w. abl.*
absent (be), absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
abundance, cōpia, –ae, *f.*
account: on account of, ob, *w. acc.*
accuse, accūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
across, trāns, *w. acc.*
advice, cōnsilium, –ī, *n.*
afflict, afflīgō, –ere, –flīxī, –flictus.
afraid (be), timeō, –ēre, timuī, —.
after, *use abl. abs.*; post (*prep. w. acc.*); *postquam (conj.).*
afterwards, postea (*adv.*).
aid, auxilium, –ī, *n.*
all, omnis, –e.
ally, socius, –cī, *m.*
alone, sōlus, –a, –um.
although, *use particip. or abl. abs.*
always, semper.
among, inter, apud, *w. acc.*
and, et, –que.
announce, nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
answer, respondeō, –ēre, –spondī, –spōnsus.
appearance, speciēs, speciēī, *f.*
approach, accēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessūrus (*w.* ad).
approve, probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
arms, arma, –ōrum, *n.*
army, exercitus, –ūs, *m.*
arouse, incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
arrive, perveniō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventūrus.
as, *use abl. abs.*; **as possible**, quam *w. superl.*
assault: take by assault, expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
attack, impetus, –ūs, *m.*
author, auctor, auctōris, *m.*
authority, auctōritās, –tātis, *f.*
await, exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
away (be), absum, –esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

B

bad, malus, –a, –um.
battle, pugna, –ae, *f.*; proelium, –ī, *n.*
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.
beautiful, pulcher, –chra, –chrum.
because, quod; *use particip. or abl. abs.*
before, prae, *w. abl.*; ante, *w. acc.*
begin, incipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
believe, crēdō, –ere, crēdidī, crēditus (*w. dat.*).
best, optimus, –a, –um.
better, melior, melius.
blame, accūsō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
body, corpus, corporis, *n.*
book, liber, librī, *m.*

boundary, terminus, -ī, *m.*; fīnis, fīnis, *m.*
boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
brave, fortis, -e; **bravely,** fortiter.
break, frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus.
breathe, spīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
bring about, efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
brother, frāter, frātris, *m.*
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, *m.*
but, sed.
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*

C

call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **call together,** convocō.
camp, castra, -ōrum, *n.*; **pitch camp,** castra pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus.
can, possum, posse, potuī, —.
cannot, nōn possum.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus.
care, cūra, -ae, *f.*
carefully, cum cūrā.
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus; **carry on war,** bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
cart, carrus, -ī, *m.*
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus.
cause, causa, -ae, *f.*
certainly, certē.
chance, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
(put in) charge of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
children, līberī, -ōrum, *m.*
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m.*
citizenship, cīvitās, -tātis, *f.*
city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
clearly, clārē.
climb, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus.
close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus.
colonist, colōnus, -ī, *m.*
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventūrus.
commit, committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus.
complete, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
comrade, socius, -ī, *m.*
concerning, dē, *w. abl.*
constant, perpetuus, -a, -um.
convenient, commodus, -a, -um.
country, patria, -ae, *f.*
courage, animus, -ī, *m.*; virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*
daughter, fīlia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m.*
death, mors, mortis, *f.*
deceive, fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
(deeply) move, permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus.
defeat, pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus.
depart, excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus; discēdō.
desert, dēserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertus.

deserve, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
desire, cupiō,–ere, cupīvī, cupītus.
determine, statuō, –ere, statuī, statūtus.
difficult, difficilis, –e.
diligence, diligentia, –ae, *f.*
dismiss, dīmittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
dispatch, submittō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus.
distinguished, ēgregius, –a, –um.
do, faciō, –ere, fēcī, factus; agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **do harm to,** noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (*w. dat.*).
drag, trahō, –ere, trāxī, tractus.
drive, agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus; **drive back,** repellō, –ere, reppulī, repulsus.
duty, officium, –cī, *n.*

E

eagerness, studium, –dī, *n.*
earn, mereō, –ēre, meruī, meritus.
easy, facilis, –e; **easily,** facile.
eighth, octāvus, –a, –um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
employ, adhibeō, –ēre, –hibuī, –hibitus.
end, fīnis, fīnis, *m.*
endure, sustineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentus.
enemy, inimīcus, –ī, *m.* (*personal*); hostis, –is, *m.* (*national*).
enlist, cōnscribō, –ere, –scrīpsī, –scrīptus.
enough, satis.
entrust, mandō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; committō, –ere, –mīsī, –missus; crēdō, –ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
equal, pār, *gen.* paris.
establish, cōnfirmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
even, etiam.
every, omnis, –e.
example, exemplum, –ī, *n.*
excel, superō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
excellent, ēgregius, –a, –um.
expect, exspectō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
explore, explōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
extend, pertineō, –ēre, –tinuī, –tentūrus (*w.* ad).

F

fair, aequus, –a, –um.
fall, cadō, –ere, cecidī, cāsūrus.
fame, fāma, –ae, *f.*
familiar, nōtus, –a, –um.
family, familia, –ae, *f.*
famous, clārus, –a, –um.
farmer, agricola, –ae, *m.*
father, pater, patris, *m.*
fear, timeō, –ēre, timuī, ––.
few, paucī, –ae, –a.
field, ager, agrī, *m.*
fifth, quīntus, –a, –um.
fight, pugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
find, invenīō, –īre, –vēnī, –ventus.
finish, perficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.
firm, firmus, –a, –um.
first, prīmus, –a, –um.
fit, aptus, –a, –um.
flee, fugiō, –ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.
fold, plicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*; on foot, pedibus.
for (*conj.*), nam; (*prep.*), prō, *w. abl.*, ob, *w. acc.*
force, manus, –ūs, *f.*; vīs, —, *f.*
forces (troops), cōpiae, –ārum, *f.*
foreigner, barbarus, –ī, *m.*
foresee, prōvideō, –ēre, –vīdī, –vīsus.
forest, silva, –ae, *f.*
fortify, mūniō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
four, quattuor.
free (*adj.*), līber, –era, –erum; (*v.*), līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
freedom, lībertās, lībertātis, *f.*
fresh, integer, –gra, –grum.
friend, amīcus, –ī, *m.*
friendly, amīcus, –a, –um.
friendship, amīcitia, –ae, *f.*
frighten, terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
from, out from, ē, ex, *w. abl.*; away from, ā, ab, *w. abl.*

G

Galba, Galba, –ae, *m.*
gate, porta, –ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallia, –ae, *f.*; a Gaul, Gallus, –ī, *m.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*
get, get ready, parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; get together, comparō.
girl, puella, –ae, *f.*
give, dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; dō, dare, dedī, datus; give thanks to, grātiās agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
glory, glōria, –ae, *f.*
go away, discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessūrus.
god, deus, –ī, *m.*
good, bonus, –a, –um.
grain, frūmentum, –ī, *n.*
grateful: be *or* feel grateful, grātiam habeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
gratitude, grātia, –ae, *f.*
great, magnus, –a, –um.
guard, vigilia, –ae, *f.*; praesidium, –dī, *n.*

H

hand, manus, –ūs, *f.*
harm, do harm to, noceō, –ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus (*w. dat.*).
harmony, concordia, –ae, *f.*
harsh, dūrus, –a, –um.
hasten, mātūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; properō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
have, habeō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
he, is; hic; ille; *often not expressed.*
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
heavy, gravis, –e.
help, auxilium, –ī, *n.*
her (*poss.*), eius; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
hesitate, dubitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
high, altus, –a, –um.
himself (*intens.*), ipse; (*reflex.*), suī.
hinder, impediō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus.
his (*poss.*), eius; his own (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
hope (*v.*), spērō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; (*noun*), spēs, speī, *f.*
horse, equus, –ī, *m.*
hour, hōra, –ae, *f.*

house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how (in what manner), quō modō.
hundred, centum.

I

I, ego, meī; *often not expressed.*
if, sī; *abl. abs.*
in, in, *w. abl.*
increase, augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus.
influence, addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; (*noun*), grātia, -ae, *f.*; auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*
inform, (eum) certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
injury, iniūria, -ae, *f.*
instruction, disciplīna, -ae, *f.*
interest, studium, -dī, *n.*
into, in, *w. acc.*
island, īnsula, -ae, *f.*
it, id; hoc; illud; *often not expressed.*

J

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*
just, aequus, -a, -um; iūstus, -a, -um.
justly, aequē.

K

keen, ācer, ācris, ācre.
keep, teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus; retineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus.
king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, *n.*
know, *perfect tenses of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *or of* cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; sciō, -īre, scīvī, scītus.

L

labor, labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
land, terra, -ae, *f.*; **native land,** patria, -ae, *f.*
language, lingua, -ae, *f.*
large, magnus, -a, -um.
late, tardus, -a, -um.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead across** *or* **over,** trādūcō; **lead back,** redūcō; **lead forth** *or* **out,** prōdūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; princeps, principis, *m.*
learn, nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus.
leave (behind), relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictus; **be left,** supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
letter (*of alphabet*), littera, -ae, *f.*; (*epistle*), litterae, -ārum, *f.*
life, vīta, -ae, *f.*
little, parvus, -a, -um.
live (a life), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; **dwell,** habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
long, longus, -a, -um; **no longer,** nōn iam.
look at, spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
loot, praeda, -ae, *f.*
lose, āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus.
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus.
lower, inferior, inferius.

M

maintain, sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus.
man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*
manage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus.
manner, modus, -ī, *m.*
many, multī, -ae, -a.
memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, *m.*
middle of, medius, -a, -um.
misfortune, cāsus, -ūs, *m.*
money, pecūnia, -ae, *f.*
month, mēnsis, -is, *m.*
most, plūrimī, -ae, -a.
mother, māter, mātris, *f.*
motto, sententia, -ae, *f.*
mountain, mōns, montis, *m.*
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus; cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus; **move deeply,** permoveō.
much, multus, -a, -um.
my, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*
nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*
native land, patria, -ae, *f.*
nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*
near, ad, *w. acc.*
neighboring, fīnitimus, -a, -um.
neither (*adj.*), neuter, -tra, -trum.
neither . . . nor (*conj.*), neque . . . neque.
never, numquam.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, proximus, -a, -um.
no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um; **no longer** (*adv.*), nōn iam; **no one** (*pron.*), nēmō, *dat.* nēminī, *m.*
noble, nōbilis, -e.
nor, neque.
not, nōn.
nothing, nihil, *indecl.*, *n.*
now, nunc.
number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

O

obtain, obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus.
on, in, *w. abl.*; **on account of,** ob, *w. acc.*; **on the other hand,** autem.
one at a time, singulī, -ae, -a; **one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
opinion, sententia, -ae, *f.*
or, aut.
order (*v.*), iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussus; (*noun*), ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
other, alius, -a, -ud; **the other** (of two), alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves (*intens.*), ipsī; (*reflex.*), nōs.
out of, ē, ex, *w. abl.*
owe, dēbeō, -ēre, dēbuī, dēbitus.
(his) own, *see* **his** (*reflex.*).

P

part, pars, partis, *f.*
peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*
people, populus, -ī, *m.*

pitch camp, castra pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus.
place, locus, –ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca, –ōrum, *n.*
plan, cōnsilium, –ī, *n.*
pleasing, grātus, –a, –um.
praise, laudō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
prepare, parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
present (be), adsum, –esse, –fuī, –futūrus.
present, dōnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; prōpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus.
pretense, speciēs, speciēī, *f.*
price, pretium, –tī, *n.*
prisoner, captīvus, –ī, *m.*
propose, prōpōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus.
prove, probō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
province, prōvincia, –ae, *f.*
public, pūblicus, –a, –um.
punishment, poena, –ae, *f.*; supplicium, –cī, *n.*
put, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; **put in charge of,** praeficiō, –ere, –fēcī, –fectus.

Q

quickly, celeriter.

R

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, *m.*
rather, *expressed by comparative.*
read, legō, –ere, lēgī, lēctus.
ready, parātus, –a, –um; **get ready,** parō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
reason, causa, –ae, *f.*
receive, accipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
region, regiō, –ōnis, *f.*
reinforcements, auxilia, –ōrum, *n.*
remain, maneō, –ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus.
remember, memoriā teneō, –ēre, –uī, tentus.
remove, removeō, –ēre, –mōvī, –mōtus.
report, nūntiō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
rest (of), reliquus, –a, –um.
reward, praemium, –mī, *n.*
right, iūs, iūris, *n.*
river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*
road, via, –ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*
run, currō, –ere, cucurrī, cursūrus.

S

sacred, sacer, –cra, –crum.
safety, salūs, –ūtis, *f.*
sail, nāvigō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
sailor, nauta, –ae, *m.*
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; cōnservō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
say, dīcō, –ere, dīxī, dictus.
sea, mare, maris, *n.*
second, secundus, –a, –um.
see, videō, –ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
seek, petō, –ere, petīvī, petītus.
seize, occupō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus.
send, mittō, –ere, mīsī, missus; **send back,** remittō.
separate, dīvidō, –ere, –vīsī, –vīsus.
set, pōnō, –ere, posuī, positus; prōpōnō; **set free,** līberō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.

settler, colōnus, –ī, *m.*
seventh, septimus, –a, –um.
severe, gravis, –e.
sharply, ācriter.
she, ea; haec; illa; *often not expressed.*
ship, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*
shout, clāmō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
show, mōnstrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; dēmōnstrō.
sight: catch sight of, cōnspiciō, –ere, –spexī, –spectus.
since, *use abl. abs.*; quod (*conj.*).
sister, soror, sorōris, *f.*
sit, sedeō, –ēre, sēdī, sessūrus.
slave, servus, –ī, *m.*
small, parvus, –a, –um.
soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*
some . . . others, alīī . . . alīī.
son, fīlius, –lī, *m.*
speech, ōrātiō, –ōnis, *f.*
spend (years), agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus.
stand, stō, –āre, stetī, stātūrus.
standard, signum, –ī, *n.*
state, cīvitās, –tātis, *f.*
strange, novus, –a, –um.
street, via, –ae, *f.*
stretch, tendō, –ere, tetendī, tentus.
strong: be strong, valeō, –ēre, valuī, valitūrus.
studies, studia, –ōrum, *n.*
suitable, commodus, –a, –um.
summer, aestās, –tātis, *f.*
summon, vocō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
supply, cōpis, –ae, *f.*
swear, iūrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swiftly, celeriter.
swiftness, celeritās, –tātis, *f.*
sword, gladius, –dī, *m.*

T

take, capiō, –ere, cēpī, captus; sūmō, –ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus; take by assault, expugnō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
teach, doceō, –ēre, –uī, doctus.
teacher, magister, –trī, *m.*
tenth, decimus, –a, –um.
terms, condiciō, –ōnis, *f.*
terrify, terreō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
territory, fīnēs, –ium, *m. pl.*
than, quam.
thank, grātās agō, –ere, ēgī, āctus (*w. dat.*).
that (*demonst.*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id.
that (*relat.*), quī, quae, quod.
their (*poss.*), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (*reflex.*), suus, –a, –um.
themselves (*intens.*), ipsī, –ae, –a; (*reflex.*), suī.
they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa; *often not expressed.*
thing, rēs, reī, *f.*; *often not expressed.*
think, putō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; existimō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
third, tertius, –a, –um.
this (*demonst.*), hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thousand, mīlle.
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, *w. acc.*

till, colō, –ere, –uī, cultus.
timber, māteria, –ae, *f.*
time, tempus, –oris, *n.*; **one at a time,** singulī, –ae, –a.
to, ad, *w. acc.*
too, *expressed by comparative.*
torture, cruciātus, –ūs, *m.*
touch, tangō, –ere, tetigī, tāctus.
town, oppidum, –ī, *n.*
train, exerceō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
transport, trānsportō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
troops, cōpiae, –ārum, *f. pl.*
true, vērus, –a, –um.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U

under, sub, *w. acc. or abl.*
understand, intellegō, –ere, –lēxī, –lēctus.
undertake, suscipiō, –ere, –cēpī, –ceptus.
unfold, explicō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
upon, in, *w. abl.*
urge on, incitō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
useful, ūtilis, –e.

V

varying, varius, –a, –um.
very, *expressed by superlative;* **very carefully,** magnā cūrā.
victory, victōria, –ae, *f.*

W

wagon, carrus, –ī, *m.*
war, bellum, –ī, *n.*
warn, moneō, –ēre, –uī, –itus.
waste (lay), vāstō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus.
water, aqua, –ae, *f.*
wave, unda, –ae, *f.*
we, nōs; *often not expressed.*
well, bene.
what (*pron.*), quis, quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod.
when, *often expressed by particip. or abl. abs.*
where, ubi.
which, quī, quae, quod.
who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*), quis, quid.
whole, tōtus, –a, –um.
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, –a, –um.
winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
with, cum, *w. abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone.*
without, sine, *w. abl.*
woods, silva, –ae, *f.*
word, verbum, –ī, *n.*
work (*verb*), labōrō, –āre, –āvī, –ātus; (*noun*), opus, operis, *n.*
worst, pessimus, –a, –um.
wound, vulnus, vulneris, *n.*
wretched, miser, –era, –erum.
write, scribō, –ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus.
wrong, iniūria, –ae, *f.*

Y

year, annus, –ī, *m.*
you, tū (*sing.*); vōs (*pl.*); *often not expressed.*
your, tuus, –a, –um; vester, –tra, –trum; **yourselves** (*reflex.*), vōs.

INDEX

(The numbers refer to sections unless otherwise stated.)

ā, ab, 121, 243; as prefix, 122
abbreviations (*see* **word studies**)
ablative case, 78
 absolute, 384–385
 of accompaniment, 204
 of agent, 242–243
 of cause, 141, footnote 1
 of description, 600
 of manner, 332
 of means, 79–80
 of place from which, 121
 of place where, 109
 of respect, 420–421
 of separation, 121, 679, footnote 1
 of time, 443
ablative, summary of uses, 397
accent, 620
accompaniment, 204
accusative case, 43, 636,*b*
 as subject of infinitive, 281, 490
 of direct object, 43–44, 635,*b*
 of extent, 568–569
 of place to which, 139, 538
 with prepositions, 139, etc.
adjectives, 23, 625
 agreement, 23–24, 159, 161
 comparison, 513, 659; of *-er* adjectives, 528; of *-ĭus* adjectives, 530; of irregular adjectives, 536, 659,*b*
 dative with, 531
 declension of comparatives, 514, 660
 of first and second declensions, 116, 129, 144, 159, 655; of third declension, 408, 656; irregular, 464, 658
 interrogative, 337,II
 position of, 23(*a*)
 possessive, 273, 625,*b*, 3
 predicate, 23
adverbs, 627
 comparison, 522, 661; of irregular adverbs, 537, 661
 formation, 202, 521
Aeneas, 217, 239, 247, 255, 269, 292; Figs. 68, 69, 80
agent, ablative of, 242–243
agō, different meanings of, 308
agreement
 of adjectives, 23–24
 of appositive, 178
 of relative pronoun, 324
 of verb, 46–47, 244
alius and alter, 468,I
alphabet, 4; Fig. 6
amphitheaters, 334, pp. 227–228; Figs. 24, 32, 36, 48, 66, 72, 75, 78,4111, 124, 137, 158, 191
amusements, 375; Figs. 4, 5, 9, 10, 15, 46, 67, 82, 92, 122, 123, 125, 127, 138, 192 (*see also* **amphitheater, circus, theater**)
animals, representations of, Figs. 25, 40, 41, 64, 67, 98, 129, 145, 169, 176, 185, 207
antecedent, 321, 624
antepenult, 618
apartment houses, Roman, p. 320; Figs. 95, 186
apposition, 177–178
aqueducts, pp. 390–391; Figs. 27, 88, 199
arches and gates, Figs. 29, 49, 78, 88, 150, 158, 172, 184
architecture, Fig. 2 (*see* **Forum, Pompeii, Roman Empire, Rome, temples**, etc.)

arithmetic, Roman, p. 186
assimilation (*see* word studies)
atrium, 510; Fig. 166
augurs, p. 268

base, 87
basic forms, summary of, 649–674
basic grammar, 621–648
basic syntax, 675–684
basic vocabulary, 685
basilica, Figs. 90, 96
baths, Roman, Figs. 53, 152, 179
books and writing, Roman, p. 185; Figs. 6, 7, 8, 11, 43, 45, 56, 105, 107, 114
books for reference, 705
bridges, Roman, Figs. 85, 154

Caecilius, 445; Fig. 147
Caesar, 113, 346, 365, 565; Figs. 38, 68, 115, 183
cardinal numerals, 358, 662
case, 14, 634 (*see also* nominative, etc.)
causal clause with *quod*, Lesson XXIV
Ceres, 199
Cicero, 470, 478, p. 390; Fig. 198
Cincinnatus, 483
Circe, Fig. 129
circus, the games of the, 374, 375; Figs. 122, 123, 127, 138
clauses, 323, 647
clothing (*see* dress)
Colosseum (*see* amphitheater)
comparatives, force of, 513, Hints; declension of, 514
comparison
 of adjectives, 513, 528, 530, 536, 659
 of adverbs, 522, 537, 661
complementary infinitive, 153, Note
conjugations, 101, 637
 first (*portō*), 37, 668
 second (*doceō*), 100, 669
 third (*pōnō*), 170, 670; *-iō* verbs (*capiō*), 184, 672
 fourth (*mūniō*), 185, 671
 summary of, 668–674
conjunctions, 629
connected Latin, how to study, 19, 309
connecting relative, 556, footnote 2
consonants, 615
conundrum, 225
conversation, 93, 166, 229, 276, 311, 373; helps for, 704
copula (*see* linking verb)
Cornelia, 584; Fig. 189
cum (prep.) with accompaniment, 204; with manner, 332; enclitic use with *mē*, etc., 272, footnote 1; as prefix, 201

Daedalus and Icarus, 533; Fig. 173
dative case, 71, 636,*c*
 of indirect object, 71–72, 589
 with adjectives, 531
 with *noceō*, 585
 with transitive verbs, 589
declensions, 11, 88
 first (a summary), 86, 649
 second, nouns and adjectives in *-us*, 116, 649; in *-er* and *-r*, 129, 650; in *-um*, 144, 650
 third, masculine and feminine nouns, 378, 651; neuters, 391, 651; *i*-stem nouns, 402, 651; gender of, 415; adjectives, 408
 fourth, 580, 652
 fifth, 594, 653
 summary of, 649–667
demonstratives, 435, 448, 450, 455, 624,*d*, 665; position of, 436
Dentatus, 340; Fig. 113
derivatives (*see* word studies)
descriptive genitive and ablative, 600
diphthongs, 614
direct object, 43–44, 635,*b*

domus, declension of, 578, 654
dress, etc., 610, 611(*a*); Figs. 4, 16, 31, 45, 54, 56, 92, 100, 107, 113, 128, 140, 149, 159, 164, 165, 171, 181, 187, 189, 196, 197, 200, 201, 205
duc, declension of, 553, 558

ē, ex, 121
education (*see* schools)
ego, declension of, 272, 663
emphatic verb forms, 640,*b*
enclitics, 165; *cum* with *mē*, *tē*, etc., 272, footnote 1
Etna, Mt., Fig. 13
extent of time or space, 568–569
extrēmus, use of, 538

Fabricius, 549
fifth declension, 594, 653
fire protection in Rome, p. 132
first conjugation, 37, 668
first declension, 38, 649
food and meals, 611(*b*); Figs. 81, 112, 128, 203, 204
Forum, the, 228, p. 130; Figs. 3, 57, 72, 87, 104; of Augustus, Fig. 71; of Caesar, Figs. 48, 71; of Trajan, Figs. 32, 58, 71
fourth conjugation, 185, 209, 671
fourth declension, 580, 652
French, Latin words in, 85
French through Latin, 690–696
furniture, etc., 510; Figs. 28, 39, 56, 65, 157, 167, 189
future active infinitive 486(*b*)
future active participle, 475
future indicative, 55, 639,*c*; active, 65, 196, 209; passive, 236, 668–672
future perfect indicative, 266, 639,*f*; active, 266; passive, 295

games, children's, 3, 56, 276; Figs. 4, 5, 9, 10, 15, 23, 92, 140; (*see also* amusements)
gender, 13, 633
 in the first declension, 17
 in the second declension, 116, 129, 144
 in the third declension, 415
 in the fourth declension, 581
 in the fifth declension, 594
genitive case, 59, 636,*d*
 of description, 600
 of nouns and adjectives in *-ius*, 116(*d*), in *-ium*, 144(*c*)
 of possession, 59, 636,*d*
gladiatorial shows (*see* amphitheater)
glimpses of Roman life (*see* Roman life)
gods, 431, 432; Figs. 61, 62, 77, 79, 83, 94, 97, 142, 143, 146, 151, 170
Gracchi, 584; Fig. 139
grammar, basic, 621–648

hic, declension of, 435, 665
holidays, Roman, p. 268
Horatius, 463
hotels, Roman, p. 31; Fig. 46
house, Roman, 510; Figs. 35, 37, 44, 56, 95, 100, 157, 166, 167, 168, 175, 186, 202 (*see also* furniture)
house furnishings, Figs. 11, 28, 33, 65, 153, 157, 167

i-stem nouns, 402, 651
idem, declension of, 455, 665
idioms, 215, 587
ille, declension of, 435, 665
imperative
 present active, 90; plural in *-te*, 171; of *-iō* verbs, 184, Note
imperfect indicative, active, 53; passive, 236, 668–672; distinguished from perfect, 259
indicative mood, 30
indirect object, 71–72, 589
indirect statement, 488–490, 560; tenses used, 497–498

infinitive, 35, 643
 as object (complementary), 153, 280
 as subject, 152(*a*)
 formation, 35, 297, 481, 486
 in indirect statements, 488–490
 tenses of, how they differ, 497–498
inflection, 631
inflections (basic forms), summary of, 649–674
inscriptions, Figs. 6, 7, 8, 11, 76, 160
intensive pronoun in English and Latin, 460, 665
interjections, 530
interrogative pronoun and adjective, 337, 667
intransitive verbs, 626,*a*, 2
-iō verbs of the third conjugation, 184, 672
ipse, declension of, 460, 665
irregular adjectives, 464, 466
irregular comparison
 of adjectives, 536
 of adverbs, 537
irregular nouns, 654
is, 448, 450, 665
Italian, Latin words in, 85
Italy, Figs. 13, 32, 34, 36, 37, 70, 76, 85, 89, 95, 109, 128, 131, 190 (*see also* Pompeii, Rome)

Latin phrases and quotations (*see* word studies)
Latin plays
 Sāturnālia, 612
 Victōria Mātris, 440
Latin songs
 Adeste Fidēlēs, p. 453
 America, p. 10
 Gaudēāmus Igitur, p. 454
 Integer Vītae, p. 455
 The Star-Spangled Banner, p. 453
linking verb, 44, Caution, 626,*b*, 2
loan words (*see* word studies)

Lucius, the story of, 228, 310, 374, 431, 509, 555, 610

magnus, meanings of, 414
manner, ablative of, 332
Marius, 572, 577; Fig. 187
marriage, Fig. 195
means, ablative of, 79–80
Midas, 457
military affairs, 83, 167, 206; Figs. 38, 49, 52, 54, 63, 113, 135, 147, 177, 184
mīlle, declension of, 554, 658
modifiers, 23, 621
money, Figs. 25, 68, 149
mood, 30, 642 (*see* indicative, etc.)

names of months and states (*see* word studies)
-ne (enclitic), 165
nēmō, declension of, 519, 654
nominative case, as subject and predicate, 15, 636,*a*
notebook, vocabulary and derivative, 7
nouns, 623 (*see* first declension, etc.)
nūllus, nihil, nēmō, 468,III
number, 12, 632
numerals
 cardinals, 358, 662
 ordinals, 552, 662

object, direct, 43–44; 635,*b*; indirect, 71–72, 589
order of words (*see* word order)
ordinal numerals, 552, 662

Pantheon, Figs. 73, 118
participial stem, 316, 3
participles (*see* present participle, etc.), 286, 644; used as clauses, 363; in ablative absolute, 384–385
passive voice, 236, 287–289, 295, 641

past perfect indicative, 265, 639,*e*; active, 265; passive, 289
penult, 618
perfect infinitive, active, 481; passive, 486(*a*)
perfect participle, 286; used as adjective and noun, 349
perfect stem, 251; 316, 2
perfect system defined, 266, Note
perfect tense, 250
 distinguished from imperfect, 259
 formation of active, 252; of passive, 288
peristyle, p. 319; Fig. 100
person and number, 33, 638
personal endings, 34, 252; passive, 286
personal pronouns, 272, 624,*a*, 663
personal pronoun test, 274
phrases (prepositional), 646
phrases and quotations (*see* word studies)
place from which, 121
place, prepositions of, 109, 121, 139
place to which, 139, 588
place where, 109
plays, Latin
 Sāturnālia, 612
 Vicīnia Mātris, 440
Pluto, 199; Fig. 61
Pompeii, Figs. 1, 41, 44, 98, 112, 121, 144, 157, 166, 167, 175, 202, 203, 204
portraits and statues, Figs. 22, 30, 55, 59, 60, 74, 86, 99, 102, 115, 117, 120, 134, 139, 141, 159, 171, 183, 187, 188, 192, 198 (*see also* religion, animals)
position (*see* word order)
possession (*see* genitive)
possessive adjectives, 273, 625,*b*, 3
possum, conjugation of, 351, 674
post, postea, postquam, 575
predicate, 9, 621
predicate nominative, 15(*b*)
predicate nouns and adjectives, 15(*b*), 23
prefixes (*see* word studies)
prepositions, 628; of place, 109, 121, 139
present indicative, formation of, 37, 236
present infinitive, 35, 297
present participle, 473–474, 657
present stem, 36; 316, 1
present system, 100
present tense, 32
principal parts, 315
 of first conjugation, 304
 of second conjugation, 330
 of third conjugation, 343
 of fourth conjugation, 357
progressive verb forms, 37,*b*, 640,*a*
pronouns
 demonstrative, 435, 624,*d*, 665
 drill and review, 608
 indefinite, 624,*e*
 intensive, 460, 665
 interrogative, 337,I, 624,*b*, 667
 personal, 272, 624,*a*, 663
 reflexive, 543–544, 664
 relative, 321, 624,*c*, 666
 final drill and review, 608
pronunciation, 5, 613–620; exercises in, 6; English pronunciation of Latin, 616
pun, Roman, p. 289
Pyrrhus, 423, 440, 540, 549; Fig. 141

quam with superlative, 557,2
quantity of vowels, 617; of syllables, 619
questions, 165
qui, declension of, 321, 666
quis, declension of, 337, 667
quod causal clause with indicative, Lesson XXIV
quotations (*see* word studies)

reading and translating, hints for, 19, 227

reference, books for, 705
reflexive adjectives, 546
reflexive pronouns, 543–544, 664
Regulus, 556; Fig. 181
relative pronouns, 624,*c*; in English, 322; in Latin, 321, 323, 666; connecting relative, 556, footnote 2
religion, Roman, 199, 300, 327, 431, 432, 439, 509, 525; Figs. 99, 104, 144, 145, 163, 164, 165 (*see also* gods, temples)
remains (Roman) outside Italy (*see* Roman Empire, extent of)
reviews
 first, 94–98
 second, 156–164
 third, 218–224
 fourth, 301–307
 fifth, 366–373
 sixth, 424–430
 seventh, 502–508
 eighth, 557–564
 ninth, 603–608
roads and streets, 49, 50; p. 390; Figs. 18, 19, 89, 121, 158, 180
Roman Empire, extent of, 83, 113, 188, 346, 360, 365; p. 92 (map); Figs. 3, 12, 14, 35, 49, 53, 84, 101, 119, 137, 150, 152, 162, 180, 191, 199
Roman Empire, history of, Figs. 3, 27, 29, 34, 70, 78, 87, 88, 90, 96, 140, 159, 172, 184, 190
Roman life, glimpses of
 children's games, 3
 Roman roads and travel, 50
 slaves, 127
 the city of Rome, 230
 Roman schools, 312
 amusements, 375
 Roman religion, 432
 the house and its furniture, 510
 dress, 611(*a*)
 food and meals, 611(*b*)
Roman Republic, history of, 283, 340, 417, 423, 440, 445, 452, 463, 483, 501, 540, 549, 556, 565, 572, 577, 584, 591, 597; Figs. 72, 113, 139, 141, 147, 149, 176, 181, 187, 188, 189, 193, 194
Romance languages, 686
 Latin words in French, Spanish, and Italian, 85
Rome, the city of, 62, 188, 230; Figs. 18, 19, 24, 27, 32, 34, 48, 58, 71, 90, 96, 125, 131, 148, 154, 155, 158, 161, 172, 174, 178, 182, 184, 194 (*see also* Forum)

schools, Roman, 310, 312, 318, 354; Figs. 45, 103, 106, 107
Scipio, 591, 597, 602; Fig. 193
second conjugation, 100, 669
second declension, 116, 129, 144, 649–650
sentence, 9, 621
 simple, 648,*a*; compound, 648,*b*; complex, 648,*c*
sentence analysis, 111
separation, ablative of, 121, 679, footnote 1
ships, 50; Figs. 21, 26, 52, 156
slaves, 126, 127, 167, 612; Figs. 42, 54
songs (*see* Latin songs)
Spanish, Latin words in, 85
Spanish through Latin, 697–703
Spartacus, 167; Fig. 54
spelling helps (*see* word studies)
sports, p. 5; Fig. 17
statement, direct and indirect, 489–490
states, names of, from Latin, 567(*a*)
statues (*see* portraits)
stem of verbs
 present, 36
 perfect, 251
 tense stems, 316

subject, 9, 621, 635,*a*; of verb, 15; of infinitive, 281, 490
substantives, 226
suffixes (*see* word studies)
suī, declension of, 543, 664
Sulla, 577; Fig. 188
sum, conjugation of, 137, 151, 279, 673
summary of basic forms, 649–674
summus, use of, 538
superlatives, force of, 513, Hints; *quam* with, 587,2
supplementary books for the teacher, 705,III
suus and eius, use of, 450, 546
syllables, 618; quantity of, 619
synonyms, 609
synopsis, 645
syntax, outline of basic, 675–684

temples, Figs. 3, 12, 14, 48, 72, 73, 101, 108, 109, 110, 118, 174, 182
tense, 32, 639 (*see* present, etc.)
tense signs (*see* present, etc.)
tense stems, 316
tests
 personal pronouns, 274
theater, Roman, p. 227; Figs. 125, 148, 155, 162, 206
third conjugation, 170, 670; *-iō* verbs, 184, 672
third declension, 378, 391, 651
 adjectives, 403
 gender, 415
 i-stems, 402, 651
 summary of endings, 427
time, ablative of, 443
to, with verbs of motion, 139, 588
toga, 611(*a*); Fig. 197
tombs, Roman, p. 389; Figs. 8, 34, 85, 193
tools and utensils, Figs. 11, 28, 33, 39, 51, 65, 91, 93, 106, 167, 195
tōtus and omnis distinguished, 468,II
toys (*see* games)
trades and occupations, Figs. 81, 112, 128, 169
transitive verbs, 626,*a*, 1
translating, hints for, 19, 227, 414
travel, 50, p. 389; Figs. 1, 20, 21, 26, 207 (*see also* roads)
trēs, declension of, 553, 658
triumphs, Roman, 565; Figs. 184, 185
Troy, 148, 217,; Figs. 50, 68, 69
tū, declension of, 272, 663
tunic, 611(*a*); Fig. 201
Ulysses, 148, 381, 388, 394, 399, 405, 411; Figs. 126, 130, 132, 133, 136
ūnus, declension of, 466, 658
utensils (*see* tools)
verbs, 29, 626
 agreement with subject, 47, 244
 conjugation of (*see* conjugations)
 intransitive, 626,*a*, 2
 irregular, 673–674
 perfect system, 266, Note; passive, 287
 personal endings, 34, 252; passive, 236
 position of, 46(*c*)
 principal parts, 315, 304, 330, 343, 357
 progressive and emphatic forms, 37,*b*, 640
 stems: present, 316, 1; perfect, 316, 2; participial, 316, 3
 summary of, 668–674
 transitive, 626,*a*, 1
Vestal Virgins, 509; Figs. 163, 164, 165
villas, Roman, p. 31; Fig. 70
vīs, declension of, 479, 654
vocabulary and derivative notebook, p. 11
vocabulary reviews (*see* reviews)
vocative case, 123
voice, 641; active, 31, 233–234; passive, 236

vowel changes (*see* word studies)
vowels, 613; quantity of, 617; shortening of, 37,*a*, 236, footnote 1

water supply of Rome, p. 131; Figs. 27, 88, 100, 178 (*see also* baths)
wax tablets, p. 185; Figs. 43, 105
weddings (*see* marriage)
word formation (*see* word studies)
word lists (New York and College Board), pp. 433–444
word order, 23(*a*), 46(*c*), 191, 436, 533
word sense, how to develop, 308
word studies, English and Latin
 abbreviations, 454, 593
 assimilation, 132, 465
 derivative studies, 7, 70, 214, 329, 512; notebook, p. 11
 importance of verb, 342; of third declension, 434
 intensive prefixes, 320
 Latin base in English words, 169, 176(*a*), 579
 Latin forms in English (*see* loan words, Latin verb forms)
 Latin forms of English names, 107; of names of states, 567(*a*)
 Latin influence upon English, 356, 362
 Latin phrases and quotations used in English, 42(*b*), 77(*b*), 150(*b*), 190(*b*), 195, 241, 249, 271(*b*), 294, 336(*b*), 348, 377, 396(*b*), 413(*b*), 419, 442(*b*), 454, 472, 527(*b*), 593(*b*)
 Latin verb forms in English, 103(*b*), 278
 legal phrases in English, 527(*b*)
 loan words of first declension, 18(*a*), 28(*a*), 52(*b*), 58(*b*); of second declension, 115(*b*), 131, 146, 150(*a*); of third declension, 390, 401, 407; of fourth and fifth declensions, 593(*a*); of irregular comparative and superlative forms, 535
 months, names of, 447
 names, Latin forms of English, 107; of months, 447; of states, 567(*a*)
 Norman-French influence, 459
 prefixes, intensive, 320
 prefixes, Latin (and English), *ab-*, *dē-*, *ex-*, 122; *ad-*, 132; *in-*, 136; *con-* (*com-*), 201; *re-*, 208; *prō-*, 249; *in-* (neg.), *dis-*, 257; *sub-*, *per-*, 285; *inter-*, *ob-*, 314; *ante-*, *trāns-*, 342; *ne-*, *circum-*, *contrā-*, *prae-*, *super-*, 574
 Renaissance, effect of the, 542
 spelling helps, English, 465, 485, 496, 551
 suffixes, Latin (and English), *-ia*, 264; *-tia*, 273; *-tās*, 413(*a*); *-or*, 480; *-antia* (*-entia*), 496; *-tō*, 520; *-ālis*, *-bilis*, *-āris*, *-ārius*, *-ānus*, *-icus*, *-tūdō*, 599
 third declension, importance of, 434
 verb, importance of, 342
 vowel changes, 183, 579, 586
 word families, 232, 383
 word formation (*see* prefixes, suffixes, vowel changes)
words, choice of, 414; how to learn, 430
words, how to learn, 430
words often confused, 468, 570